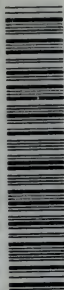


WES-OTTO ELEMENTARY FRENCH COURSE



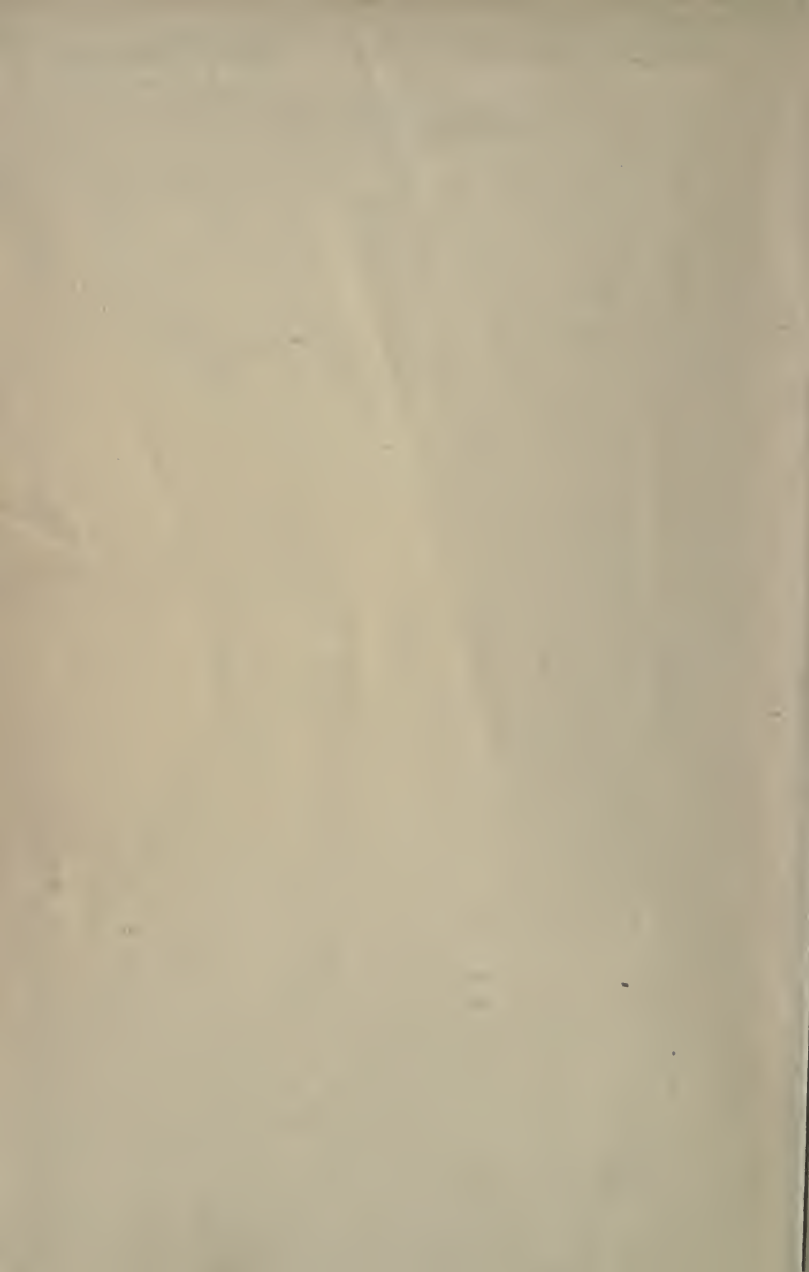
3 1761 05060148 3

# Introductory French Lessons

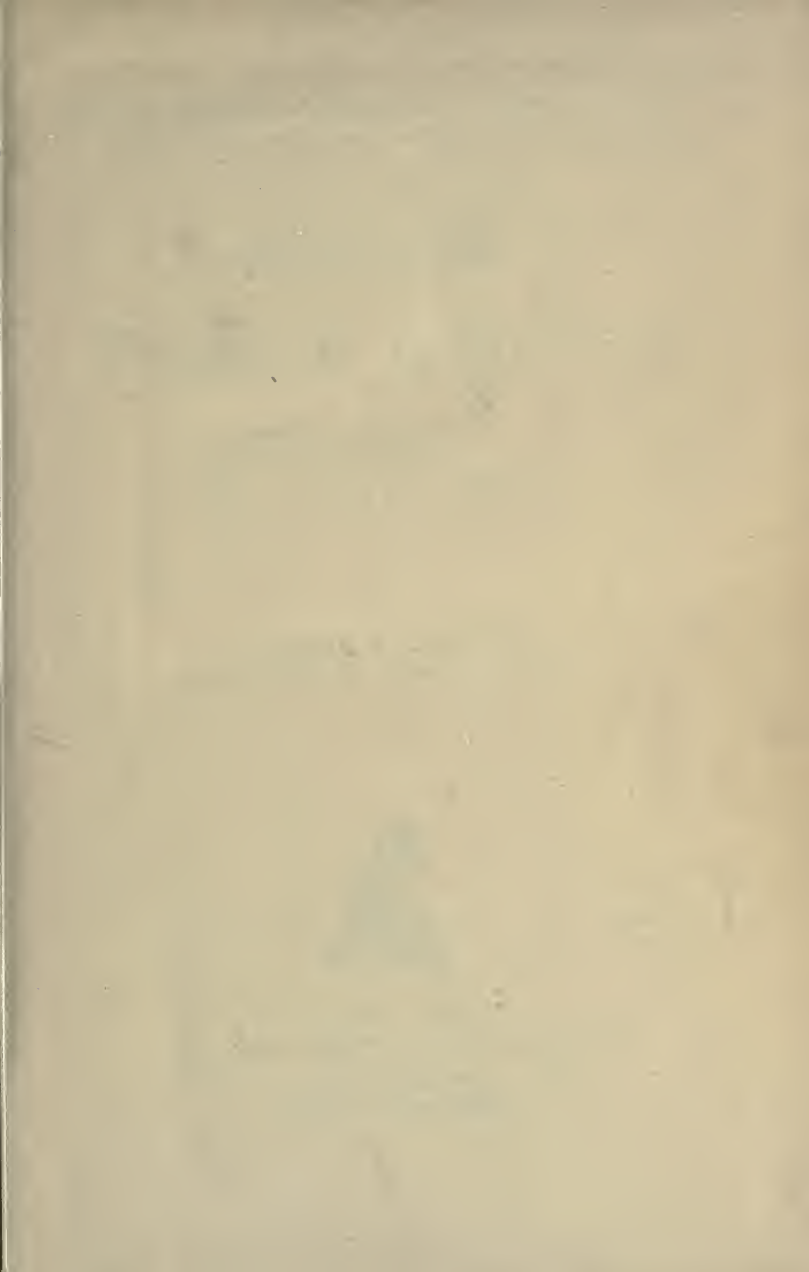




W.H. Fraser.









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

THE JO NES-OTTO ELEMENTARY FRENCH COURSE

---

INTRODUCTORY  
FRENCH LESSONS

BASED ON THE WORKS OF

DR. EMIL OTTO

BY

EDWARD S. JOYNES,

*Editor of Elementary German Course, Etc.*



51077  
—  
7/9/01

NEW YORK  
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY  
F. W. CHRISTERN  
BOSTON : CARL SCHÖNHOF

COPYRIGHT, 1878, BY HENRY HOLT & CO.

Mess. Henry Holt & Co having regularly volunteered  
me honorarium for their American adaptations of  
my works, their publication of them has my full  
sanction.

Heidelberg March 17<sup>th</sup> 1878.

D. Emil Otto.

## PREFACE.

---

IN the series of which this book forms a part, it holds the same place as the KLEINE FRANZÖSISCHE SPRACHLEHRE, by Dr. EMIL OTTO, that is, following the First French Book (for youngest pupils), and being more elementary than OTTO'S FRENCH GRAMMAR (BÔCHER). It is thus adapted to the general plan of the Otto Series, and the materials of the Kleine Französische Sprachlehre have been used to some extent, by authority, in the preparation of the present book.

It is offered as an attempt to present the essential elements of the French language in a simpler yet at the same time more systematic and complete form than has yet been done, for elementary teaching. Its plan does not go beyond elementary limits, yet within those limits it aims at thoroughness and precision. Essential improvement has been attempted in the statement and illustration of some of the more difficult points of grammar, and especially in the treatment of *idiom*—both French and English. The effort has been made, in a word, to place the most elementary instruction upon a basis more consistent than heretofore with the methods of a higher scholarship, and to make the earliest progress at once easier and more satisfactory, *because* more systematic.

While adapted, as the title indicates, to the earliest work of the beginner, the book is also intended to meet the wants of the more mature student, whether as a brief handbook for essential use, or as an introduction to more advanced study. With this view, occasional matter is introduced, in the form of *Note* or *Remark*, connected with, but not essential to, the main body of statement. In

the same way, especially under the *Irregular Verbs*, illustrations from the Latin are occasionally introduced. These may aid the Latin scholar without impairing, for other learners, the completeness of the more general statements. Such matter is generally distinguished by the type.

The Examples and Exercises are abundant and simple. Reading matter is furnished in a separate volume (INTRODUCTORY FRENCH READER); and the use of some such book, outside of the grammar, is implied, and recommended, at an early stage. Grammatical study, by whatever system, should be, as soon as possible, illustrated and reinforced by *reading*.

The Vocabularies and the Index have been carefully prepared. The notification of any errors or omissions, in these particulars, will be received as a favor.

The author owes acknowledgment to Professor H. Tallichet, of Charleston, S. C., for valuable assistance in the Exercises, as well as for other judicious and scholarly suggestions.

E. S. J.

## TO THE TEACHER.

This book, like any other that aims at *topical* completeness (that is, the systematic and final treatment, once for all, of each distinct *topic* of the grammar), is not intended to be used consecutively, in full, by the beginner. What is most important, as a preparation for reading *French as soon as possible*, should be first learned; *the rest, including all exercises in writing French, and also Lessons XXIII., XXV., and XXVIII., should be left for the review.* This introductory course may be accomplished in from fifteen to twenty-five lessons, according to the grade of the pupils, as follows:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lesson I., II.</li> <li>2. " III., IV., V.</li> <li>3. " VI. (with review).</li> <li>4. " VII., VIII.</li> <li>5. " IX. (with review).</li> <li>6. " X.</li> <li>7. " X., XI.</li> <li>8. " XII.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. Lesson XIII., XIV.</li> <li>10. " XV., XVI.</li> <li>11. " XVII.</li> <li>12. " XVIII., XIX.</li> <li>13. " XX.</li> <li>14. " XXI., XXII.</li> <li>15. " XXIV.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

At this point, with occasional help, the Reader may be begun with older classes; or this may be postponed, as follows:\*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>16. Lesson XXVI.</li> <li>17. " XXVII.</li> <li>18. " XXIX., XXX.</li> <li>19. " XXXI., XXXII.</li> <li>20. " XXXIII.</li> <li>21. " XXXIV.</li> <li>22. " XXXV.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>23. Lesson XXXVI.</li> <li>24. " XXXVII.</li> <li>25. " XXXIII., XLVIII.,<br/>as introduction to the irregular verbs, and hereafter one model verb with each lesson.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

At this point the Reader should be taken up, with the review of the grammar in regular order from the beginning.

In the first course, especially with younger pupils, only the more important parts of each lesson need be learned. In the review all should be included.

In the first course, only the exercises *from French to English* should be used; in the review, the reverse exercises into French. *This is deemed very important to rapid progress at first.*

The exercises of both kinds are made purposely longer than may be needed for most pupils. They thus furnish material for selection and for review, or for use with different sections of the same class—such as is often lacking in larger grammars. Yet they may be used in full without repetition, and are carefully prepared, to exhibit the largest variety of idiomatic form under each subject.

\* Also, up to this point at least, the French matter in each lesson should be carefully dictated in advance, with reference to correct pronunciation, and the principal rules of pronunciation should be frequently reviewed, the teacher noting exceptions, etc., as they occur.



# INDEX OF LESSONS.

---

(*An analytical Index, by subjects, will be found at the end.*)

| LESSON |   | PAGE |
|--------|---|------|
| LESSON | I. Alphabet, Accents, etc.....  | 1    |
| "      | II. Pronunciation of Vowels, Diphthongs, etc.....   | 4    |
| "      | III. Pronunciation of Consonants.....   | 7    |
| "      | IV. The Nasals : the Liquids.....   | 9    |
| "      | V. Connection ( <i>Liaison</i> ) : Elision.....   | 12   |
| "      | VI. The Articles.....   | 14   |
| "      | VII. Nouns : the Plural.....  | 18   |
| "      | VIII. Proper Nouns : Prepositions.....  | 20   |
| "      | IX. The Partitive.....  | 24   |
| "      | X. Verb and Subject : Avoir, Affirmative and Interrogative.....                               | 27   |
| "      | XI. <i>Avoir</i> , as Auxiliary ; Compound Tenses.....  | 31   |
| "      | XII. <i>Être</i> ; Simple and Compound Tenses.....  | 34   |
| "      | XIII. Negative and Negative-Interrogative Forms...  | 38   |
| "      | XIV. <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> ; further uses.....   | 42   |
| "      | XV. Determinative Adjectives : Possessive and Demonstrative.....                              | 45   |
| "      | XVI. Determinative Adjectives, continued : Interrogative, Indefinite, and Numeral (to 12).... | 48   |
| "      | XVII. Adjectives ; Feminine and Plural.....   | 51   |
| "      | XVIII. Position of Adjectives.....  | 54   |
| "      | XIX. Comparison of Adjectives.....  | 58   |
| "      | XX. Regular Verbs : First Conjugation.....  | 61   |
| "      | XXI. " " Second Conjugation.....  | 66   |
| "      | XXII. " " Third Conjugation.....  | 70   |
| "      | XXIII. " " Recapitulation : Formation of Tenses ; Synopsis, etc.....                          | 73   |
| "      | XXIV. " " Interrogative and Negative...   | 76   |
| "      | XXV. Orthographical changes in First Conjugation...   | 81   |
| "      | XXVI. Personal Pronouns : Disjunctive.....  | 84   |
| "      | XXVII. " " Conjunctive : the Pronoun Object : <i>En</i> and <i>Y</i> ....                     | 87   |
| "      | XXVIII. " " Double objects: Repetition of Pronouns : the Past Participle.....                 | 91   |



|        |  |     |
|--------|--|-----|
| LESSON | XXIX. <i>Le</i> , etc., <i>Expletive</i> : Possessive Pronouns: Possessive Idioms: <i>En</i> possessive..... | 95  |
| "      | XXX. Demonstrative Pronouns: Idioms ( <i>ce</i> and <i>il</i> )...   | 99  |
| "      | XXXI. Interrogative Pronouns.....  | 103 |
| "      | XXXII. Relative Pronouns.....  | 106 |
| "      | XXXIII. Indefinite Pronouns.....   | 110 |
| "      | XXXIV. <i>Être</i> , auxiliary: Passive and Neuter Verbs...  | 116 |
| "      | XXXV. The Reflexive Verb: Simple Tenses: the Reflexive Idiom.....  | 121 |
| "      | XXXVI. The Reflexive Verb; Compound Tenses: Direct and Indirect Reflexives.....                              | 126 |
| "      | XXXVII. Impersonal Verbs, and Idioms: the Auxiliary and the Past Participle.....                             | 130 |
| "      | XXXVIII. Adverbs; Comparison: Position.....  | 136 |
| "      | XXXIX. Negatives: <i>Ne</i> alone: <i>Ne</i> not translated.....   | 139 |
| "      | XL. Prepositions: the Present Participle.....  | 143 |
| "      | XLI. The Infinitive.....   | 147 |
| "      | XLII. Conjunctions: Idioms.....  | 152 |
| "      | XLIII. The Subjunctive.....  | 156 |
| "      | XLIV. The Numerals; Cardinal and Ordinal, etc....  | 164 |
| "      | XLV. Use of Numerals: Dates, etc.....  | 167 |
| "      | XLVI. Compound Nouns and Adjectives: Number and Gender, Special Forms: the Gender of Nouns....               | 172 |
| "      | XLVII. Syntax: Idiom: Order of words: Emphasis..   | 177 |

PART II.

|   |  |     |
|---|--|-----|
| " | XLVIII. Irregular Verbs: Introduction: Synopsis....                                      | 183 |
| " | XLIX. Irregular Verbs: First Conjugation.....  | 185 |
| " | L. " " Second Conjugation, Class I.  | 187 |
| " | LI. " " " " Class II., III.  | 192 |
| " | LII. " " Third Conjugation; verbs in <i>-aire</i> .....                                  | 196 |
| " | LIII. " " Third Conjugation; verbs in <i>-oire, -uire</i> .....                          | 199 |
| " | LIV. " " Third Conjugation; verbs in <i>-ire, -ore, -ure</i> .....                       | 202 |
| " | LV. " " Third Conjugation; verbs in <i>-âtre, -ôître, -indre</i> .....                   | 206 |
| " | LVI. " " Third Conjugation; verbs in <i>-oudre, -vre; prendre, mettre, vaincre</i> ..... | 210 |

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| LESSON LVII. Verbs in -OIR ; <i>recevoir</i> , etc. ; <i>pleuvoir</i> , <i>mouvoir</i> ..              | 215  |
| “ LVIII. “ “ <i>pouvoir</i> , <i>valoir</i> , <i>falloir</i> , <i>vouloir</i> ,<br><i>savoir</i> ..... | 218  |
| “ LIX. “ “ <i>choir</i> , <i>voir</i> , <i>seoir</i> , and compounds.                                  | 222  |
| List of Model Irregular Verbs.....   | 226  |
| Table of Numerals.....   | 228  |
| Vocabulary, French-English.....  | 230  |
| “ English-French.....  | 250  |

# INTRODUCTORY

## FRENCH LESSONS.

---

### LESSON I.

#### 1. The Alphabet.

|    |    | NAME.        |     |     | NAME.         |     |     | NAME.           |
|----|----|--------------|-----|-----|---------------|-----|-----|-----------------|
| A, | a, | <i>ah.*</i>  | J,  | j,  | <i>zhée.</i>  | S,  | s,  | <i>ess.</i>     |
| B, | b, | <i>bey.</i>  | (K, | k), | <i>kah.</i>   | T,  | t,  | <i>tee.— ?</i>  |
| C, | c, | <i>sey.</i>  | L,  | l,  | <i>ell.</i>   | U,  | u,  | <i>(u).†</i>    |
| D, | d, | <i>dey.</i>  | M,  | m,  | <i>emm.</i>   | V,  | v,  | <i>vey.</i>     |
| E, | e, | <i>eh.</i>   | N,  | n,  | <i>enn.</i>   | (W, | w), | <i>{ dooble</i> |
| F, | f, | <i>eff.</i>  | O,  | o,  | <i>o.</i>     |     |     | <i>vey.</i>     |
| G, | g, | <i>zhéy.</i> | P,  | p,  | <i>pey.</i>   | X,  | x,  | <i>ix.</i>      |
| H, | h, | <i>ash.</i>  | Q,  | q,  | <i>(ku).†</i> | Y,  | y,  | <i>ee grec.</i> |
| I, | i, | <i>ee.</i>   | R,  | r,  | <i>err.</i>   | Z,  | z,  | <i>zed.</i>     |

**Note.**—*K, k,* and *W, w,* occur only in foreign words.

#### Accents.

2. The following orthographic signs, or written *accents*, are employed :

1. The *acute* accent (´), used only over the vowel *e* ; as, *été*.

2. The *grave* accent (`), used also over *e*, and in a few cases over *a, u* ; as, *mère, là, où*.

\* *ah* to be pronounced like *a* in *father*.

† The names of *q* and *u* must be learned from the pronunciation of the teacher.

3. The *circumflex* accent (^), used over all the vowels ; as, âme, rêve, dîne, dôme, dû.

**Note.**—The circumflex accent is used only over *long* vowels, and often marks *contraction*, as maître (from Latin magister).

The accents are used partly to mark the pronunciation of the vowels, and partly for the distinction of similar words. *The proper accent should never be omitted in writing.*

### Other Orthographic Signs.

3. Other signs used in writing or printing are :

1. The *diæresis* (or *tréma*) (¨) marks the separation of two vowels in pronunciation ; as, haïr, Noël.

2. The *hyphen* (or *tiret*) (-) marks union, or close connection ; as, peut-être, a-t-il.

3. The *cedilla* (cédille) (¸), under the letter *c*, gives to it the sound of *s* ; as, façade, ça.

4. The *apostrophe* (') marks the omission of a vowel at the end of a word before an immediately following word beginning with a vowel or silent *h*. This omission is called *elision*. (Lesson V., 2.)

The marks of *punctuation* are the same as in English.

### Syllables.

4. The general rules for the division of syllables are :

1. A consonant between two vowels is joined with the latter ; as, do-mi-no, pro-ba-bi-li-té. It will be observed that this gives to the vowels a more open sound than in English.

2. Two consonants must be separated, as al-la, im-mor-tel, con-nu. Except :

3. The liquids *l* and *r* preceded by a mute, also *gn* when liquid (Lesson IV., 12), and the double consonants *ch*, *ph*, *th*, must not be separated ; as, sa-ble, sa-bre, vo-tre, ro-gnon, so-phis-te.

Syllables ending with a vowel are called *open* syllables ; those ending with a consonant are called *closed* syllables.

### Quantity.

5. The general rules for the *quantity*—*long* or *short*—of vowels are :

1. In a closed syllable the vowel is short.
2. In an open syllable the vowel may be long or short.
3. Diphthongs and circumflex vowels (2) are long.

Special rules and exceptions must be learned from the teacher, as they occur.

### Silent Letters.

**6.** A chief difficulty in French pronunciation arises from the use of silent letters. The following cases are here noted in advance :

1. Final *e* (unaccented) is silent in words of more than one syllable.
2. Final consonants are generally silent.

**Note 1.**—This final *e*, though silent in ordinary pronunciation, is yet held as forming a syllable under the rule above given (4, 1), thus leaving the preceding vowel *open*, as *da-me*, *ma-la-de*. In poetry this *e* is often sounded.

**Note 2.**—A silent final consonant leaves the syllable *open*, as though the word ended with the preceding vowel, as *cas*, pronounced *ca*.

For the present such silent letters will be indicated by italics.

**Remark.**—In this Lesson, and in the following Lessons on Pronunciation, only general rules are given for the beginner. Exceptions are left for explanation by the teacher, or for further study hereafter.

### Exercise in Orthography and Syllabication.

The pupil will name the accents, etc., and mark the division into syllables : the pronunciation will be given by the teacher.

*alla, âme, appas, tulipe, cité, mère, dîne, dina, dit, siècle, sophisme, lettre, maître, probable, vérité, véritable, appelle, façade, plaça, naïve, ciguë, a-t-elle, dit-il, l'or, l'âne, s'il, médecine, côte, côté, mel, mèle, mélé, mèle, noble, nobilité, noblesse, espère, espéré, déjà.*

**Remark.**—This exercise may be extended by the teacher, using examples from the following Lessons ; and further exercises in spelling and pronouncing, by syllables, should be added hereafter, when the elementary sounds have been learned. *Let the French names be given to the letters.*

The accents are not usually printed over capital letters, except *Ê, ê*.

## LESSON II.

## I. PRONUNCIATION OF THE SIMPLE VOWELS.

## A.

1. *a* has the sound of *a* in *father*, more or less extended.\*

*Open* in *ma, sa, la, là, las, pas, cas, mâ, pâte.*

*Closed* in *bal, mal, malle, salle, annal, batte, patte.*

The practical distinction of long *a* and short *a*, outside of the general rule (L. I., 5), must be learned by experience.

## E (unaccented).

2.—1. *e* has in *closed* syllables the sound of *e* in *met*; as, *avec, bec, tel, telle, blesse, espace, exact.*

2. *e* *open* has the dull sound of *e* in *over*; as, *le, te, me, ne, leva, mena, promena, releva.*

3. At the end of words of more than one syllable, that is, where there is any other audible vowel (L. I., 6, Note 1), *e* is silent (*e* *mute*); as,

*balle, belle, molle, madame, parade, fable.*

This will no longer be indicated by the type.

4. *e* before silent final consonants has the sound of *a* in *fate*, more or less extended; as,

*les, mes, es, est, mets, nez, pied, assez, parlez, aller, donner, blesser.*

5. Before *r*, not silent, *e* has the sound of *e* in *there*; as, *mer, ver, verre, fier, hier, parlerre.*

## E (accented).

3.—1. *é* has the sound of *a* in *fate*; as, *né, gré, malgré, pré, été, répété, célébré.*

2. *è* has the more open sound of *ei* in *reign*; as, *dès, très, près, après, lève, élève, fidèle, célèbre.*

3. Before *r*, *è* obtains the sound of *e* in *there*; as, *mère, père, colère, amère, préfère.*

---

\* The long and the short sounds of *a* are here treated as essentially the same in *quality*. Some authorities give *two* sounds, counting one like *a* in *bat*; others *three*, counting an intermediate sound like *a* in *alas*. These variations are here considered as differences in *quantity* only. Perfect definition is, of course, impossible; such distinctions can be tested only by careful *oral* exercise.



4. *ê* has the same sound as *è*—always long ; as,  
*prêt, prête, prêta, même, tête, être.*

**Note.**—*é, è*, occur only in *open* syllables. Followed by *e mute* in the next syllable, *é* is generally changed to *è*. (Examples hereafter, L. XXV., etc.)

## I.

4. *i* has the sound of *i* in *machine*, more or less extended.  
*Open* in *mi, mis, fini, dit, dite, dime, dîne, île.*  
*Closed* in *il, fil, mil, mille, inné, immortel.*

## O.

5. *o* has two sounds : 1, when final (L. I., 6, Note 2) or circumflex, like *o* in *robe* ; as,  
*zéro, mot, nos, repos, tôt, dépôt, côte, côté.*  
 2. In most other cases like *o* in *rob* ; as,  
*roc, fol, folle, robe, mode, école, soldat, porte.*  
 This distinction is learned in detail only by experience.

## U.

6. The French *u* has a sound intermediate between *i* (English *ee* in *see*) and *o* (in *so*), and may be formed by placing the organs so as to sound *o*, and then endeavoring quickly to utter *ee*. The sound is sharp and compressed (like German *ü*), and is unlike any of the sounds of English *u*. It should be carefully practiced with the teacher.  
*Open* in *dû, crû, fût, brûle, mûre, muse, musée.*  
*Closed* in *sud, duc, nul, nulle, lutte, lutte.*  
 (For *u* after *g*, see L. III., 4.)

## Y.

7. *y* has the same sound as *i* (4). It occurs only in words of Greek origin ; as, *type, style, système, systole.*

## II. DIPHTHONGS.

8. *ai, ei*, sound like *ai* in *hail* ; as,  
*mai, mais, fait, aime, aimai, aimerai.*  
*reine, veine, pleine, Seine.*  
 But before *r*, like *e* in *there* ; as,  
*faire, paire, corsaire.*

9. *au, eau*, sound like *o long* (in *robe*) ; as,  
*au, haut, maux, crapaud, saurai.*  
*eau, l'eau, beau, veau, bateau, tableau.*
10. *eu, œu*, sound like *u* in *burn* ; as,  
*feu, peu, peur, heure, heureux.*  
*vœu, cœur, sœur, œuf, bœuf, œuvre.*
11. But *eu* sounds like *u* (6) in the parts of the verb  
*avoir, to have* ; as,  
*eu, eus, eut, eûmes, etc.*
12. *oi* sounds like *wa* in *was* ; the broader sound, as in  
*wall*, is to be avoided ; as,  
*moi, roi, soi, boît, toile, voir.*
13. *ou* sounds like *oo* in *moon* ; as,  
*mou, cou, cour, coule, couleur.*

### III. COMBINED VOWELS.

14. *i, u, ou*, preceding other vowels, do not form diphthongs, but the sounds are rapidly blended, so as to give to *i* the semi-vowel sound of *y* (as in *you*) ; and to *u, ou*, that of *w* (in *weed*) ; as,

*nia, piano, pitié, dieu, milieu, troisième,*  
*tua, tué, suave, suite, joua, joué, oui (=we).*

15. *ay, oy, uy*, present two combinations, as if *y* were = *i-i*—the first *i*, with the preceding vowel, giving the sound of *ai, oi, ui* ; and the second beginning a new syllable, as above (14) ; thus,

*paya (=pai-ia), payé (=pai-ié), pays (=pai-is),*  
*royal (=roi-ial), voyez, fuyez (=fui-iez), appuya.*

16. The effect of the diæresis in marking the separation of vowel sounds has been already noted (L. I., 3). Likewise the accented *e* always retains its separate pronunciation ; as,  
*fléau, déité, réuni, poète, poêle (=flé-au, etc.)*

**Note.**—*e* mute does not affect the sound of a preceding vowel or diphthong ; as, *aimée, plie, rue, paie, etc.*

### Exercise in Vowel Pronunciation.

The consonants not marked as silent are to be pronounced as in English.

1. *Ma, ta, sa, la, il, elle, tu, du, si, fi, lu, mu, cru, plu, car, par,*



gare, mal, art, pas, part, près, ci, pris, fit, mis, pré, plat, blé, bleu, dit, ôté, roi, moi, toi, crois.—Deux, creux, clair, au, beau, faut, nid, pli, cri, gris, sais, plaît, tais, mais.—Ou, bout, tout, clou, mou, doux, trou, vie, pie, mie, creux, feux, peut, puis, lui, fui, sur, sûr, mur, pur, peur, vous, tour, four, pour, pourri, tournée.—La mère, le père, le frère, la sœur, les plats, les bras, les ruses.—Après, avare, porter, fer, boulet, bannir, dirai, direz, épais, espoir, été, livre.

## LESSON III.

### PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

As a general rule, the consonants in French are sounded as in English. Only the principal differences, therefore, need be given here.

**1. Silent Consonants.**—1. The general rule for silent final consonants has been already given (L. I., 6). The same rule applies also to two, or even more consonants; as, *doigt*, *doigts*, *mets*, etc.

2. As exceptions, *c*, *f*, *g*, and *l* (when not *liquid*, L. IV.), are sounded; as, *avec*, *chef*, *coq*, *mal*, *miel*, etc.

3. *r* final is sounded except after *e*; as, *par*, *finir*, *cor*, *dur*, *peur*, *cœur*, etc. After *e*, *r* is generally silent (*e* having the sound of *é*, L. II., 2); as, *aller*, *donner*, *léger*, etc.

Except in monosyllables; as, *mer*, *fer*, *ver*, etc.; and in a few words: *amer*, *fier*, *hier*, *enfer*, *cuiller* (L. II., 2, 5).

But, before another consonant, *r* is sounded after all vowels; as, *perd*, *concert*, *mort*, etc.

4. In monosyllables, in foreign words, and in proper names, final consonants are often sounded, contrary to the rule.

2. *c* sounds just as in English: like *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*; like *s* before *e*, *i*, *y*. But the cedilla gives to it the *s* sound also before *a*, *o*, *u*; as, *façade*, *reçoit*, *reçu*.

3. *ch* sounds like *sh* in *shall*; as, *chez*, *chaîne*; except in a few foreign words, when it sounds like *k*; as, *Christ*, *chaos*, *chorus*, etc.

4. *g* sounds before *a*, *o*, *u*, like *g* in *go*; before *e*, *i*, *y*,

like *s* in *pleasure*; as, *gare*, *goutte*, *gusto*; *gerbe*, *gilet*, *gypse*. On the other hand, the *soft* sound is given before *a*, *o*, *u*, by inserting a silent *e*; as, *mangea*, *George*, *geôle*, etc.; and the *hard* sound before *e*, *i*, *y*, by inserting a silent *u*; as, *guerre*, *guide*, *gueule*, *vigueur*, *figue*, etc.

5. *h* is never actually sounded. But in grammar the distinction is made between *h aspirate*, which prevents the elision of a preceding vowel, and *h mute*, which permits such elision. Thus *h* is *aspirate* in *la hache*, *le héros*, *le hibou*, *la honte*, etc.; *h* is *mute* in *l'habit*, *l'herbe*, *l'homme*, *l'huile*. *h* is *mute* in the majority of words, especially in those derived from Latin and Greek.

6. *j* sounds like *s* in *pleasure*, the same as soft *g* (4); as, *jamais*, *jeune*, *joli*, *juge*.

7. *l* has sometimes a peculiar *liquid* sound, which will be given hereafter. Otherwise, as in English. *l* is silent in *fil*, *son* (=feece).

8. *m*, *n*, have sometimes a peculiar *nasal* sound, which will be given hereafter.

9. *p* is silent before *t* in *sept*, *seven*, *septième*, *seventh*, and a few other words.

10. *q*, *qu*, like *k*, as *coq*, *qui*, *quel*, *quart*. But in a few words the *u* is sounded (=kw); as, *équateur*, *quarto*, etc.

11. *r* has a stronger *lingual* sound than in English.

12. *s* between two vowels has the soft sound of *z*; as, *rose*, *aise*, *aisé*; except in compounds like *parasol*, etc., where it begins one of the components.

*s* is very common as a grammatical ending. In a few short words, *es*, *les*, *des*, *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *ces*, the preceding *e* sounds like *é* (L. II., 2); elsewhere, the *s* produces no change; as, *rue*, *rués*; *bonne*, *bonnes*; *parle*, *parles*, etc.

13. *t* generally as in English; but before *i*, in the termination of many words derived from Latin, it has the sound of *s* (not *sh*, as in the similar words in English); as, *partial*, *inertie*, *national*, *initier*, *ambitieux* (like *par-see-al*, *in-er-see*, etc.).

*t* final is sounded in *sept*, *seven*, and *huit*, *eight*, and a few other monosyllables.

14. *th* has the hard sound of *t*; as, thé, thème, théâtre.

15. *x* sounds like *s* in the numerals six, *six*; dix, *ten*; soixante, *sixty*; and their derivatives sixième, dixième, dixaine, soixantième; also in deuxième, *second*; but it is silent in deux, *two*.

### Exercise in Pronunciation.

All consonants not marked as silent are pronounced.

Bas, basse, base, beau, beaux, jeu, jeux, car, cher, chers, chère, chères, ligue, guère, guéri, juge, jugez, neigé, neigea, le hasard, le haut, la hauteur, l'hiver, l'honnête, l'honnêteté, rasoir, aptitude, perdu, cousine, nationalité, partiaux, initié, minutieux, minutieuse, chose, choix, avec, vice, place, place, thème, chercher, chef, rouge, rougeole, rougeâtre, dix, dixaine, misère, misérable.

## LESSON IV.

### I. THE NASALS.

1. A single *m* or *n*, ending a word or a syllable—that is, when not followed by a vowel—loses its character as a consonant, and acquires a peculiar *nasal* sound, which also modifies the sound of the preceding vowel or diphthong. These nasal sounds are very important in French, and should be carefully practiced.

2. *am, an,* } Sound like *ah*, pronounced with the nos-  
*em, en,* } trils closed; as,  
 camp, ample, flambeau; plan, dans, manteau,  
 temps, temple, empire; sens, sentir, enfant.

3. *im, in,* } Have the nasal sound as in *anger*; \* as,  
*ym, yn,* } simple, importe, impie; fin, vin, indolent.  
*aim, ain,* } symbole, symphonie, nymphe; syncope,  
*eim, ein,* } syntaxe.  
 daim, faim, essaim; bain, pain, crainte.  
 Rheims; sein, frein, peindre, atteindre.

4. *om, on,* have the nasal sound as in *longer*; \* as,  
 nom, ombre, plomb, bon, bonté, oncle.

---

\* The nasal sound immediately preceding *g*; but without the consonant sound of *g*.

5. *um, un, eun*, have the nasal sound as in *hunger*; \* as, *parfum, humble*; *un, brun, chacun*; *jeûn*.
6. *oin* has the nasal sound of *in* above, preceded by *w*, as in *twang*; \* as, *foin, coin, oindre, moins, moindre*.
7. *ien, final*, has the nasal sound of *in* above, preceded by *i*, as in *meander*; as, *mien, tien, chien, ancien*. Also in the forms of the verbs *venir, to come, tenir, to hold*; as, *viens, vient*; *tiens, tient* (and their compounds). But elsewhere the sound proper to *i-en* (2); as, *patient, patience, orient, science*.

8. According to this rule (1), *m* or *n* preceding a vowel, or when doubled (*mm, nn*), have their regular consonant sound. So also does *mn*; as, *ami, ennemi, immortel, inné*; *amnistie*.

A few words, mostly compounds of the preposition *en*, are exceptions; as, *emmener, enivrer, ennui*. In *femme, woman*, and in the adverbial ending *-emment*, *emm* sounds like English *am*; as, *violemment, prudemment, etc.*

9. In the third person plural of verbs the ending *-ent* is wholly silent; as, *ils content, they count*; *ils violent, they violate*; but *content, violent, adjectives* (only *t* silent).

## II. THE LIQUIDS.

10. *l, liquid*, sounds like *y* in *bayou*:

1. In *ill*, when not beginning a word; as, *brilla (bree-ya), brillant, billet (bee-yay)*.

If silent *e* follows, the *y* sound is only half heard; as, *filles, famille, brille, etc.* This is called a *vanishing sound*; it cannot be represented to the eye.

A vowel preceding *i* does not here combine with it, but sounds distinct; as,

*trava-illa, conseilla, fouiller, veuillez (veu-il-lez).*  
*trava-ille, conseille, fouille, veuille (veu-ille).*

2. Similarly, in *il final*, preceded by a vowel; as, *trava-il, conseil, deuil, fenouil (fenou-il)*.

**Note.**—*œ* and *ue* will here sound as *eu*; as, *œil (eu-il), cueille (keu-ille), accueil, etc.*

---

\* The nasal sound immediately preceding *g*; but without the consonant sound of *g*.



11. This sound is known as *l mouillée*, and must be carefully practiced. A few words, *mille*, *million*, *ville*, *village*, *pupille*, *tranquille*, etc., are exceptions.

12. *gn*, *liquid*, sounds as in *cognac* (*conyac*) ; as, *régner*, *poignard*, *compagnon*, *compagnie*.

If silent *e* follows, the *y* sound *vanishes* (as in 10) ; as, *règne*, *digne*, *besogne*, etc.

A few words are exceptions ; as, *cog-nat*, *igné*, etc.

### Exercise in Pronunciation.

The student will apply the rules for silent consonants, which will not hereafter be indicated by the type, except in special cases.

1. Bon, bonne, quand, personne, besoin, moins, fallut, peint, cœur, Dieu, bouton, tousser.—Notre, monde, mérite, danger, vallée, ancien, cheveu, archer, prend, grand, plan, bain, pile, côte, côté, coton, rond, mentir, un, une, brun, brune, jatte, chatte, rouge, mouche, chose, rose, rosser, dix, dizaine, tendre, prendre, tondu, fondue, boulanger, dangereux.

2. Paille, grille, compagnie, mouillé, gagné, bétail, linge, ligne, longueur, douze, nation, essentiel, ambitieux, profession, jardinage, malheureux, l'hirondelle, choisir.—Scorpion, calomnie, baptême, cuiller, temps, cinquième, qui, que, quoi, pâte, répété, bonnet, ver, verre, fier, abîme, finirai, bateau, mantelet, paysan, œuvre, ouvrage.—Donc, chrétien, hurler, poison, poisson, boisson, potion, population, leçon, gâteaux, printemps, reçois, cotillon, annoncer, amateur, apprentissage.

## LESSON V.

### I. CONNECTION OF WORDS (LIAISON).

1. A final consonant, even when otherwise silent, preceding immediately a word beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, is sometimes pronounced, as if it stood between the two words. This connection of sound is called *liaison*. Observe the following rules :

1. *f* in *liaison* has the sound of *v* ; as, *neuf ans*, like *neuf-ans*;

2. *s*, or *x*, has the sound of *z*; as, ces amis, like cez-amis; aux hommes, like auz-hommes.

3. *d* has the sound of *t*; as, quand il, like quant-il.

4. *m* and *n*, nasal, retain the nasal tone, yet add their own proper consonant sound; as, un ami, like un-n-ami.

5. Only the *last* of two or more final consonants is thus connected; as, est allé, like é-t-allé (*not é-st-allé*).

6. Liaison never occurs in the conjunction *et*, *and*, which is thus distinguished from the verb *est*, *is*; as, et une dame, and a lady; est une dame, is a lady; et il, and he; est-il, is he?

7. Neither *liaison* nor elision (L. I., 3), ever occurs before *oui*, *yes*; or *onze*, *onzième*, *eleven*, *eleventh*; as, mais oui, le onze.

**Note.**—*Liaison* occurs only between words which are closely connected in sense. Careful attention and practice are required for its right employment. For the present it will be indicated by a curved line between the words.

## II. ELISION.

2. *Elision* (L. I. 3, 4) causes the complete loss in pronunciation of the elided vowel. Like *liaison* it implies close connection in sense. It occurs, however, only in a few very common words, which, as they are of importance in learning the grammatical forms, are here inserted for convenient reference:

(1.) Elision occurs regularly in the articles *le*, *la*; the personal pronouns *je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *se*, *when preceding the verb*; the preposition *de*; the negative *ne*; and *que* (in all its senses).

(2.) Elision occurs in the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, before the verb *être*, *to be*; in *si*, *if*, before the pronouns *il*, *ils*; and in the compound conjunctions *lorsque*, *puisque*, *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*; *elle*, *elles*; *on*, *un*, *une*.

(3.) Elision occurs also in a few special forms, which may be considered as compounds; as, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, *some one*; *jusqu'à*, *until*; *presqu'île*, *peninsula*; *entr'acte*, *interlude*, etc.

**Note.**—The apostrophe is written also in *grand'mère*, *grandmother*, and a few similar compounds (L. XLVI.).

**Remark.**—The elision of final *e* in *sound* often occurs in rapid

speech when not indicated in writing ; as, je le sais, pronounced je l'sais, etc. This must be learned by experience.

### Exercises in Reading.

#### 1. (With *liaisons* marked.)

Les hommes, les enfants, des arbres, nos amis, vos habits, nous avons, vous avez eu, ils ont, pas encore, avec un enfant, ses plus cruels ennemis. — Songez à vos affaires. — Vous en souvenez-vous encore ? — Elles apprenaient à lire. — Mon oncle est arrivé. — Il avait encore beaucoup à faire. — Un homme et une femme. — Cet habit est à moi. — Les Anglais sont industriels. — Vous en avez eu assez. — La ville allait être prise. — Les habitants de Rome avaient espéré cela. — Trois officiers firent tête aux assaillants.

#### 2. (*Liaisons* not marked.)

Un loup passait près d'une cabane. Il fut aperçu par un âne au travers d'un trou qui était dans la porte d'une étable. L'âne se mit à braire de toutes ses forces, et à insulter le loup. "Écoute," dit-il, "mangeur de brebis et d'agneaux, fléau des troupeaux, animal cruel et sanguinaire, viens ici : je me moque de ta force et de ta cruauté." — "Faquin," dit le loup, "si tu étais hors de ton étable, je te ferais tenir un langage plus poli ; mais tu n'es qu'un âne et un poltron."

C'est le caractère d'un lâche d'être courageux, quand il est hors de danger, et d'insulter les autres, quand il est à l'abri de leur ressentiment.

#### 3.

Un âne trouva par hasard une peau de lion, et s'en revêtit. Ainsi déguisé, il s'en alla dans les forêts, et répandit partout la terreur et la consternation ; tous les animaux fuyaient devant lui. Enfin il rencontra son maître, qu'il voulut épouvanter aussi. Mais le bon homme aperçut quelque chose de long aux deux côtés de la tête de l'animal et lui dit : Maître baudet, quoique vous soyez vêtu comme un lion, vos oreilles vous trahissent, et montrent que vous n'êtes réellement qu'un âne.

Un sot a toujours un endroit qui le découvre et le rend ridicule.

Further Exercises may be given in copying French, requiring *liaisons* to be marked.

**Remark.**—The foregoing Lessons are intended only for the general guidance of the beginner. No rules of pronunciation, however complete

can take the place of oral instruction. The pronunciation, however, if not carefully learned at first, is much more difficult afterwards. It is therefore recommended that, for the present, each Lesson should be *dictated* in advance by the teacher, and that every new word should be carefully learned *with its correct pronunciation*. The general rules should also be frequently referred to, and reviewed from time to time.

## LESSON VI.

### THE ARTICLES.

There are in French, as in English, two articles, the definite and the indefinite.

1. The definite article is, in the singular, masculine *le*, feminine *la*. Before a vowel or silent *h* it is elided for both genders, *l'*; as :

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| le père, the father;                              | la mère, the mother. |
| le roi, the king;                                 | la reine, the queen. |
| le livre, the book;                               | la plume, the pen.   |
| le soleil, the sun;                               | la lune, the moon.   |
| l'ami (for le ami), the friend ( <i>masc.</i> ).  |                      |
| l'amie (for la amie), the friend ( <i>fem.</i> ). |                      |
| l'homme (for le homme), the man.                  |                      |
| l'herbe (for la herbe), the herb.                 |                      |

The plural is *les*, for both genders; as :

|                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| les pères, the fathers;              | les mères, the mothers.               |
| les rois, the kings;                 | les reines, the queens.               |
| les amis, the friends ( <i>m.</i> ); | les amies, the friends ( <i>f.</i> ). |
| les hommes, the men;                 | les herbes, the herbs ( <i>f.</i> ).  |

2. The indefinite article is masculine, *un*; feminine, *une*, and has no plural; as :

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| un père, a father;              | une mère, a mother.               |
| un roi, a king;                 | une reine, a queen.               |
| un ami, a friend ( <i>m.</i> ); | une amie, a friend ( <i>f.</i> ). |
| un homme, a man;                | une herbe, an herb.               |

**Note.**—The definite article in the singular indicates the gender of nouns beginning with a consonant, but not of those beginning with a vowel or silent *h*. These are, however indicated by the indefinite article. It will be found convenient to learn with every noun the proper form of the article indicating its gender. There is no *neuter* gender in French.



### Contractions of the Definite Article.

**3.—1.** With the preposition *de*, meaning *of*, *from*, etc., the article forms *le*, *les*, are contracted into *du*, *des*, thus: *du père*, of the father; *des pères*, of the fathers; *des mères*, of the mothers, etc.

**2.** With the preposition *à*, meaning *to*, *at*, etc., the same forms, *le*, *les*, are contracted into *au*, *aux*, thus: *au père*, to the father; *aux pères*, to the fathers; *aux mères*, to the mothers, etc.

These contractions occur, therefore, only in the *masculine singular before a noun beginning with a consonant*, and in the *plural always*. In other cases the prepositions are written in full, as:

*de la femme*, of the woman.

*à la femme*, to the woman.

*de l'ami (m.)*, or *de l'amie (f.)*, of the friend.

*à l'ami (m.)*, or *à l'amie (f.)*, to the friend, etc.

**4.** The complete forms of the definite article may be exhibited thus:

|                      | <i>Singular,</i> | <i>M.</i>    | <i>F.</i>    | <i>M. &amp; F.</i> | <i>Plural, M. &amp; F.</i> |
|----------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Simple Forms.</i> | <i>le</i>        | <i>la</i>    | <i>l'</i>    |                    | <i>les</i> , the.          |
| <i>With De.</i>      | <i>du</i>        | <i>de la</i> | <i>de l'</i> |                    | <i>des</i> , of the, etc.  |
| <i>With À.</i>       | <i>au</i>        | <i>à la</i>  | <i>à l'</i>  |                    | <i>aux</i> , to the, etc.  |

**Note.**—The old form *ès* for *en les*, *in the*, is still used in some technical phrases.

**Remark.**—The *simple forms* are used with the subject or direct object (Latin *nominative* or *accusative* cases). The forms with *de* correspond, generally, to the possessive (Latin *genitive*) case; those with *à* to the indirect object (Latin *dative* case). Inasmuch, however, as the relations of French nouns are not expressed by case declension, as in Latin, and as this correspondence is by no means complete, it is deemed best not to use these terms.

**5.—1.** In French the dependent noun, with *de*, always follows the principal noun; as, *la maison du père*, the father's house, etc.

**2.** The indirect object is expressed by *à* with nouns, even when in English no preposition is expressed; as, give the dog a bone; in French, *au chien*, to the dog.

*Let only the true idiomatic form be always used in translation.*

### Use of the Definite Article.

6. The use of the definite article in French does not correspond entirely with its use in English. Details will be learned by experience. For the present we give only the following general rules:

1. The definite article is used with *abstract* and *general* nouns; as, le vice, vice; la vie, life; l'homme, man; les hommes,\* men, etc.; du vice, of vice; de la vie, of life; de l'homme, of man; des hommes, of men, etc.

2. The article (definite or indefinite) must be repeated before every noun to which it belongs in sense; as, un homme et une femme, a man and (a) woman; l'homme, la femme, et l'enfant, the man, (the) woman, and (the) child; les hommes, les femmes,\* et les enfants,\* the men, (the) women, and (the) children.

Similarly in the forms with *de* or *à*; as, de l'homme, de la femme, et de l'enfant, of the man, (of the) woman, and (of the) child; des hommes, des femmes, et des enfants, of the men, (of the) women, and (of the) children, etc.

3. In many cases therefore, according to 1, the sense of the article † can be known only by the context; thus, le vice, du vice, etc., may mean either *vice*, *of vice*, or *the vice*, *of the vice*, etc.; l'homme, les hommes, etc., either *the man*, *the men*, or *man*, *men*. The uses of the article in French require special attention.

### Vocabulary.

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| l'homme, the man;      | la femme, the woman.    |
| le père, the father;   | la mère, the mother.    |
| le frère, the brother; | la sœur, the sister.    |
| le roi, the king;      | la reine, the queen.    |
| le livre, the book;    | la plume, the pen.      |
| le jardin, the garden; | la pomme, the apple.    |
| le verre, the glass;   | la poire, the pear.     |
| le vice, (the) vice;   | la vertu, (the) virtue. |
| un_ oncle, an uncle;   | une tante, an aunt.     |
| un_ ami, a friend;     | une amie, a friend.     |

donne, gives; donnent (*pl.*), give; et, and; ou, or.

The above nouns form their plural by adding *s*.

---

\* Plural nouns—see next lesson.

† Hereafter when the word *article* is used alone the definite article is meant.

## Reading Lesson 1.

(1.) *Singular Forms*.—1. Le livre du père. 2. L'amie de la reine. 3. La plume de l'oncle. 4. La sœur d'une reine. 5. Le livre d'un ami ou d'une amie. 6. Le frère de la reine. 7. L'oncle ou la tante. 8. Une amie du roi. 9. L'ami *du* vice ou de *la* vertu. 10. La sœur donne une plume au frère. 11. Le roi donne un livre à l'amie de la reine. 12. La reine donne un jardin à l'ami du roi. 13. Un ami de l'oncle et de la tante. 14. La sœur donne une plume et un livre à l'ami du frère.

(2.) *Singular and Plural Forms*.—15. Les frères du roi. 16. Les pommes du jardin. 17. Les poires des jardins du roi. 18. Les amies de la reine. 19. Les frères des rois. 20. *Les* vices et *les* vertus. 21. Les oncles des sœurs. 22. Les amis *du* vice. 23. Les frères donnent les livres *aux* sœurs. 24. L'oncle donne les poires *aux* amis. 25. Les jardins des rois et des reines. 26. Le père donne les livres de la tante *aux* amis des sœurs.

## Theme 1.

1. An apple and a pear. 2. The uncle and the aunt. 3. A pen and a glass. 4. The brothers of the king (or *the king's* brothers). 5. The queen's pens. 6. The garden of the friend. 7. The gardens of the friends (or *the friends' gardens*). 8. The uncle's books. 9. To the man's father. 10. The father gives the books to the sisters. 11. The mother gives the apples and the pears to the friends of the father. 12. *Virtues* and *vices*. 13. The virtues and *the* vices of *the* kings. 14. The brothers give the books to the sisters' friends. 15. *Men*, women, and books. 16. The men's glasses. 17. Of the king's friends. 18. The queen gives *the king* an apple. 19. The brothers give the sister a book. 20. The friends of *virtue*. 21. The father's and the mother's friends.

**Note.**—Italics in the exercises call attention to differences of idiom already explained.

## LESSON VII.

## NOUNS.

1. The Gender of Nouns is determined partly by signification, partly by termination (L. XLVI.). The rules for gender are too complex to be given here. It is important, how-

ever, for the beginner to learn at once the gender of every noun that he uses (L. VI., 2, *Note*).

2. There is no *Case Declension* of nouns. The relations of the noun in the sentence are indicated only by the construction, by prepositions, or by the form of the article.

### The Plural of Nouns.

3. The Plural of Nouns is usually formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, le roi, *pl.* les rois; la reine, *pl.* les reines; l'ami, *pl.* les amis. The addition of *s* makes no change in the pronunciation.

4. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, remain unchanged in the plural, as:

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| le fils, the son; | les fils, the sons. |
| la noix, the nut; | les noix, the nuts. |
| le nez, the nose; | les nez, the noses. |

5. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, form their plural by adding *x*, as:

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| le chapeau, the hat; | les chapeaux, the hats. |
| le feu, the fire;    | les feux, the fires.    |
| le vœu, the wish;    | les vœux, the wishes.   |

6. The following nouns in *ou* also add *x*:

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| le bijou, the jewel;    | les bijoux, the jewels.    |
| le caillou, the pebble; | les cailloux, the pebbles. |
| le chou, the cabbage;   | les choux, the cabbages.   |
| le genou, the knee;     | les genoux, the knees.     |
| le hibou, the owl;      | les hiboux, the owls.      |
| le joujou, the toy;     | les joujoux, the toys.     |
| le pou, the louse;      | les poux, the lice.        |

7. Most nouns in *al*, *ail*, change these endings into *aux* in the plural, as:

|                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| le cheval, the horse; | les chevaux, the horses. |
| le travail, the work; | les travaux, the works.  |

Others, as le bal, the ball; le carnaval, the carnival; l'éventail, the fan, etc., form the plural regularly: les bals, the balls, etc.

8. Note the following irregular plurals:

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| l'aïeul, the grandfather; | les aïeux, the ancestors. |
| le bétail, cattle;        | les bestiaux, the beasts. |

le ciel, heaven;

les cieux, the heavens.

l'œil, the eye;

les yeux, the eyes.

The regular plurals *aïeuls*, *ciels*, *œils* are also used, in different senses.

9. Some nouns are used only in the singular, others only in the plural. Some have different senses in the singular and in the plural, and a few have different plurals in different senses. The plural of *Compound Nouns* depends on their formation (L. XLVI.).

10. The plural of adjectives, masculine and feminine, is formed exactly like the plural of nouns of corresponding termination; as *bon* (*m.*), good, pl. *bons*; *f.* *bonne*, pl. *bonnes*. *beau* (*m.*), fine, pl. *beaux*; *f.* *belle*, pl. *belles*, etc.

For exceptions see L. XVII., 11.

### Vocabulary.

le fils, the son;

la fille, the daughter.

le neveu, the nephew;

la nièce, the niece.

le voisin, the neighbor;

la voisine, the neighbor (*f.*).

le cousin, the cousin;

la cousine, the cousin (*f.*).

le palais, the palace;

la maison, the house.

le bras, the arm;

la porte, the door, gate.

le cheval, the horse;

la ville, the city.

le général, the general;

l'enfant, the child (*m.* or *f.*).

l'animal, the animal;

bon (*m.*), bonne (*f.*), good.

le chapeau, the hat;

joli (*m.*), jolie (*f.*), pretty.

un\_oiseau, a bird;

grand (*m.*), grande (*f.*), large,

le chameau, the camel;

great, tall.

le bijou, the jewel;

petit (*m.*), petite (*f.*), little, small

le joujou, the toy;

a, has; ont, have.

### Reading Lesson 2.

1. Le fils du voisin.
2. Les fils des voisins.
3. Le cheval du général.
4. Les chevaux des généraux.
5. Les palais du roi.
6. Les bijoux de la reine.
7. Les jolis yeux de la petite fille.
8. La jolie fille a les bonnes noix.
9. Les petits oiseaux.
10. Les grands chameaux.
11. Les bons enfants ont les jolis joujoux.
12. Les maisons des grandes villes.
13. Les portes des maisons.
14. Les jolis chapeaux des bons enfants.
15. Les aïeux des rois.
16. Le roi donne les chevaux au grand général.
17. Les grands



palais de la reine. 18. Les yeux des animaux. 19. Les grands bras de l'homme. 20. Les neveux et les nièces de l'oncle. 21. Les généraux donnent les chevaux et les chameaux aux fils du roi.

### Theme 2.

1. The toys of the children (or the children's toys). 2. The neighbor's nephews. 3. The large houses of the city. 4. The king gives the horses to the general. 5. The child has the little birds. 6. The large eyes of the camels. 7. The doors of the great palaces. 8. The eyes and (the) arms of the man—of the men. 9. The queen has the jewels. 10. The sons of the king give the horses to the generals. 11. The good children have the pretty hats. 12. The large animals in (*dans*) the garden of the palace. 13. The sons and (the) daughters of the generals. 14. The good child has the little horses and the pretty hats. 15. The queen gives the jewels to the sons and (the) daughters of the neighbors. 16. The good neighbor's horses—the neighbor's good horses. 17. The pretty queen's jewels—the queen's pretty jewels. 18. The neighbor's son and daughter (of the neighbor). 19. The neighbors' sons and daughters (of the neighbors). 20. The pretty eyes of the general's little nieces.

The Vocabularies should be committed to memory, and frequently reviewed in *oral* recitation, from French to English, and from English to French. The *ear* should be constantly practiced—the teacher reading to the pupils, and the pupils to each other; and, as soon as practicable, additional exercises may be given orally, in the form of question and answer.

## LESSON VIII.

### PROPER NOUNS.

1. Proper names of *persons* are used without the article, as :

Guillaume, William;  
Henri, Henry;  
Louis, Lewis;  
Pierre, Peter;  
etc., etc.

Élise, Eliza.  
Julie, Julia.  
Louise, Louisa.  
Marie, Mary.  
etc., etc.

2. The titles \* Monsieur (M.), Mr., or Sir ; Madame (Mme.),

---

\* Plural, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles ; see L. XLVI.

Mrs., or Madam ; Mademoiselle (Mlle.), Miss, are also used without the article before the proper name ; as, Monsieur (M.) Guizot, Madame (Mme.) Joliet, Mademoiselle (Mlle.) Louise, etc. But when used before other titles, they are followed by the article ; as, M. le Duc, the Duke ; Mme. la Baronne, the Baroness, etc.

They are also used in polite address before names of kindred ; as, Monsieur votre père, your father ; Mlle. votre sœur, your sister, etc.

**Note.**—In Monsieur, both *n* and *r* are silent, and the vowels are pronounced very short. Mademoiselle is often pronounced as Mam'selle.

**3.** Proper names of *towns* also do not take the article, as :

Londres, London ;

de Londres, from London.

Vienne, Vienna ;

de Vienne, from Vienna.

**Note.**—Sometimes, however, the article is part of the name itself ; as, Le Havre, Havre (lit. *the harbor*) ; La Nouvelle Orléans, (*the*) New Orleans (in distinction from Orléans in France), etc. This applies also to some proper names of persons ; as, Le Sage, etc.

**4.** But proper names of *countries* take the article ; as, la France, France ; l'Angleterre, England.

Except when preceded by the preposition *en* (7), or by *de* in a purely local or adjective sense ; as, il vient de France, he comes from France ; le roi de Prusse, the king of Prussia ; les vins de France, French wines, etc.

The names of countries are generally of the feminine gender.

**Remark.**—Special idiomatic forms, not here included, occur in the use of proper names, both of countries and of persons. These will be learned hereafter.

**5.** Adjectives derived from names of countries do not begin with a capital letter ; as, anglais, English ; français, French, etc.

Except when used as *personal nouns* ; as, l'Anglais, the Englishman ; les Français, the French (people), etc.

### Prepositions.

**6.** The following are the most important prepositions :

à, at, to, in,

de, of, from, by,

} L. VI.

par, through, by,

parmi, among.

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| en,        {            | avec, with.            |
| dans,     { in.         | sans, without.         |
| hors, out, out of.      | pour, for.             |
| avant, before (time).   | contre, against.       |
| après, after.           | sur, upon.             |
| pendant, during.        | sous, under.           |
| devant, before (place). | vers,        {         |
| derrière, behind.       | envers,     { towards. |
| entre, between.         | chez, at the house of. |

**7. Notes.**—(1.) *De, à, en*, must be repeated before every noun to which they belong in sense; as, *de Londres et de Vienne*, from London and Vienna; *au roi et à la reine*, to the king and queen; *en France et en Angleterre*, in France and England, etc. See L. V., 6, 2.

(2.) *En* is used generally without the article, *dans* with the article; as, *en France*, or *dans la France*, in France; *en ville*, or *dans la ville*, in (the) town, etc.

(3.) *In* or *to* before names of countries is usually expressed by *en*; before names of towns by *à*; as, *en France*, in or to France; *à Paris*, in, (at), or to Paris.

(4.) *Vers* is used for place, time, direction, etc.; *envers* only for personal relations.

(5.) *Chez* means *at* or *to the house* of, often expressed by the simple possessive of the noun; as, *chez le voisin*, *at* or *to the neighbor's*, etc.; sometimes *with* or *among*; as, *to dine with any one*; *chez les français*, among the French, etc. With pronouns (L. XXVI.), it means *at* or *to one's house*; *at home* or *home*; as, *je suis chez moi*, I am at home—*je vais chez moi*, I am going home, etc.

(6.) *With*, expressing accompaniment, is *avec*; expressing instrument or manner, generally *de*; sometimes, idiomatically, *à*; as, *un homme à grands yeux*—a man with large eyes.

(7.) The distinction between *de* and *par*, meaning *by*, will be given under the passive verb (L. XXXIV., 7).

**8. Other prepositions** not here given will be met with in reading. For compound prepositions, see L. XL. As indicated in the foregoing notes, prepositions in French have many idiomatic uses which must be carefully noted. These must always be rendered into *idiomatic* English,

### Vocabulary.

|                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| la France, France;          | l'Italie, Italy;     |
| l'Angleterre (f.), England; | l'Espagne, Spain;    |
| l'Allemagne (f.), Germany;  | l'Europe, Europe;    |
| la Russie, Russia;          | l'Amérique, America; |
| la Prusse, Prussia;         | l'Asie, Asia;        |
| la Suède, Sweden;           | l'Afrique, Africa;   |



|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Londres, London;            | la guerre, the war.                                      |
| Vienne, Vienna;             | l'empereur, the emperor.                                 |
| Berlin, Berlin;             | est, is; sont, are.                                      |
| Madrid, Madrid;             | demeure, lives, is living.                               |
| Cologne, Cologne;           | voyage, travels, is travelling.                          |
| le Français, the Frenchman; | va, goes, is going.                                      |
| l'Anglais, the Englishman;  | voici, here is, here are.                                |
| l'Allemand, the German.     | voilà, there is, there are.                              |
| l'Américain, the American.  | beau ( <i>m.</i> ); <i>pl.</i> beaux, fine, beautiful.   |
| le nord, the north.         | belle ( <i>f.</i> ); <i>pl.</i> belles, fine, beautiful. |
| le sud, the south.          |  |
| la carte, the map.          | où, where?   |
| le pays, the country.       |  |

### Reading Lesson 3.

1. Guillaume est l'ami de Charles. 2. Pierre et Henri sont les neveux de Jean (John). 3. Élise est la sœur de Marie. 4. Mlle. Marie est chez Guillaume. 5. Le beau chapeau de Mlle. Louise. 6. Les beaux chapeaux des Français. 7. Louis est le neveu de M. Narbonne. 8. La Russie est un grand pays. 9. Le roi d'Italie demeure à Rome. 10. Paris est la capitale de la France. 11. La Suède est dans le nord de l'Europe. 12. Les beaux palais du roi d'Espagne. 13. La reine d'Angleterre voyage en France. 14. Où est le palais de l'Empereur d'Allemagne? 15. Le palais de l'Empereur d'Allemagne est à Berlin. 16. Berlin est la capitale de la Prusse. 17. L'Américain voyage en Italie. 18. L'Anglais et le Français sont dans la maison de l'Allemand. 19. L'enfant va chez le voisin. 20. La guerre entre la France et la Prusse. 21. Où est M. votre (*your*) père? 22. Il est à Pau en France (dans la France). 23. La carte de l'Italie. 24. Vers le nord.

### Theme 3.

1. William's friends. 2. Miss Mary's books. 3. At John's (house). 4. Eliza and Louisa are the nieces of Mrs. T. 5. Miss Louisa's hat is very fine. 6. The king of Spain has a beautiful palace at Madrid. 7. Berlin is the capital of Germany. 8. The wars between England and France. 9. Towards the north of France. 10. Miss Louisa's mother is going (goes) to Mrs. T.'s. 11. The maps of the countries of Europe. 12. The French and the English; the Americans and the Germans. 13. The children are at the neighbor's. 14. The beautiful horses of the king of Italy.

15. Where are Mr. B.'s sons? 16. They are at Cologne, in Germany.  
 17. In the house. 18. Before the door. 19. After the war. 20. For  
 the friends. 21. Against the enemies.

Other uses of prepositions will be learned gradually, as they occur.

## LESSON IX.

### THE PARTITIVE.

1. The preposition *de* is used with nouns taken in a *partitive* sense—that is, with reference to a part or limited quantity. This sense is often expressed by *some* or *any* in English; and is implied wherever ‘some’ or ‘any’ *may be used* before the noun.

2. The definite article combined with *de* in this sense is called the **PARTITIVE ARTICLE**; as,

du vin, wine—some or any wine.  
 de la bière, beer—some or any beer.  
 de l'eau, water—some or any water.  
 des livres, books—some or any books.

3. The forms of the partitive article are therefore the same as the definite article with *de* (L. VI.). But in this use *de* loses its dependence as a preposition, and the partitive form may stand equally as subject or object of the sentence, or may follow another preposition; as, *des hommes donnent des livres à des enfants*, (some) men are giving (some) books to (some) children. Hence its special name.

4. If the noun in the partitive sense is *preceded* by an adjective, the adjective takes the place of the article, and *de* alone is used; as, *de bon vin*, (some) good wine, *de bonne bière*, (some) good beer, *de bons livres*, (some) good books. But *du vin excellent*, *de la bière fraîche*, *de l'eau chaude*, *des livres précieux*—*with* the article, if the adjective *follows* the noun (L. XVIII.).

5. Similarly, if the partitive is preceded by a noun or an adverb of *measure, quantity, number*, or *negation*, the article is omitted and *de* alone is used; as,

une bouteille de vin, a bottle of wine.

une paire de bas, a pair of stockings.

*une robe de chambre*

*une  
bouteille à vin*

assez de vin, de livres, enough (of) wine—or books.

combien de vin, de livres, how *much* wine, how *many* books?

trop de vin, de livres, too *much* wine, too *many* books.

peu de vin, de livres, *little* wine, *few* books.

pas de vin, de livres, not any, or no, wine; not any, or no, books.

**Note.**—Except *bien*, *much*, *many*, which requires the article; as, bien du vin, des livres, much wine, many books.

**Remark.**—It thus appears that the partitive form always includes the preposition *de*, but does not always include the article; also, that *de* in the partitive sense is always accompanied by some other limiting term, the article, or an adjective, or a preceding noun or adverb. Except:

6. The partitive article following the preposition *de* is omitted. Thus we cannot say, un homme *de du* talent, but un homme de talent; not le prix *de des* livres, but le prix de livres, the price of books.

7. Analogous with this use of *de* is its use without the article, to express the material of which a thing is made—in English often translated by an adjective; as, une chaîne d'or, a gold chain; une montre d'argent, a silver watch (i. e., *of silver*).

8. As already stated, the prep. *de*, with or without the article, must be repeated before each noun. This applies also to its partitive use, in all its forms.

### Vocabulary.

|  |  |                   |
|--|--|-------------------|
| le pain, the bread;                        | la paire, the pair.                    | } <i>with de.</i> |
| le beurre, the butter;                     | la douzaine, the dozen.                |                   |
| la viande, the meat;                       | la livre, the pound.                   |                   |
| le fromage, the cheese;                    | la bouteille, the bottle.              |                   |
| un œuf, an egg;                            | la chaîne, the chain.                  |                   |
| le café, the coffee;                       | la montre, the watch.                  |                   |
| le thé, the tea;                           | combien, how much, how                 |                   |
| le sucre, the sugar;                       | many.                                  |                   |
| le lait, the milk;                         | assez, enough.                         |                   |
| l'eau ( <i>f.</i> ), the water;            | beaucoup, much, many.                  |                   |
| le vin, the wine;                          | peu, little, few.                      |                   |
| le bas, the stocking;                      | plus, more.                            |                   |
| le papier, the paper;                      | moins, less.                           |                   |
| le crayon, the pencil;                     | trop, too much.                        |                   |
| l'or ( <i>m.</i> ), the gold;              | trop peu, too little.                  |                   |
| l'argent ( <i>m.</i> ), the silver, money; | pas, not any, no.                      |                   |
| le morceau, the piece.                     | bien, much, many ( <i>with art.</i> ). |                   |

excellent, excellent;

un, une, one;

deux, two; trois, three;

mais, but; que, than, as;

avez-vous, have you? j'ai, I have.

je n'ai pas, I have not.

(il or elle) n'a pas, (he or she) has

not.

### Reading Lesson 4.

1. Voici du pain et du fromage. 2. Où est le beurre? 3. Je n'ai pas de beurre. 4. Jean a du beurre. 5. Voici de bon vin. 6. Avez-vous de la viande? 7. Oui, j'ai de bonne viande. 8. Combien de sucre avez-vous? 9. J'ai deux livres de sucre. 10. Voilà des œufs, et du fromage excellent. 11. La fille a deux paires de bas. 12. Combien de thé avez-vous? 13. Je n'ai pas de thé, j'ai du café et de bon vin. 14. Avez-vous des enfants? 15. Oui, j'ai deux fils, mais pas de fille. 16. Combien d'argent (*money*) avez-vous? 17. Je n'ai pas assez d'argent. 18. Le bon voisin a trop d'amis. 19. Voici une chaîne d'or et une montre d'argent. 20. La cousine donne à Guillaume du pain, de la viande, et de l'eau. 21. La reine a des bijoux. 22. Le roi a bien des palais. 23. La femme a plus de fils que de filles. 24. Il a bien de l'argent, mais peu d'amis. 25. Une douzaine d'œufs. 26. Louis a du papier et des crayons excellents.

### Theme 4.

1. Here is some bread and (some) butter. 2. Have you (any) wine? 3. Yes, sir (Monsieur), I have (some) excellent wine. 4. How much wine have you? 5. I have three bottles of wine. 6. The children have paper, but no pencils. 7. The father gives pencils to the children. 8. Here are two pounds of coffee and a dozen (of) eggs. 9. I have more (of) silver than (of) gold. 10. John has two gold watches. 11. The queen has three daughters, but no sons. 12. The mother gives good books to the children. 13. The gold chains are pretty. 14. The good woman has many friends. 15. The generals have many horses. 16. I have houses enough, but too little money. 17. Have you any good books? 18. Yes, I have some excellent books. 19. Miss Louisa, have you pens and pencils? 20. Yes, sir, but I have no good paper. 21. Sir, have you any gold chains? 22. No (non), Miss, but I have some gold watches. 23. How many pounds of sugar have you? 24. I have no sugar, but I have enough (of) tea and (of) coffee.

The *liaison*, as well as silent letters, will hereafter be indicated only in special cases.

## LESSON X.

### THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

1. The general definitions and classifications of the verb are the same as in English. Idiomatic peculiarities will be noted hereafter.

2. The personal pronouns, used as subject of the verb, are *je* (*j'*), I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he (or it); *elle*, she (or it); *nous*, we; *vous*, you; *ils* (*m.*), *elles* (*f.*), they.

The third persons of the verb are used equally with masculine or feminine pronouns, or with a subject noun. Only the forms *il*, *ils*, for convenience, will be given in the paradigms of the verb.

**Note 1.**—*Je*, unless initial, is not written with a capital.

**Note 2.**—*Il* or *elle* will mean *it*, whenever referring to a masculine or feminine noun not personal or personified (L. VI., 2, Note).

3. The plural of the second person, *vous* (like *you* in English), is used instead of *tu*, *thou*, in ordinary style of conversation or writing.

**Note.**—*Tu* is, however, used more largely than *thou* is in English, as will be seen hereafter. Whenever the English idiom requires, it must be translated *you*.

4. In the *interrogative* form, the pronoun subject follows the verb, and is then connected with it by a hyphen. In the third person singular, when ending in a vowel, -t-\* (with double hyphen) is inserted for euphony between the verb and the pronoun; as, *a-t-il*, has he?; *a-t-elle*, has she? The verb itself remains otherwise the same as in the affirmative form (see Note 2, below).

5. When the subject of the interrogative form is a noun, the noun precedes the verb, and the corresponding pronoun stands after it, as above; as, *Jean a-t-il le livre*, has John the book? (literally, *John has he the book?*).

6. Verbs are classified as Regular and Irregular, as will be seen hereafter.

---

\* This *t* is the original ending of the third person singular in Latin—lost, or silent, in the French verb.



The general rules of conjugation will be given under the Regular Verbs (L. XXIII.).

The forms of the verb are, as in English, *simple* or *compound*.

*Let all the paradigms be carefully pronounced over with the teacher, before learning.*

## 7. The IRREGULAR VERB AVOIR, (TO) HAVE.\*

### SIMPLE FORMS.

#### AFFIRMATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

|                            |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Present Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Participle.</i> | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
| avoir, (to) have; *        | ayant, having;             | eu,† had.               |

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### AFFIRMATIVE.

#### INTERROGATIVE.

#### *Present Tense.*

j'ai, I have.  
tu as, thou hast.  
il a, he has.  
nous avons, we have.  
vous avez, you have.  
ils ont, they have.

ai-je, have I ?  
as-tu, hast thou ?  
a-t-il, has he ?  
avons-nous, have we ?  
avez-vous, have you ?  
ont-ils, have they ?

#### *Imperfect.‡*

j'avais, I had.  
tu avais, thou hadst.  
il avait, he had.  
nous avions, we had.  
vous aviez, you had.  
ils avaient, they had.

avais-je, had I ?  
avais-tu, hadst thou ?  
avait-il, had he ?  
avions-nous, had we ?  
aviez-vous, had you ?  
avaient-ils, had they ?

#### *Preterit.‡*

j'eus,† I had.  
tu eus,† thou hadst.  
il eut, he had.  
nous eûmes, we had.  
vous eûtes, you had.  
ils eurent, they had.

eus-je, had I ?  
eus-tu, hadst thou ?  
eut-il, had he ?  
eûmes-nous, had we ?  
eûtes-vous, had you ?  
eurent-ils, had they ?

\* The infinitive is *to have* or *have*, as the idiom in English may require.

† For the pronunciation, see L. II., 11.

‡ The distinction between these tenses will be given hereafter (L. XX., 2).



*Future.*

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| j'aurai, I shall have.*     | aurai-je, shall I have ?     |
| tu auras, thou wilt have.   | auras-tu, wilt thou have ?   |
| il aura, he will have.      | aura-t-il, will he have ?    |
| nous_aurons, we shall have. | aurons-nous, shall we have ? |
| vous_aurez, you will have.  | aurez-vous, will you have ?  |
| ils_auront, they will have. | auront-ils, will they have ? |

*Conditional.*

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| j'aurais, I should have.*      | aurais-je, should I have ?      |
| tu aurais, thou wouldst have.  | aurais-tu, wouldst thou have ?  |
| il aurait, he would have.      | aurait-il, would he have ?      |
| nous_aurions, we should have.  | aurions-nous, should we have ?  |
| vous_auriez, you would have.   | auriez-vous, would you have ?   |
| ils_auraient, they would have. | auraient-ils, would they have ? |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.†

aie, have (thou).  
ayons, let us have.  
ayez, have (ye).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.‡

*Present.*

j'aie.  
tu aies.  
il ait.  
nous\_ayons.  
vous\_ayez.  
ils\_aient.

*Has vari-  
ous idiom-  
atic transla-  
tions.‡*

j'eusse.  
tu eusses.  
il eût.  
nous\_eussions.  
vous\_eussiez.  
ils\_eussent.

*Past.§*

*Has vari-  
ous idiom-  
atic transla-  
tions.‡*

**Note 1.**—There are no interrogative forms for the imperative, or for the subjunctive. Such forms as eussé-je, etc., will be explained hereafter (L. XLIII.).

\* These tenses may also correspond to *I will have, I would have*, etc.

† Other forms, sometimes called imperative, are really subjunctive ; as, qu'il ait, let him have ; qu'ils\_aient, let them have.

‡ The forms of the subjunctive are generally given with the conjunction *que* ; as, que j'aie, que tu aies, etc. This is misleading, as *que* forms no part of the subjunctive, and does not always precede it. For a like reason, no form of translation is here given for the subjunctive ; its idiomatic translations are so various that any one form would mislead.

§ The name *imperfect subjunctive*, usually employed, is objectionable. For this tense, while connected in use alike with the imperfect and the preterit of the indicative, is in form connected with the preterit, not with the imperfect. The name *past*, here used, expresses its relation, generally, to the *past tenses* of the indicative.

**Note 2.**—The teacher may or may not require the interrogative forms to be separately committed to memory, or may postpone them until hereafter. They can generally be formed by the rule (4) from the affirmative forms. Special exceptions will be given hereafter.

**Note 3.**—The subjunctive forms may also be postponed for the present in this and other verbs. The use and translation of the subjunctive will be explained hereafter (L. XLIII.)

### Vocabulary.

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| une école, a school;                   | le plaisir, (the) pleasure.    |
| un écolier,            }               | la peine, (the) pain, trouble. |
| une écolière,        } a scholar;      | la prudence, (the) prudence.   |
| le maître, the teacher;                | la pitié, (the) pity.          |
| l'encre (f.), the ink;                 | la force, (the) strength.      |
| un encrier, an ink-stand;              | le courage, (the) courage.     |
| le cahier, the copy-book;              | le soldat, the soldier.        |
| un arbre, a tree;                      | le marchand, the merchant.     |
| la feuille, the leaf (sheet of paper); | autrefois, formerly.           |
| le fruit, the fruit;                   | maintenant, now.               |
| la fleur, the flower;                  | oui, yes; non, no.             |

### Reading Lesson 5.

1. Le marchand a-t-il des pommes? 2. Oui, monsieur, il a des pommes. 3. Combien de pommes a-t-il? 4. Il a beaucoup de pommes. 5. L'écolière a-t-elle du papier et des plumes? 6. Oui, elle a de bon papier, et assez de plumes. 7. Le voisin a-t-il des chevaux? 8. Il avait autrefois des chevaux. 9. Aurez-vous du plaisir? 10. Oui, nous aurons bien du plaisir. 11. Le maître a-t-il un jardin? 12. Oui, il a un grand jardin, avec des fleurs, de grands arbres et beaucoup de bons fruits. 13. Auriez-vous du plaisir, si vous aviez de l'argent? 14. Oui, j'aurais beaucoup de plaisir, si j'avais assez d'argent. 15. Aurai-je une montre d'or? 16. Non, tu auras une montre d'argent. 17. Les filles ont-elles des bijoux? 18. Non, elles ont de jolis joujoux, mais pas de bijoux. 19. Les écoliers ont-ils des livres? 20. Oui, ils ont des livres, des cahiers, des encriers et de l'encre. 21. Louise a-t-elle des sœurs? 22. Oui, elle a trois sœurs, et deux petits frères. 23. Ayons de la prudence. 24. Ayez de la pitié. 25. Les soldats avaient-ils du courage? 26. Oui, ils avaient assez de courage, mais trop peu de force.

### Theme 5.

1. Has the neighbor (f.) any children? 2. Yes, she has three children, two sons and a daughter. 3. Will you have trouble?

4. Yes, I shall have much trouble. 5. Had the scholars ink? 6. Yes, they had ink, but no inkstands. 7. Will the generals have horses? 8. Yes, the generals have horses, and they will have more horses. 9. Had the merchants apples or pears? 10. They had many apples and few pears. 11. How much pleasure had you? 12. We had no pleasure, but much trouble. 13. Would you have less trouble, if you had more money? 14. No, but I should have more pleasure, if I had more friends. 15. Have the trees now many leaves? 16. No, they have now few leaves; formerly they had more leaves. 17. Will the soldiers have courage? 18. Yes, they will have enough courage, but no prudence. 19. They would have more strength, if they had (*imperf.*) more prudence. 20. Let us have courage and prudence.

---

## LESSON XI.

### THE VERB AVOIR, AS AUXILIARY.

1. Avoir, like *have* in English, is used as an auxiliary in making the compound (*relative* or *perfect*) forms of verbs. It is thus used as auxiliary in all transitive and most intransitive verbs.

2. The compound forms (or tenses) are made, as in English, by combining the *corresponding form* (or tense) of the auxiliary with the past participle of the verb; as, voir, to see; vu, seen; j'ai vu, I *have* seen; j'aurai vu, I *shall have* seen, etc.

3. In such combinations the *auxiliary* itself is really the grammatical, or *finite*, verb, and as such follows the usual rules of agreement and position applying to the verb. *This should be borne in mind.*

4. Accordingly, the compound forms, like the simple forms, are made *interrogative* by attaching the subject pronoun after the finite (or auxiliary) verb (see L. X. 4, 5).

5. The verb avoir, being transitive, employs its own forms (the *auxiliary* avoir) in forming its compound conjugation, as follows:

## AVOIR, (To) HAVE : COMPOUND FORMS.

*Compound Infinitive,\* or  
Perfect Infinitive.**Compound Present Participle,\*  
or Perfect Participle.*

avoir eu, (to) have had.

ayant eu, having had.

The Past Participle has no compound.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## AFFIRMATIVE.

## INTERROGATIVE.

*Compound Present,\* or Perfect.*

j'ai eu, I have had.

ai-je eu, have I had ?

tu as eu, thou hast had.

as-tu eu, hast thou had ?

il a eu, he has had.

a-t-il eu, has he had ?

nous avons eu, we have had.

avons-nous eu, have we had ?

vous avez eu, you have had.

avez-vous eu, have you had ?

ils ont eu, they have had.

ont-ils eu, have they had ?

*Compound Imperfect,\* or Pluperfect.*

j'avais eu, I had had.

avais-je eu, had I had ?

tu avais eu, thou hadst had.

avais-tu eu, hadst thou had ?

il avait eu, he had had.

avait-il eu, had he had ?

nous avions eu, we had had.

avons-nous eu, had we had ?

vous aviez eu, you had had.

aviez-vous eu, had you had ?

ils avaient eu, they had had.

avaient-ils eu, had they had ?

The other tenses are made interrogative in the same way.

*Compound Preterit,\* or Preterite Anterior.*

j'eus eu, I had had.

eus-je eu, had I had ?

tu eus eu, thou hadst had.

etc., etc., etc.

il eut eu, he had had.

nous eûmes eu, we had had.

vous eûtes eu, you had had.

ils eurent eu, they had had.

*Let the pupil write the omitted forms, in this and the following tenses.*

---

\* The nomenclature of French Grammar is unfortunately not settled. The double names here given are both in use. Hereafter, however, only that first given will be used in this book.

*Compound Future,\* or  
Perfect Future.*

j'aurai eu, I shall have had.  
tu auras eu, thou wilt have  
had.  
il aura eu, he will have had.  
nous aurons eu, we shall  
have had.  
vous aurez eu, you will have  
had.  
ils auront eu, they will have  
had.

*Compound Conditional,\* or  
Perfect Conditional.*

j'aurais eu, I should have had.  
tu aurais eu, thou wouldst  
have had.  
il aurait eu, he would have  
had.  
nous aurions eu, we should  
have had.  
vous auriez eu, you would  
have had.  
ils auraient eu, they would  
have had.

The Imperative being always *present* can have no compound forms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Compound Present,\* or  
Perfect Subjunctive.*

j'aie eu.  
tu aies eu.  
il ait eu.  
nous ayons eu.  
vous ayez eu.  
ils aient eu.

See  
Subjunctive  
Mood,  
L. X.

*Compound Past,\* or  
Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

j'eusse eu.  
tu eusses eu.  
il eût eu.  
nous eussions eu.  
vous eussiez eu.  
ils eussent eu.

See  
Lesson  
X.

6. In all the conjugations of *avoir* above given, it is easily seen that the verb proper (or finite verb) remains everywhere essentially the same, with only the formal changes resulting from the ordinary rules of *elision* or *liaison* under different combinations. If the simple affirmative forms are thoroughly learned, the others will soon become easy. *Let the correct pronunciation be carefully practiced throughout.*

Reading Lesson 6.

1. Les Anglais ont eu beaucoup de guerres. 2. Le maître avait eu bien de la peine. 3. Les écoliers auraient eu beaucoup de plaisir. 4. Les fils du marchand avaient eu les cahiers des écoliers. 5. Le soldat aurait eu le courage. 6. Nous aurions eu plus de plaisir, si

\* See \* on preceding page.



nous avons eu assez d'argent. 7. Elle aurait de l'encre, si elle avait eu un encrier. 8. Les enfants avaient eu des bals. 9. Nous avons eu de beaux chapeaux. 10. Auraient-ils eu plus de courage? 11. Ils auraient eu assez de courage, s'ils avaient eu plus de force. 12. Le marchand a-t-il eu des pommes? 13. Il a eu des pommes, mais pas de poires. 14. Auriez-vous eu du plaisir? 15. Non, j'aurais eu bien de la peine.

### Theme 6.

1. The scholar (*m.*) has had the girl's copy-book. 2. The French have had many kings. 3. Have the Russians had kings (L. IX. 1)? 4. No, the Russians have had emperors. 5. The children had had bread and butter. 6. The scholars would have had much pleasure. 7. The mothers of the children will have had much trouble. 8. They (*fem.*) would have had less trouble, if they had had more prudence. 9. Hast thou had friends? 10. I have had many good friends. 11. Should we have had pleasure? 12. Has the teacher had many scholars? 13. No, he has had few scholars. 14. How many scholars has he had? 15. He would have more scholars, if he had had prudence.

For additional Exercises on avoir see the following Lessons.

---

## LESSON XII.

### THE VERB ÊTRE, (TO) BE.

1. The verb être, *to be*, is also irregular. As will be seen hereafter, être is also used as auxiliary in certain verbs.

2. The compound tenses of être are formed with *avoir* as auxiliary (as in English, *I have been*, etc.). See the Rule, Less. XI. 2.

### 3. CONJUGATION OF ÊTRE; SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

*Infin.*  
être, (to) be.  
*Pres. Part.*  
étant, being.  
*Past Part.*  
été, been.

*Comp. Infin.*  
avoir été, (to) have been.  
*Comp. Pres. Part.*  
ayant été, having been.

---



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

je suis, I am.  
 tu es, thou art.  
 il est, he is.  
 nous sommes, we are.  
 vous êtes, you are.  
 ils sont,\* they are.

*Imperfect.*

j'étais, I was.  
 tu étais, thou wast.  
 il était, he was.  
 nous étions, we were.  
 vous étiez, you were.  
 ils étaient, they were.

*Preterit.*

je fus, I was.  
 tu fus, thou wast.  
 il fut, he was.  
 nous fûmes, we were.  
 vous fûtes, you were.  
 ils furent, they were.

*Future.*

je serai, I shall be.  
 tu seras, thou wilt be.  
 il sera, he will be.  
 nous serons, we shall be.  
 vous serez, you will be.  
 ils seront, they will be.

*Comp. Present.*

j'ai été, I have been.  
 tu as été, thou hast been.  
 il a été, he has been.  
 nous avons été, we have been.  
 vous avez été, you have been.  
 ils ont été, they have been.

*Comp. Imperfect.*

j'avais été, I had been.  
 tu avais été, thou hadst been.  
 il avait été, he had been.  
 nous avions été, we had been.  
 vous aviez été, you had been.  
 ils avaient été, they had been.

*Comp. Preterit.*

j'eus été, I had been.  
 tu eus été, thou hadst been.  
 il eut été, he had been.  
 nous eûmes été, we had been.  
 vous eûtes été, you had been.  
 ils eurent été, they had been.

*Comp. Future.*

j'aurai été, I shall have been.  
 tu auras été, thou wilt have been.  
 il aura été, he will have been.  
 nous aurons été, we shall have been.  
 vous aurez été, you will have been.  
 ils auront été, they will have been.

---

\* Carefully distinguish in pronunciation from ils ont, *they have*.

*Conditional.*

je serais, I should be.  
 tu serais, thou wouldst be.  
 il serait, he would be.  
 nous serions, we should be.  
 vous seriez, you would be.  
 ils seraient, they would be.

*Comp. Conditional.*

j'aurais été, I should have been.  
 tu aurais été, thou wouldst have been.  
 il aurait été, he would have been.  
 nous aurions été, we should have been.  
 vous auriez été, you would have been.  
 ils auraient été, they would have been.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

sois, be (thou).  
 soyons, let us be.  
 soyez, be (ye).

} *See Imperative of avoir, L. X.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

je sois.  
 tu sois.  
 il soit.  
 nous soyons.  
 vous soyez.  
 ils soient.

} *See corresponding form of avoir, L. X.*

*Comp. Present.*

j'aie été.  
 tu aies été.  
 il ait été.  
 nous ayons été.  
 vous ayez été.  
 ils aient été.

} *See corresponding form of avoir, L. XI.*

*Past.*

je fusse.  
 tu fusses.  
 il fût.  
 nous fussions.  
 vous fussiez.  
 ils fussent.

} *See corresponding form of avoir, L. X.*

*Comp. Past.*

j'eusse été.  
 tu eusses été.  
 il eût été.  
 nous eussions été.  
 vous eussiez été.  
 ils eussent été.

} *See corresponding form of avoir, L. XI.*

**Note.**—It is thus seen that the compound forms of être differ from those of avoir only in the participle été instead of eu. The like is true of all verbs whose auxiliary is avoir.

4. The interrogative forms of être are formed exactly like those of avoir, thus :

*Present.*

suis-je, am I ?  
est-il, is he ?

*Imperfect.*

étais-je, was I ?  
était-il, was he ?

*Future.*

serai-je, shall I be ?  
sera-t-il, will he be ?  
etc., etc.

*Compound Present.*

ai-je été have I been ?  
a-t-il été, has he been ?

*Compound Imperfect.*

avais-je été, had I been ?  
avait-il été, had he been ?

*Compound Future.*

aurai-je été, shall I have been ?  
aura-t-il été, will he have been ?  
etc., etc.

The forms omitted should be written out by the pupil, after the model of those given.

## ADJECTIVES.

5. The rule for the plural of adjectives has been already given (L. VII. 10). Adjectives ending in *e* are the same for masculine and feminine, in both singular and plural ; as, *m.* and *f.*, malade, sick ; *m.* and *f. pl.*, malades.

6. Adjectives agree with their subject in gender and number. But when the plural pronoun *vous* represents a *singular* person, the adjective is singular ; as, êtes-vous malade ? Are you sick ?

## Vocabulary.

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| riche, rich ;                  | le thème, the exercise.            |
| pauvre, poor ;                 | la faute, the fault, mistake.      |
| jeune, young ;                 | la chambre, the room.              |
| sage, wise, good ;             | le théâtre, the theatre.           |
| facile, easy ;                 | hier, yesterday.                   |
| difficile, difficult ;         | aujourd'hui, to-day.               |
| malade, sick ;                 | demain, to-morrow.                 |
| faible, weak ;                 | très, very ; encore, still, again. |
| triste, sad ; qui, who, whom ? | ici, here ; là, there.             |

## Reading Lesson 7.

1. Les thèmes sont faciles. 2. Le maître a été malade. 3. Les enfants ont été malades ; ils sont encore très faibles. 4. Où étiez-vous ? 5. J'étais dans la chambre. 6. Qui avait été là ? 7. Les fils

du voisin avaient été là. 8. Les filles eurent été au bal. 9. Si vous êtes malade, vous serez faible. 10. Les marchands sont-ils riches ? 11. Ils ont été riches, maintenant ils sont pauvres. 12. Hier j'ai été (*was*) au théâtre, demain je serai à école. 13. Le roi sera-t-il ici aujourd'hui ? 14. Non, il a été ici hier, il sera encore ici demain. 15. Auriez-vous été tristes ? 16. Nous aurions été très tristes, si vous aviez été malade. 17. Si les enfants étaient sages, ils auraient plus de plaisir. 18. Fûtes-vous à l'école ? 19. Non, je fus au théâtre. 20. Il eut été chez le maître. 21. Sois sage. 22. Soyons amis. 23. Serez-vous au bal demain ? 24. Non, je serai chez le pauvre soldat.

### Theme 7.

1. Who has been in the room ? 2. Louisa has been in the room. 3. Is the young man the merchant's son ? 4. The teacher had been very sick. 5. Will the children be good ? 6. They would be good if the mother were (*impr.*) here. 7. Have you been to the theatre ? 8. No ; I shall be at the ball to-morrow. 9. Has the young girl been sick ? 10. Yes, she has been sick—she is still very weak. 11. Will the merchant be rich ? 12. He would be rich, if he had been wise. 13. Have the scholars been to (the) school to-day ? 14. No, they will be there to-morrow. 15. Friends, are you sad ? 16. We are sad and poor. 17. Let us be wise. 18. The king and (the) queen will have been here to-morrow. 19. The teacher would have been very rich, if he had had more prudence. 20. Had the friends been to the theatre ? 21. No, they had been to the general's. 22. Was he in the city ? 23. No, he was in Paris. 24. Be friends.

## LESSON XIII.

### NEGATIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. It has been seen (L. X. XI.) that the forms of the verb remain essentially the same in both affirmative and interrogative conjugation. The same is true of the negative forms ; but here also the ordinary rules of *elision* and *liaison* produce modifications which require the attention of the learner.

2. The simple negative *not*, with the verb, is usually ex-

pressed by *ne—pas*, *ne* standing before the verb and *pas* after it. In the compound forms *pas* thus stands between the auxiliary and the participle (L. XI. 3). In the infinitive both *ne* and *pas* usually precede the verb.

3. Other words may take the place of *pas*, as will be seen hereafter (L. XXXIX.); as, *ne—point*, not (emphatic); *ne—rien*, nothing; *ne—personne*, nobody; *ne—jamais*, never, etc.

#### 4. NEGATIVE FORMS OF AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

##### *Present.*

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| je n'ai pas, I have not.       | je ne suis pas, I am not.       |
| tu n'as pas, thou hast not.    | tu n'es pas, thou art not.      |
| il n'a pas, he has not.        | il n'est pas, he is not.        |
| nous n'avons pas, we have not. | nous ne sommes pas, we are not. |
| vous n'avez pas, you have not. | vous n'êtes pas, you are not.   |
| ils n'ont pas, they have not.  | ils ne sont pas, they are not.  |

##### *Imperfect.*

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| je n'avais pas, I had not. | je n'étais pas, I was not. |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|

##### *Preterit.*

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| je n'eus pas, I had not. | je ne fus pas, I was not. |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|

##### *Future.*

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| je n'aurai pas, I shall not have. | je ne serai pas, I shall not be. |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|

##### *Imperative.*

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| n'ayons pas, let us not have. | ne soyons pas, let us not be. |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|

##### *Infinitive.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| ne pas avoir (or n'avoir pas).<br>etc., etc. | ne pas être (or n'être pas).<br>etc., etc. |
|--|--|

##### *Comp. Pres.*

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| je n'ai pas_eu, I have not had. | je n'ai pas_été, I have not been. |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|



|  |  |
|--|--|
| tu n'as pas <sub>eu</sub> , thou hast not<br>had.        | tu n'as pas <sub>été</sub> , thou hast not<br>been.        |
| il n'a pas <sub>eu</sub> , he has not had.<br>etc., etc. | il n'a pas <sub>été</sub> , he has not been.<br>etc., etc. |

*Comp. Imperf.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| je n'avais pas <sub>eu</sub> , I had not<br>had. | je n'avais pas <sub>été</sub> , I had not<br>been. |
|--|--|

*Comp. Pret.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| je n'eus pas <sub>eu</sub> , I had not had. | je n'eus pas <sub>été</sub> , I had not<br>been. |
|---|--|

*Comp. Fut.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| je n'aurai pas <sub>eu</sub> , I shall not<br>have had.<br>etc., etc. | je n'aurai pas <sub>été</sub> , I shall not<br>have been.<br>etc., etc. |
|---|---|

## NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

5. The negative forms of the verb, both simple and compound, are made interrogative just like the affirmative forms, by transferring the subject-pronoun to the end of the verb. In the compound tenses, therefore, the pronoun stands next after the auxiliary (as L. XI. 4).

6. The *negative-interrogative* forms of avoir and être are therefore as follows :

*Present.*

|                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| n'ai-je pas, have I not ?       | ne suis-je pas, am I not ?          |
| n'as-tu pas, hast thou not ?    | n'es-tu pas, art thou not ?         |
| n'a-t-il pas, has he not ?      | n'est-il pas, is he not ?           |
| n'avons-nous pas, have we not ? | ne sommes-nous pas, are we<br>not ? |
| n'avez-vous pas, have you not ? | n'êtes-vous pas, are you not ?      |
| n'ont-ils pas, have they not ?  | ne sont-ils pas, are they not ?     |

*Imperfect.*

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| n'avais-je pas, had I not ? | n'étais-je pas, was I not ? |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|

*Preterit.*

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| n'eus-je pas, had I not ? | ne fus-je pas, was I not ? |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|



*Future.*

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| n'aurai-je pas, shall I not have? | ne serai-je pas, shall I not be? |
| etc., etc.                        | etc., etc.                       |

*Comp. Pres.*

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| n'ai-je pas eu, have I not had? | n'ai-je pas été, have I not been? |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

*Comp. Imperf.*

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| n'avais-je pas eu, had I not had? | n'avais-je pas été, had I not been? |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

*Comp. Future.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| n'aurai-je pas eu, shall I not have had? | n'aurai-je pas été, shall I not have been? |
| n'auras-tu pas eu? etc.                  | n'auras-tu pas été? etc.                   |
| n'aura-t-il pas eu? etc.                 | n'aura-t-il pas été? etc.                  |
| etc., etc.                               | etc., etc.                                 |

**Remark.**—As has been seen already, the affirmative, interrogative, negative, and negative-interrogative conjunctions are all based upon the same forms of the verb, the only difference being in the different combination of these with the accompanying words. It is not necessary that all the conjugations shall be learned in full, the formation of the others from the affirmative being regular, and easily learned by practice. Some teachers may prefer that the *ground forms of the verb alone*\* should be first learned, and the several conjugations then formed from them. This can readily be done with the paradigms here given.

**Vocabulary.**

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| fidèle, faithful;     | content, contented, satisfied.    |
| infidèle, unfaithful; | heureux, happy, fortunate.        |
| juste, just;          | malheureux, unhappy, unfortunate. |
| injuste, unjust;      | le temps, the time; donnez-moi,   |
| utile, useful;        | give me.                          |

**Reading Lesson 8.**

1. Les enfants ne sont-ils pas ici? 2. Ils n'ont pas été ici.  
 3. N'avez-vous pas été au théâtre? 4. Je n'ai pas eu le temps.  
 5. Donnez-moi du vin. 6. Je n'ai pas de vin. 7. Le maître n'a-t-il pas été malade? 8. N'avez-vous pas eu beaucoup de fautes dans votre (*your*) thème? 9. Non, je n'ai pas eu de fautes. 10. Le général n'eut-il pas de beaux chevaux? 11. Il n'eut pas de chevaux.

\* That is, without the subject-pronouns. This method may be usefully adopted in reviews hereafter.

12. La reine n'a-t-elle pas été au palais ? 13. Le maître n'aurait pas été injuste envers les écoliers. 14. N'auriez-vous pas été content, si vous aviez eu des amis ? 15. N'aurez-vous pas une montre d'or ? 16. Non, je n'aurai pas de montre. 17. Le maître n'aurait-il pas été à l'école ? 18. Louise ne fut-elle pas chez la tante ? 19. Non, elle fut à l'école. 20. Vous ne seriez pas malheureux, si vous étiez content. 21. Ne sois pas injuste. 22. Ne soyons pas tristes. 23. Nous ne serons pas tristes, si nous sommes contents.

### Theme 8.

1. Have not the children been to school ? 2. They have not had the time. 3. They will not be there to-day. 4. Will they not be there to-morrow ? 5. Have you not had the teacher's pen ? 6. Have we not had much pleasure ? 7. Will you not be contented ? 8. You will not be happy, if you are not contented. 9. Will you not be weak, if you have been sick ? 10. Should we not be happy, if we had no trouble ? 11. Have the neighbors no children ? 12. Give me some ink ; have you no ink in the inkstand ? 13. Will not the teacher be just ? 14. Will not (the) friends be faithful ? 15. Would you not have had the time ? 16. They would not have had the time. 17. Be not unhappy. 18. Let us not be unjust towards the teacher. 19. Had not the scholar been sick ? 20. Would you not have been content ? 21. I have no time.

---

## LESSON XIV.

### FURTHER USES OF AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

1. The compound tenses of all verbs whose auxiliary is avoir (L. XI. 12) are formed exactly like the compound tenses of avoir and être. The only difference appears in the past participle, as :

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| j'ai vu, I have seen ;           | j'ai écrit, I have written.            |
| j'avais vu, I had seen ;         | j'avais écrit, I had written.          |
| avez-vous vu ? have you seen ?   | avez-vous écrit ? have you written ?   |
| je n'ai pas vu, I have not seen. | je n'ai pas écrit, I have not written. |
| etc., etc.                       | etc., etc.                             |

2. Avoir is used idiomatically in many idioms which in English require the verb *to be*. As, for example (with a *personal* subject) :

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| avoir chaud, to be hot, or warm ; | j'ai chaud, I am hot, or warm, etc.                 |
| avoir froid, to be cold ;         | j'avais froid, I was cold, etc.                     |
| avoir faim, to be hungry ;        | j'eus faim, I was hungry, etc.                      |
| avoir soif, to be thirsty ;       | j'ai eu soif, I have been thirsty, etc.             |
| avoir sommeil, to be sleepy ;     | je n'ai pas sommeil, I am not sleepy, etc.          |
| avoir raison, to be right ;       | a-t-il raison, is he right ? etc.                   |
| avoir tort, to be wrong ;         | n'avait-il pas tort, was he not wrong ? etc.        |
| avoir honte, to be ashamed ;      | de quoi avez-vous honte ? of what are you ashamed ? |
| avoir peur, to be afraid ;        | il a peur du chien, he is afraid of the dog, etc.   |

**Note.**—The words *chaud*, *froid*, etc., are really nouns, objects of *avoir*, meaning *heat*, *cold*, etc., the form being literally, *have you heat ?* etc.

3. Être à signifies *to belong to*, and is used as the equivalent of the English possessive, when in the predicate ; as, à qui est le livre, whose (*to whom*) is the book ? Le livre est à Jean —au maître ; the book is John's—the teacher's.

4. Instead of the interrogative form of the verb, the phrase *est-ce que* (*is it that*) with the affirmative or negative form, is often used in asking a question, as : Est-ce qu'elle a été malade ? Has she been sick ? Est-ce qu'elle n'a pas été ici ? Has she not been here ?

### Vocabulary.

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| vu, seen ;                   | donné, given.                  |
| lu, read ;                   | acheté, bought.                |
| reçu, received ;             | trouvé, found.                 |
| perdu, lost ;                | écrit, written.                |
| vendu, sold ;                | fini, finished.                |
| le domestique, the servant ; | la servante, the maid-servant. |
| le tailleur, the tailor ;    | la canne, the cane.            |
| un habit, a coat ;           | la bourse, the purse.          |
| le gant, the glove ;         | la lettre, the letter.         |

le chien, the dog ;  
un mensonge, a lie ;

quoi, what ?  
quand, when ?

### Reading Lesson 9.

1. Avez-vous reçu une lettre ? 2. J'ai reçu une lettre du maître.  
3. Le domestique a trouvé la canne. 4. Nous avons lu la lettre de l'écolier. 5. Est-ce que vous n'avez pas fini le thème ? 6. Je n'ai pas fini le thème ; il (*it*) est très difficile. 7. Qui a perdu des gants ?  
8. Avez-vous trouvé des gants ? j'avais perdu une paire de gants.  
9. L'écolière a-t-elle écrit la lettre pour la servante ? 10. L'enfant eut peur du chien. 11. Vous avez tort ; il eut peur de l'homme.  
12. Le marchand a-t-il vendu les pommes ? 13. Avez-vous sommeil ?  
14. J'ai eu sommeil, mais maintenant je n'ai pas sommeil ; j'ai soif.  
15. N'ai-je pas eu raison ? 16. Vous n'avez pas eu raison ; vous avez eu tort. 17. N'a-t-il pas encore (*yet*) reçu la lettre ? 18. A qui sont les habits ? 19. Les habits sont aux enfants de Mme. M.  
20. N'auriez-vous pas honte d'un mensonge ? 21. J'aurais peur d'un mensonge. 22. L'écolier n'a-t-il pas écrit le thème ?  
23. Est-ce qu'il n'a pas écrit le thème ? 24. Le père avait écrit deux lettres au fils. 25. Est-ce que la mère n'eut pas reçu une lettre de la fille ? 26. Qui a vu l'encrier du maître ? 27. J'ai trouvé un encrier. 28. Quand aurons-nous fini le thème ?

### Theme 9.

1. Has the teacher written the letter ? 2. He had not written the letter yesterday. 3. Has not the servant found the cane ?  
4. Have you read the king's letter ? 5. We have received many letters to-day. 6. Who has found the gloves ? 7. Whose are the gloves ? 8. The gloves are William's ; he has lost a pair of gloves.  
9. Have you not finished the exercises ? 10. When will you have finished the exercise ? 11. Has the merchant bought the coat from the tailor ? 12. The tailor has not yet finished the coat. 13. When will he have finished the coat ? 14. Will you have received the letter to-morrow ? 15. Is the boy afraid ? 16. He is not afraid—he is ashamed. 17. Of what would he be ashamed, if he is not ashamed of a lie ? 18. You were not right ; the book was not John's. 19. The servant has found a silver watch. 20. You are wrong ; the watch is of gold. 21. The merchant would have bought the neighbor's house, if he had had enough money. 22. Had

they seen the king's letter? 23. They had not seen the letter yesterday. 24. They will have received the books to-morrow. 25. Of what is the man afraid? 26. Will he be afraid of the dog? 27. We have finished the exercise; it has not been difficult.

In connection with this Lesson, let the verbs *avoir* and *être* be thoroughly reviewed, in all forms.

## LESSON XV.

### DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. The determinative or limiting adjectives are, like other adjectives, used with nouns, and must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding pronouns. The adjective and pronoun forms are often identical in English.\*

The Possessive and the Demonstrative adjectives are known as the *definite determinatives*, and are sometimes referred to as the *equivalents of the article*.

**Note.**—The articles themselves are really determinative adjectives.

### POSSESSIVE (OR PERSONAL) ADJECTIVES.

2. The possessive adjectives correspond to the several relations of the personal pronoun, and are as follows:

|                             | <i>M.</i>     | <i>F.</i>     | <i>Pl. M. &amp; F.</i> |                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Singular 1st Person.</i> | <i>mon,</i>   | <i>ma,</i>    | <i>mes,</i>            | <i>my.</i>            |
| 2 <i>d</i> “                | <i>ton,</i>   | <i>ta,</i>    | <i>tes,</i>            | <i>thy.</i>           |
| 3 <i>d</i> “                | <i>son,</i>   | <i>sa,</i>    | <i>ses,</i>            | <i>his, her, its.</i> |
| <i>Plural 1st</i>           | <i>notre,</i> | <i>notre,</i> | <i>nos,</i>            | <i>our.</i>           |
| 2 <i>d</i> “                | <i>votre,</i> | <i>votre,</i> | <i>vos,</i>            | <i>your.</i>          |
| 3 <i>d</i> “                | <i>leur,</i>  | <i>leur,</i>  | <i>leurs,</i>          | <i>their.</i>         |

3. The possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun following, not with the person referred to. Thus, *son, sa, ses* mean equally *his, her, its*, according to the context. As, *mon oncle, my uncle*; *ma tante, my aunt*; *son frère, his or her brother*; *sa sœur, his or her sister*; *ses pieds, his, her, or its feet, etc.*

4. Before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or silent

---

\* As, *his* hat, adjective; *my* hat and *his*, pronoun, etc.



*h*, mon, ton, son are used for euphony instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa* ; as, mon encre, my ink ; son épée, his, or her, sword.

5. Like the articles, the possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun ; as, mon frère et ma sœur, my brother and (my) sister.

6. The possessive adjectives are used before names of kinship, where omitted in English ; as, bonjour, ma sœur, good morning, sister. (But not before *papa* and *maman*.)

7. With such names of kinship preceded by *votre*, *your*, the titles Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle, are often politely prefixed (see L. VIII. 2) ; as, Monsieur votre père est-il ici ? Is your father here ?

#### THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.

8. The Demonstrative Adjective (*this* or *that*, pl. *these* or *those*) is *masc.* cet,\* *fem.* cette ; plural, *masc.* and *fem.* ces. In the masculine singular before a consonant *cet* becomes *ce* ; as, ce livre, cet homme, cette femme, *this* or *that* book, man, woman ; ces livres, ces hommes, ces femmes, *these* or *those* books, men, women, etc.

9. The specific or emphatic distinction *this* or *that*, *these* or *those*, is expressed by *-ci* (from *ici*, *here*) and *-là* (*there*), added, with hyphen, after the noun ; as, ce livre-ci, this book (here) ; ce livre-là, that book (there) ; ces hommes-ci, these men ; ces hommes-là, those men.

10. Other demonstrative expressions are formed by the help of the article, as will be seen hereafter ; as, l'autre, the other, pl. les autres ; le même, the same, pl. les mêmes, etc.

#### Vocabulary.

|                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| le monsieur, the gentleman ;     | le garçon, the boy.    |
| la dame, the lady ;              | une ardoise, a slate.  |
| la demoiselle, the young lady ;  | une épée, a sword.     |
| l'époux, the husband ;           | la clef, the key.      |
| l'épouse, the wife ;             | bonjour, good morning. |
| le grand-père, the grandfather ; | bonsoir, good evening. |

---

\*As will be seen hereafter, L. XVII. 4, *cette* is the regular feminine of *cet*.



la grand'mère, the grandmother; aime, loves; aiment, love  
 (See L. V. 2, *note*). (3d pl.).  
 mort (*m.*), morte (*f.*), dead; maintenant, now.

### Reading Lesson 10.

1. Mon ami est malade. 2. Ton\* père est à Berlin. 3. Ta\* tante est-elle ici? 4. Oui, elle est ici; mais elle n'est pas à la maison maintenant. 5. L'oncle aime son neveu, la tante aime aussi son neveu. 6. Elle aime aussi sa nièce. 7. Notre père est bon. 8. Où est votre cahier? 9. Voici mon cahier. 10. Où sont vos cahiers? 11. Voici nos cahiers. 12. Caroline est mon amie; est-elle aussi ton amie? 13. Les écoliers aiment leurs maîtres. 14. Avez-vous vu mon père? 15. Non, Mademoiselle, je n'ai pas vu Monsieur votre père; il n'était pas ici. 16. Voici le chapeau de Madame votre mère. 17. Avez-vous vendu votre cheval? 18. Oui, j'ai vendu mes deux (*two*) chevaux. 19. Le général avait perdu son épée. 20. Les mères et les pères aiment leurs enfants. 21. Nous avons vendu notre maison et notre jardin. 22. Avez-vous lu vos lettres? 23. Ce Monsieur est le père de Louise. 24. Ces thèmes-ci sont très faciles. 25. A qui est ce livre-là? 26. Le marchand a acheté cette maison-ci. 27. Qui a trouvé ma bourse? 28. Ce soldat a perdu son épée. 29. Ces hommes-là ne sont pas heureux. 30. Cet arbre-ci est très grand. 31. Cette demoiselle-ci est la sœur de Guillaume. 32. Cette servante-là a perdu la clef de ma chambre. 33. Bonjour, mon père. 34. Bonjour, mes enfants. 35. Le grand-père de ces enfants est mort; leur grand'mère est aussi (*also*) morte. 36. Mon père et ma sœur sont chez *mon* grand-père.

### Theme 10.

1. Have you found your pens? 2. Here are my pens. 3. Who has found my copy-book? 4. This servant has found your copy-book. 5. This scholar has lost his slate. 6. Whose books are these (here)? 7. These books are William's. 8. This lady loves her husband; this gentleman loves his wife. 9. This boy's grandmother is dead. 10. These children have lost their father. 11. Those boys have lost their fathers. 12. This gentleman's horse is very fine. 13. Who has bought that house? 14. My father has bought those two houses. 15. We had not sold our books. 16. I

---

\* Tu, ton, ta, as used in familiar or affectionate style in French, must often be rendered idiomatically by *you, your*, in English, and *vice versa*.

have lost my purse and (my) key. 17. The boy is at his uncle's. 18. Has the soldier found his sword? 19. Have they read their letters? 20. These books are not John's; they are his father's. 21. Good evening, Miss. 22. Good evening, brother. 23. Has your father been here to-day? 24. No, he has been at (my) grandmother's. 25. This woman has lost her husband and (her) children. 26. These ladies will have written their letters. 27. We have finished this exercise.

## LESSON XVI.

### DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES—CONTINUED.

1. The interrogative, indefinite, and numeral adjectives are known as *indefinite determinatives*.

#### THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE.

2. The Interrogative Adjective *which* or *what* is *m.* quel, *f.* quelle; plural, *m.* quels, *f.* quelles; as, quel livre, which (or what) book; quelles fleurs, which (or what) flowers. Or, predicatively, quelles sont ces fleurs? (of) what (kind) are these flowers? or, what (kind of) flowers are these?

3. Quel is also used in exclamations for *what a*, or *what!*, with or without an adjective following; as, quel homme, what a man! quels hommes, what men! quels beaux chevaux, what fine horses!

#### INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

4. The following are some of the indefinite adjectives:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| chaque, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , each;           | as, chaque enfant, each child.                  |
| tout, <i>f.</i> toute, every;                     | “ toute ville, every city.                      |
| quelque, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , } some;        | “ quelque temps, some time.                     |
| quelques, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>pl.</i> , }  | “ quelques fleurs, some (few) flowers.          |
| maint, <i>f.</i> mainte, many a;                  | “ maint homme, many a man.                      |
| plusieurs, <i>pl. m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , several; | “ plusieurs jours, several days.                |
| aucun, <i>f.</i> aucune, any;                     | “ sans aucune exception, without any exception. |
| nul, <i>f.</i> nulle, not one, no;                | “ nulle règle, no rule.                         |

5. *Tout*, with the definite article following, means *all, the whole*. In the plural, *tous*, feminine *toutes*, it is used in the sense of *all, every*; as, *toute la ville*, the whole city—all the city; *tous les hommes*, all (*the*) men; *tous les jours*, every day. Similarly with possessive or demonstrative adjective; as, *toute ma maison*, my whole house; *tous mes amis*, all my friends; *toutes ces dames*, all these ladies.

6. *Aucun*, as well as *nul*, is commonly used in the sense of *not any, no*, the verb being preceded by the negative *ne*; as, *je n'ai aucun (nul) ami*, I have no friend.

7. The forms *quelque, quelques* (*affirmative*); *aucun* and *nul* (*negative*) are often equivalent in English to the *partitive forms* (Lesson IX.). The former, however, give a more limited or individual sense; as, *j'ai des fleurs*, I have some flowers—*quelques fleurs*, some (few) flowers; *pas de fleurs*, no flowers; *aucune (nulle) fleur*, not a single flower. The partitive form is the more frequent.

#### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

8. The numeral adjectives present some peculiarities of form and use which will be shown hereafter (L. XLIV.). For the present, only the following fundamental forms will be given:

##### *Cardinals.*

un, *f.* une, one;  
deux, two;  
trois, three;  
quatre, four;  
cinq,\* five;  
six, six;  
sept, seven;  
huit,† eight;  
neuf,† nine;  
dix, ten,  
onze,† eleven;  
douze, twelve;

##### *Ordinals.*

premier, *f.* première, first.  
{ second, *f.* seconde, } second.  
{ deuxième, *m.* and *f.*, }  
troisième, “ third.  
quatrième, “ fourth.  
cinquième, “ fifth.  
sixième, “ sixth.  
septième, “ seventh.  
huitième,† “ eighth.  
neuvième, “ ninth.  
dixième, “ tenth.  
onzième,† “ eleventh.  
douzième, “ twelfth.

\* In *cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix*, the final consonants are sounded (L. III. 13, 15); but they become silent before a following consonant, when used properly as *adjectives*; as, *cinq livres*, five books, etc. In expressions like *le cinq Mai*, the fifth of May, the final consonant is sounded.

† In *huit, huitième, h* is not *mute* (L. III. 5). For *neuf*, see L. V. 1, 1; for *onze* *onzième*, L. V. 1, 7.

9. The ordinals, except *premier* and *second*, are derived from the cardinals, and are the same for masculine and feminine. They are regularly preceded by the definite article; as, *le premier*, *la première*, the first; *le*, or *la*, *dixième*, the tenth, etc.

### Vocabulary.

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| le nom, the name;                            | un an, the year.      |
| la classe, the class;                        | le mois, the month.   |
| la règle, the rule;                          | la semaine, the week. |
| une exception, an exception;                 | le jour, the day.     |
| le franc, the franc (coin);                  | la nuit, the night.   |
| l'âge ( <i>m.</i> ), the age;                | une heure, an hour.   |
| la fois, the time;                           | autre, other.         |
| le dernier, <i>f.</i> la dernière, the last; | même, same (self).    |
| demi, <i>f.</i> demie, half.                 |                       |

### IDIOMS.

Quel âge avez-vous ? How old are you ? J'ai dix ans. I am ten years old.

Quelle heure est-il ? What o'clock is it ? Il est dix heures. It is ten o'clock.

*Temps* is *time in duration*; *fois* is *time in occurrence*, or *repetition*; as, dix fois, ten times; combien de temps, how long? combien de fois, how often ?

### Reading Lesson 11.

1. Quel est le nom de cet écolier ? 2. Son nom est Louis.  
 3. Quelle est le nom de cette écolière ? 4. Son nom est Louise.  
 5. Quelle est cette fleur ? 6. Dans quelle maison avez-vous perdu vos livres ? 7. Quelles fautes avez-vous dans votre thème ? 8. J'ai eu les mêmes fautes que (*as*) vous. 9. Donnez-moi une autre fleur.  
 10. Les autres dames ont été ici. 11. Chaque enfant a son livre.  
 12. Toute ville a des maisons. 13. J'ai lu toute la lettre. 14. Nous avons vu tous les hommes. 15. J'ai écrit tous nos thèmes sans faute. 16. Chaque semaine a sept jours. 17. Nulle règle sans exception. 18. Louis n'a eu aucune faute dans son thème. 19. Donnez-moi quelques (a few) francs. 20. Je n'ai pas d'argent. 21. Le soldat a été ici toute la nuit. 22. Novembre est le onzième mois.  
 23. Mon amie, quel âge avez-vous ? 24. J'ai dix ans et sept mois.  
 25. Quelle heure est-il ? 26. Il est dix heures et demie (*half-past ten*). 27. Maint bon enfant est pauvre. 28. J'ai vu plusieurs



oiseaux dans cet arbre-ci. 29. Huit est deux fois quatre. 30. Elle a été ici deux fois pendant la nuit. 31. Jean est le premier de la classe. 32. Louise est la seconde, Julie la troisième, et Guillaume le dernier. 33. Quelle jolie dame ! 34. Quels beaux garçons ! 35. O, quel mensonge ! 36. A quelle heure fut-elle ici ? 37. Elle fut ici à trois heures et demie.

### Theme 11.

1. In what countries have you been ? 2. I have been in France and (in) Germany. 3. All my friends were here. 4. At what o'clock (hour) were they here ? 5. They were here at 8 o'clock. 6. All these girls have been at (the) school. 7. How many scholars has the teacher ? 8. He has twelve scholars, four in the first class, three in the second, and five in the third. 9. Give me a few flowers. 10. I have *not one* flower now ; I have sold all my flowers. 11. Several gentlemen have been here. 12. How many months are in a year ? 13. A year has twice (two times) six months. 14. Every mother loves her children. 15. I have lost all my money. 16. How much money had you ? 17. I had ten francs, and *some* (few) cents (*sous*). 18. Which is the third month of the year ? 19. What are the names of the months ? 20. John has written all his exercises without *any* mistake. 21. Every rule has its exceptions. 22. The whole garden is beautiful. 23. All men are not wise. 24. What a large class ! 25. How old is she ? 26. She is ten years and four months old. 27. They have been here three times during the night. 28. They will be here every day (*pl.*) of the week.

## LESSON XVII.

### ADJECTIVES: FEMININE AND PLURAL.

#### FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The feminine of adjectives is usually formed by adding *e* (*mute*) to the masculine ; as, grand, grande ; petit, petite.

2. If the masculine ends in *e* (*mute*), the feminine remains unchanged ; as, facile, *f.* facile.

3. The ending -f becomes -ve, as actif, active.

|   |     |   |                            |
|---|-----|---|----------------------------|
| “ | -x  | “ | -se, as heureux, heureuse. |
| “ | -er | “ | -ère, as cher, chère.      |



## 4. The following endings double the final consonant :

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| -el becomes | -elle, as cruel, cruelle.    |
| -eil “      | -eille, as pareil, pareille. |
| -en “       | -enne, as ancien, ancienne.  |
| -on “       | -onne, as bon, bonne.        |

Monosyllables in -s become -sse, as gros, grosse.

“ in -t “ -tte, as sot, sotté.

Except ras, *f.* rase, shorn ; prêt, *f.* prête, ready.

## 5. The ending -et, in adjectives not monosyllabic, becomes -ète, as complet, complète.

6. The following in -c form -que : caduc, caduque, decaying ; public, publique, public ; ture, turque, Turkish. Grec, Greek, forms grecque.

The following form -che : blanc, blanche, white ; franc, franche, frank ; sec, sèche, dry.

Frais, fresh, forms fraîche.

7. Adjectives in -eur derived from *verbs*, form -euse ; as, trompeur, trompeuse, deceitful, from tromper, to deceive. But those which are *comparative* in meaning are regular ; as, meilleur, meilleure, better (also majeur, mineur, supérieur, etc.).

**Note.**—Other irregular forms from -eur are more properly classed as nouns, as accusateur, accusatrice ; traître, traîtresse, etc.

## 8. The following also double the final consonant :

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| épais, épaisse, thick.     |
| expres, expresse, express. |
| muet, muette, mute.        |
| sujet, sujette, subject.   |
| gentil, gentille, gentle.  |
| nul, nulle, no.            |

## 9. The following are otherwise irregular :

|                             |
|-----------------------------|
| doux, douce, sweet.         |
| faux, fausse, false.        |
| roux, rousse, red.          |
| bénin, bénigne, benign.     |
| malin, maligne, malign.     |
| favori, favorite, favorite. |
| béni, bénite, blessed.      |
| coi, coite, cosy.           |
| tiers, tierce, third.       |

Long, longue, long; and aigu, aiguë, sharp, are only apparently irregular. (See L. III., 4).

10. The following have a double form for the masculine singular, the forms in parenthesis, from which the feminine is derived, being used before a vowel or silent *h* :

beau (bel), *f.* belle, fine.  
 nouveau (nouvel), nouvelle, new.  
 fou (fol), folle, foolish.  
 mou (mol), molle, soft.  
 vieux (vieil), vieille, old.

As, un beau chapeau, un bel arbre, un bel homme; but de beaux arbres, de beaux hommes, the plural being formed, in all cases, from the first form.

**Note.**—(1.) Most of these irregularities admit of explanation. For example, the doubling of a final consonant preserves the *short* sound of a preceding vowel, as in *cruelle*, *bonne*, *nette*, etc., while in *rase*, *prête*, *complète*, etc., the single consonant preserves the *long* sound. (Compare English *seating*, *setting*, etc.) In other cases, the change is purely orthographical, as *caduque*, *longue*, etc., to preserve the proper sound of the root.

(2.) In other cases, the irregularity may be explained by reference to the Latin, as *doux*, *douce*, from *dulcis*; but *faux*, *fausse*, from *falsus*, etc. It will also appear that, in some cases, it is the masculine, not the feminine, which is irregular; as *malin*, *maligne*, from *malignus*; *mou*, *molle*, from *mollis*, etc. The teacher must judge how far such explanations may be profitably introduced.

### Plural of Adjectives.

11. The rule for forming the plural of adjectives has been already given (L. VII. 10). It applies equally to masculine and feminine of all forms, as *beau*, *belle*; *pl.* *beaux*, *belles*; *royal*, *royale*; *pl.* *royaux*, *royales*; *vieux*, *vieille*; *pl.* *vieux*, *vieilles*, etc.

Exception 1. But *bleu*, *fou*, *mou* form their plurals in -s, *bleus*, *fous*, *mous*.

Exception 2. Some adjectives in -al form their plural in -als; as, *fatal*, *final*, *natal*; *pl.* *fatals*, *finals*, *natals*, and some others. (L. VII. 7.)

Exception 3.—*Tout*, all; masculine plural, *tous*.

For Compound Adjectives see L. XLVI.

12. The Participles of verbs, when inflected, form their feminine and plurals like adjectives; as, *charmant*, *pl.* *char-*

mants; *fem.* charmante, *pl.* charmantes, charming; aimé, *pl.* aimés; *fem.* aimée, *pl.* aimées, loved; perdu, *pl.* perdus; *fem.* perdue, *pl.* perdues, lost, etc.

The rules for the inflection of participles will be given hereafter.

### Vocabulary and Exercise.

Form the feminine and plurals of :

|                        |                      |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| actif, active;         | fou, foolish;        | noir, black.         |
| âgé, aged, old;        | frais, fresh;        | nombreux, numerous.  |
| agréable, agreeable;   | furieux, furious;    | oisif, idle.         |
| amer, bitter;          | généreux, generous;  | ouvert, open.        |
| amusant, amusing;      | gros, big;           | paresseux, lazy.     |
| ancien, ancient, old;  | haut, high;          | prêt, ready.         |
| appliqué, industrious; | heureux, happy;      | public, public.      |
| bas, low;              | innocent, innocent;  | rond, round.         |
| beau, beautiful;       | italien, Italian;    | rouge, } red.        |
| blanc, white;          | joli, pretty;        | roux, }              |
| bleu, blue;            | las, tired;          | sec, dry.            |
| carré, square;         | long, long;          | secret, secret.      |
| certain, certain;      | malade, sick;        | serein, serene.      |
| cher, dear;            | malheureux, unhappy; | sot, stupid.         |
| chéri, beloved;        | meilleur, better;    | supérieur, superior. |
| court, short;          | mortel, mortal;      | vaste, vast.         |
| cruel, cruel;          | muet, mute, dumb;    | vert, green.         |
| doux, sweet, gentle;   | net, neat, short;    | vertueux, virtuous.  |
| faux, false;           | neuf, }              | vieux, old.          |
| fermé, shut;           | nouveau, } new;      | vif, lively.         |
| flatteur, flattering;  | noble, noble;        | vilain, ugly.        |

As the construction of adjectives depends also upon their position, further exercises will be postponed until the end of the next lesson.

## LESSON XVIII.

### POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in French precede or follow the noun. Only an outline of the most general rules will here be given.

1. The following classification may be observed :

1. Adjectives which regularly precede.
2. Adjectives which regularly follow.
3. Adjectives which precede or follow in different meanings.

4. Position as determined by circumstances.

2. The following regularly precede the noun :

1. The determinative adjectives, except *quelconque*.
2. The numeral adjectives, except in titles (L. XLV.).
3. The following very common adjectives, in their ordinary sense :

beau, fine, beautiful;

bon, good;

grand, great, large;

gros, big;

jeune, young;

joli, pretty;

mauvais, bad.

meilleur, better.

moindre, less.

petit, little, small.

vieux, old.

vilain, ugly.

3. The following regularly follow the noun :

1. Adjectives denoting sensible qualities—*color, taste, smell, shape*, etc.; as, *du papier rouge*, red paper ; *une table ronde*, a round table.

2. Adjectives denoting *nationality, religion, or official character* ; as, *un vaisseau anglais*, an English vessel ; *un prêtre catholique*, a catholic priest ; *la famille royale*, the royal family.

3. Adjectives denoting prominent or distinctive *characteristics* ; as, *un homme aveugle*, a blind man ; *une fille muette*, a dumb girl.

4. Participles used adjectively ; as, *un jeu amusant*, an amusing play ; *une fille chérie*, a beloved daughter, etc.

4. The following are examples of adjectives which change their meaning according to their position :

*un brave homme*, a good man ;    *un homme brave*, a brave man.

*un grand homme*, a great man ;    *un homme grand*, a tall man.

*un pauvre homme*, expresses    *un homme pauvre*, *poverty*.  
*pity*;

*un cher ami*, a dear (loved)    *un livre cher*, a dear (costly) book.  
friend ;

*une certaine chose*, a certain    *une chose certaine* (*definite*).  
thing (*indefinite*);

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| une commune voix, a unanimous voice;              | une voix commune, an ordinary voice. |
| la dernière année, the last year (of any series); | l'année dernière, last year.         |
| etc., etc.  | etc., etc.                           |

5. Adjectives used figuratively, or as mere *epithets*, the meaning of which is *implied* in the noun, generally precede; as, une tendre amitié, a tender friendship; une verte prairie, a green prairie; le juste ciel, just heaven.

6. If the adjective have a following object connected with it, it follows the noun; if the object belong to the noun, the adjective precedes; as, un mortel ennemi de Rome, a mortal enemy of Rome; un héros cher à ses concitoyens, a hero dear to his fellow-citizens.

7. Generally, in the absence of other rule, monosyllabic adjectives precede, polysyllabic adjectives follow; as, un long discours; une vaste forêt; une femme agréable, etc.

8. Other considerations of emphasis, euphony, etc., need not be here included. For the *partitive*, as affected by the position of the adjective, see L. IX. 4.

9. Two adjectives, not connected by a conjunction, may either both precede; as, un beau jeune homme, a handsome young man; or one will precede and the other follow; as, un grand vaisseau anglais, a large English vessel; or both may follow; as, un livre français amusant, an amusing French book. If connected by a conjunction, both will follow, unless each would *singly precede*; as, un grand et beau jardin; but, une femme belle et courageuse.

### Vocabulary.

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| la fenêtre, the window;    | la langue, the language.                      |
| la table, the table;       | la pensée, the thought.                       |
| la forêt, the forest;      | l'espoir ( <i>m.</i> ), the hope.             |
| la nouvelle, the news;     | l'histoire ( <i>f.</i> ), the story, history. |
| la maladie, the disease;   | l'hiver ( <i>m.</i> ), the winter.            |
| la médecine, the medicine; | l'été ( <i>m.</i> ), the summer.              |
| la nation, the nation;     | l'ennemi, the enemy, <i>f.</i> l'ennemie.     |
| le héros, the hero;        |   |
| le mot, the word;          | la voix, the voice.                           |
| la bourse, the purse;      | la soie, the silk.                            |



## Reading Lesson 12.

1. Une chère amie. 2. De jeunes filles. 3. Une table ronde. 4. Un fol espoir. 5. Des livres chers. 6. De bons vins. 7. Des vins excellents. 8. Les nations anciennes. 9. De grands et beaux chevaux. 10. Les fenêtres ouvertes. 11. D'une mère chérie. 12. Aux généraux italiens. 13. Des maladies mortelles. 14. De mortels ennemis. 15. Sa voix douce. 16. Une certaine histoire. 17. Des nouvelles certaines. 18. Aux jolies filles. 19. La langue allemande. 20. Avec des robes blanches. 21. Aux fenêtres fermées. 22. Le troisième jour. 23. Un ciel serein. 24. Une noire pensée. 25. Une sotte femme. 26. Une vive expression. 27. Des montres d'or chères. 28. Les mauvaises pensées. 29. Une meilleure femme. 30. Les jeunes oiseaux. 31. Une bourse perdue. 32. Une médecine amère. 33. La pauvre femme. 34. Un homme âgé. 35. La dernière heure du jour. 36. L'été dernier. 37. Les grands héros français. 38. Une belle fille anglaise. 39. Une fille belle et noble. 40. Des hommes nobles et généreux. 41. Une belle et vaste forêt. 42. Un habit noir. 43. Des habits bleus. 44. Des mots nombreux. 45. Une longue histoire. 46. Une vieille femme. 47. Un thème facile.

## Theme 12.

1. (The) English horses. 2. At the round table. 3. From the open window. 4. Of the ancient heroes. 5. Our dear friends. 6. In the great forests. 7. The bitter medicines. 8. Happy thoughts. 9. An agreeable news. 10. Dear stockings. 11. A generous hero. 12. A true story. 13. A better hope. 14. Some letters found. 15. The industrious scholars. 16. The lazy boys. 17. Of a cruel mother. 18. Of old men. 19. The aged woman. 20. Of the Italian cities. 21. An old French soldier. 22. The last days of the winter. 23. (The) last week. 24. A noble old soldier. 25. A false and cruel mother. 26. In German words. 27. A mortal enemy. 28. An old and brave soldier of the French army. 29. Two square tables. 30. A beautiful hope. 31. A foolish thought. 32. A certain man. 33. A true and certain history. 34. The great French generals of the wars of Napoleon (é). 35. (Some) superior wines. 36. A flattering thought. 37. A secret window. 38. The dumb girls. 39. Some fresh water. 40. The English forests. 41. Some amusing English books. 42. Some dear *silk* stockings. 43. The last word.

## LESSON XIX.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The comparative (of *superiority* or of *inferiority*) is expressed by the adverbs *plus, more* ; *moins, less* ; preceding the adjective ; as, *plus jeune, younger, or more youthful* ; *moins jeune, less young, etc.*

**Note.**—The mode of comparison does not depend, as in English, upon the length of the adjective ; as, *wiser, more beautiful, etc.*

2. The superlative is expressed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative. A possessive adjective may take the place of the article ; as, *le plus beaux, the finest, or the most beautiful* ; *mon plus cher ami, my dearest friend* ; *la moins agréable des femmes, the least agreeable of women.*

3. The so-called *absolute* superlative *very, most, etc.*, not expressing comparison, is rendered by the adverbs *très, fort, bien* ; as, *un très beau pays, a very, or most, beautiful country.*

4. The following are irregular forms :

|                 | <i>Comp.</i>       | <i>Sup.</i>            |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| bon, good ;     | meilleur, better ; | le meilleur, the best. |
| mauvais, bad ;  | pire, worse ;      | le pire, the worst.    |
| petit, little ; | moindre, less ;    | le moindre, the least. |

The regular forms, *plus mauvais, plus petit, le plus mauvais, le plus petit*, are also used.

**Note.**—These forms represent really different roots (as Latin, *bonus, melior, etc.*).

5. *Than*, after the comparative, is expressed by *que* ; *of*, or *in*, after the superlative, by *de* ; as, *elle est plus jeune que Louise, she is younger than Louise* ; *la plus belle maison de la ville, the finest house in the city.*

6. *Equality* in comparison is expressed by *aussi—que, as—as*. After a negative, *si (so)* may be used instead of *aussi* ; as, *Jean est aussi appliqué que Guillaume, John is as industrious as William* ; *Jean n'est pas si (or aussi) appliqué que G., John is not so (or as) industrious as W.*

7. Adjectives in the comparative or superlative retain the same position with reference to the noun as the simple (*positive*) form (L. XVIII.). The rules for forming the feminine and plural, and the rules of agreement, remain also unchanged.

8. If the superlative follows the noun, the article is repeated; as, l'homme le plus brave; des hommes les plus braves; mon ami le plus dévoué (*devoted*); mes amis les plus dévoués, etc.

### SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

9. The adjective agrees with its subject in gender and number. (But see L. XII. 6.)

10. If the adjective belongs to two or more subjects, it will be plural. If the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective will agree with them in gender; if they are of different genders, the adjective will be masculine plural; as, la mère et la fille sont mortes; l'homme et sa femme sont morts.

11. If the adjective belongs to *one* of two or more nouns, or if the nouns are *synonymous*, it will agree with the nearest noun; as, un château ou une maison ruinée, a ruined house or castle; un travail, une occupation continuelle, a continual labor or occupation.

12. The adjective with the definite article is often used in the sense of a noun; as, le malade, the sick (man); la malade, the sick (woman); les malades, the sick; le bon et le beau, the good and the beautiful (abstractly).

**Note.**—*One, ones*, following an adjective, as *a good one, some good ones*, are not expressed in French.

### Vocabulary.

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| le vent, the wind;     | la terre, the earth. |
| la tempête, the storm; | la rose, the rose.   |
| le chat, the cat;      | le métal, the metal. |
| la souris, the mouse;  | le fer, (the) iron.  |
| la vie, the life;      | souvent, often.      |
| le soleil, the sun;    | toujours, always.    |
| la lune, the moon;     | beaucoup, much.      |

## Reading Lesson 13.

1. Ces tables sont rondes. 2. Les portes et les fenêtres étaient ouvertes. 3. Une plus longue vie. 4. Notre maison est beaucoup plus belle que la maison du voisin. 5. La plus belle maison de la ville. 6. Jean est plus âgé que Charles, et Louise est la plus âgée de tous les enfants. 7. Néron (*Nero*) fut le plus cruel des empereurs de Rome. 8. La rose est la plus belle des fleurs. 9. Guillaume est l'écolier le moins appliqué de toute l'école. 10. Donnez-moi une meilleure plume. 11. Les plumes et l'encre dans cette école sont mauvaises. 12. Le vent et la tempête furent furieux. 13. Le chat est le plus mortel ennemi des souris. 14. Une voix plus douce. 15. La voix la plus douce. 16. Le cheval est le plus utile des animaux. 17. Donnez-moi des livres plus amusants. 18. L'Angleterre et la France sont les pays les plus riches de l'Europe. 19. Les pauvres ont souvent une vie très amère. 20. Les femmes les plus nobles sont souvent malheureuses. 21. Donnez-moi le meilleur vin. 22. Le vin rouge est le meilleur. 23. Dans l'hiver les jours sont plus courts et les nuits plus longues que dans l'été. 24. Le fer est le plus utile de tous les métaux, mais l'or et l'argent sont plus chers que le fer. 25. Les ciels les plus bleus sont en Italie. 26. Marie est aussi belle que Louise. 27. Les riches ne sont pas si nombreux que les pauvres. 28. J'ai les amis les plus dévoués.

## Theme 13.

1. The merchant has round tables and square tables. 2. The most useful animals. 3. Who is the first scholar in the school? 4. Which were the most ancient nations? 5. The window is not open, and all the doors are shut. 6. She is the least agreeable of the three daughters. 7. (The) pears are dearer than (the) apples. 8. Louisa is more industrious than Mary. 9. Which is the most industrious of all the girls? 10. This paper is bad, and this ink is worse. 11. Give me (some) better paper, and (some) better ink. 12. Have you any better wine? 13. The red wine is better. 14. Napoleon was the greatest general in Europe. 15. The earth is much smaller than the sun, but much larger than the moon. 16. Boys are more active than girls, but girls are not less lively than boys, and much prettier. 17. Italy is a most beautiful country. 18. London is a very rich city, much richer than Paris; but Paris is more beautiful. 19. John is as old as William, but he is not so industrious. 20. The good are not always happy. 21. The father and (the) mother of the children are dead. 22. The bravest gen-



erals are not always the greatest generals. 23. The longest days of the year are in the summer. 24. The lives of the richest are often unhappy. 25. The history of the most ancient nations is lost. 26. Give me some fresher water. 27. The beer is as bad as the wine. 28. A dead dog or cat.

## LESSON XX.

### REGULAR VERBS.

As stated in Lesson X. 1, the general definitions concerning the verb will be presumed as known. Only the following idiomatic points will here be noted :

1. There is in French only one form for each tense. The different English forms, *I give, do give, or am giving; I gave, did give, or was giving; I shall or will give, or be giving*, etc., are therefore expressed by the same form, which must be always translated *idiomatically*, as the sense may require in each case.

2. The imperfect and the preterit may both correspond to the English *past*. The imperfect usually expresses action incomplete, continued, or repeated ; the preterit, action completed or single. In narrative, the main facts will usually be preterit (in principal propositions) ; subordinate or descriptive facts, usually imperfect ; but the *character* of the statement in each case will of course determine the tense.

The same distinction applies, generally, to the corresponding compound tenses.

3. The compound present also often represents the English *past*, with reference to any recent or definite time, especially with the first or second persons ; as, *j'ai vu votre père hier*, I saw your father yesterday, etc.

4. The future (*shall or will*)\* is used as in English ; but more regularly than in English in *dependent future* clauses ; as, I shall see him when he *comes* ; French, when he *shall come*, etc.

5. The conditional (*should or would*)\* is used chiefly in

---

\* These auxiliary uses must be distinguished from the verb uses, expressing *obligation* and *volution*. The necessity for this distinction lies in the English idiom, not in the French.



principal propositions, modified by a condition expressed or understood (L. XLII. 2). The dependent clause usually has the imperfect indicative; as, *si j'avais de l'argent, je serais heureux*, if I had money, I should be happy. But in many cases, the condition is not expressed; as in English, I *should think* so, etc. (that is, under certain circumstances).

6. The subjunctive, which occurs mainly in complex sentences, will be reserved for a special Lesson (XLIH.). In a simple sentence, with the conjunction *que*, it supplies the third persons of the imperative; as, *qu'il donne*, let him give, etc.\* Hence in the following paradigms, these forms are not given under the imperative.

**Remark.**—The complete idiomatic uses of the tenses and moods can be learned only by experience. In the paradigms only the most usual senses are given. Especial care should be taken in the distinction of the *past* tenses, and in the use and translation of the English *auxiliary* forms.

### THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

7. There are three regular conjugations, based upon the ending of the infinitive:

1. The first conjugation has the infinitive ending **-er**, as *donner*, to give.

2. The second conjugation has the infinitive ending **-ir**, as *finir*, to finish.

3. The third conjugation has the infinitive ending **-re**, as *vendre*, to sell.

The differences in the conjugations, and the general rules for the formation of the tenses, can be better understood after the respective forms have been exhibited.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION : INFINITIVE -ER.

#### 8. CONJUGATION OF DONNER, (To) GIVE : SIMPLE FORMS.

| <i>Infinitive.</i>         | <i>Present Participle.</i> | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>donner</i> , (to) give. | <i>donnant</i> , giving.   | <i>donné</i> , given.   |

---

\* These forms are, however, really elliptical, L. XLIII.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Singular.</i>                            | <i>Present.</i>                     | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| je donne, I give, do give, or<br>am giving. | nous donnons, we, etc.              |                |
| tu donnes, thou, etc.                       | vous donnez, you, etc.              |                |
| il (elle) donne,* he, she, it,<br>etc.      | ils (elles) donnent,* they,<br>etc. |                |

*Imperfect.*

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| je donnais, I gave, or was<br>giving. | nous donnions, we, etc.   |
| tu donnais, thou, etc.                | vous donniez, you, etc.   |
| il donnait, he, etc.                  | ils donnaient, they, etc. |

*Preterit.*

|                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| je donnai, I gave or did give. | nous donnâmes, we, etc.   |
| tu donnas, thou, etc.          | vous donnâtes, you, etc.  |
| il donna, he, etc.             | ils donnèrent, they, etc. |

*Future.*

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| je donnerai, I shall or will<br>give, or be giving. | nous donnerons, we, etc.  |
| tu donneras, thou, etc.                             | vous donnerez, you, etc.  |
| il donnera, he, etc.                                | ils donneront, they, etc. |

*Conditional.*

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| je donnerais, I should or<br>would give, or be giving. | nous donnerions, we, etc.   |
| tu donnerais, thou, etc.                               | vous donneriez, you, etc.   |
| il donnerait, he, etc.                                 | ils donneraient, they, etc. |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| donne, give (thou). | donnons, let us give. |
|                     | donnez, give (ye).    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.†

*Present.*

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| je donne.  | nous donnions. |
| tu donnes. | vous donniez.  |
| il donne.  | ils donnent.   |

\* See L. X. 2.

† See Note ‡ p. 29.

*Past.\**

je donnasse.  
tu donnasses.  
il donnât.

nous donnassions.  
vous donnassiez.  
ils donnassent.

## DONNER : COMPOUND FORMS.

9. The compound forms of *donner* are made of the corresponding forms of the auxiliary *avoir*, with the past participle, *donné*. (See L. XIV. 1.) Thus :

*Compound Infin.**Comp. Pres. Part.*

*avoir donné*, (to) have given. *ayant donné*, having given.

## INDICATIVE.

*Comp. Present.*

j'ai donné, I have given, or  
been giving.

tu as donné, thou, etc.

il a donné, he, etc.

nous avons donné, we, etc.

vous avez donné, you, etc.

ils ont donné, they, etc.

*Comp. Imperfect.**Comp. Preterit.*

j'avais donné, I had given.

tu avais donné, thou, etc.  
etc., etc.

j'eus donné, I had given.

tu eus donné, thou, etc.  
etc., etc.

*Comp. Future.**Comp. Conditional.*

j'aurai donné, I shall have  
given.

tu auras donné, thou wilt,  
etc.

etc., etc.

j'aurais donné, I should have  
given.

tu aurais donné, thou wouldst,  
etc.

etc., etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Comp. Present.**Comp. Past.*

j'aie donné,

tu aies donné, etc.

j'eusse donné,

tu eusses donné, etc.

---

\* See Note §, p. 29.

Let the pupil write out the omitted forms, so far as may be thought necessary.

10. Other regular verbs in *-er* may be likewise conjugated; as, *porter*, to carry; *parler*, to speak, etc. If the verb begins with a vowel or *h* mute, the usual allowance must be made for elision and *liaison*; as, *aimer*, to love:

*Present.*

j'aime. nous aimons.  
tu aimes. vous aimez.  
il aime. ils aiment.  
etc.

*Comp. Pres.*

j'ai aimé. nous avons aimé.  
tu as aimé. vous avez aimé.  
il a aimé. ils ont aimé.  
etc.

**Note.**—In order that the affirmative forms may be first thoroughly learned in the several conjugations, the interrogative and negative forms for all alike will be postponed for the present.

**Vocabulary.**

aimer, to love, like;  
admirer, to admire;  
chercher, to seek, look for;  
jouer, to play;  
louer, to praise;  
l'étranger, *m.*, } the stranger.  
l'étrangère, *f.*, }

parler, to speak.  
pleurer, to weep.  
porter, to carry, wear.  
apporter, to bring.  
trouver, to find.  
le nid, the nest.  
la poste, the post, mail.

la botte, the boot.

**Reading Lesson 14.**

1. Le maître loue ses écoliers; les écoliers aiment leur maître.
2. Nous admirons le beau palais du roi.
3. Les enfants pleuraient.
4. Nous cherchons nos plumes.
5. Les enfants aiment les pommes.
6. La bonne femme donnait tous les jours du pain aux pauvres.
7. Les étrangers admirent les belles maisons de cette ville.
8. Portez ces lettres à la poste.
9. J'ai porté (*worn*) ces bottes.
10. Les enfants trouvèrent un nid d'oiseau (*bird's nest*) dans un arbre.
11. Je louerais ces écoliers, s'ils étaient plus appliqués.
12. Donnez du pain et de l'eau au pauvre homme.
13. Les enfants joueraient, s'ils avaient assez de temps.
14. Qu'ils jouent (*subj.*).
15. Que le domestique apporte de l'eau fraîche.
16. Les généraux parlaient de la guerre.
17. Les enfants jouaient.
18. Nous avons trouvé de l'argent.
19. Le fils apporta la lettre à son père.
20. Le chien trouva un oiseau mort.
21. Tu porteras cette robe ce soir.
22. Jouons, mes amis.
23. Vous donneriez du pain au chien, s'il

avait faim. 24. Cherchez les livres. 25. La belle étrangère loua les écolières, et donna des livres à toute la classe.

### Theme 14.

1. We were looking-for (*imprf.*) our copy-books. 2. We have found our pens. 3. The children have played all (the) day. 4. The general spoke (*pret.*) to the soldiers. 5. Let us wear these (here) hats this evening. 6. The boy was looking-for his sister. 7. Louise was weeping; her bird was dead. 8. Give some water to the dog. 9. Let us love our friends. 10. Let the children play (*subj.*), if they have (the) time. 11. The scholars brought some beautiful books to the school. 12. We have found some birds'-nests; they are in that (there) tree. 13. The strangers will admire the palaces. 14. The generals will praise the brave soldiers. 15. The dogs found some birds. 16. We should praise these girls, if they were more industrious. 17. Let the servant carry these coats to the tailor's. 18. Let us admire the good (*pl.*). 19. The brave deserve (*mériter*) the fair (*belles*). 20. We admired the beautiful stranger (*f.*). 21. Every father praises his children. 22. The queen wore a blue dress and white gloves. 23. The English ships brought much money to the city. 24. (The) strangers will admire the great cities of this country. 25. The French (*pl.*) would admire (the) English horses.

## LESSON XXI.

### REGULAR VERBS: CONTINUED.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION: INFINITIVE -IR.

##### 1. CONJUGATION OF FINIR, TO FINISH: SIMPLE FORMS.

| <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Participle.</i> | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| finir, (to) finish. | finissant, finishing.      | fini, finished.         |

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Singular.</i>                                   | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>            |
|--|-----------------|---------------------------|
| je finis, I finish, do finish, or<br>am finishing. |                 | nous finissons, we, etc.  |
| tu finis, thou, etc.                               |                 | vous finissez, you, etc.  |
| il finit, he, etc.                                 |                 | ils finissent, they, etc. |



*Imperfect.*

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| je finissais, I finished, or was<br>finishing. | nous finissions, we, etc.   |
| tu finissais, thou, etc.                       | vous finissiez, you, etc.   |
| il finissait, he, etc.                         | ils finissaient, they, etc. |

*Preterit.*

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| je finis, I finished, or did<br>finish. | nous finîmes, we, etc.   |
| tu finis, thou, etc.                    | vous finîtes, you, etc.  |
| il finit, he, etc.                      | ils finirent, they, etc. |

*Future.*

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| je finirai, I shall or will<br>finish, or be finishing. | nous finirons, we, etc.  |
| tu finiras, thou, etc.                                  | vous finirez, you, etc.  |
| il finira, he, etc.                                     | ils finiront, they, etc. |

*Conditional.*

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| je finirais, I should or would<br>finish, or be finishing. | nous finirions, we, etc.   |
| tu finirais, thou, etc.                                    | vous finiriez, you, etc.   |
| il finirait, he, etc.                                      | ils finiraient, they, etc. |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| finis, finish (thou). | finissons, let us finish. |
|                       | finissez, finish (ye).    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| je finisse.  | nous finissions. |
| tu finisses. | vous finissiez.  |
| il finisse.  | ils finissent.   |

*Past.*

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| je finisse.  | nous finissions. |
| tu finisses. | vous finissiez.  |
| il finît.    | ils finissent.   |

## FINIR : COMPOUND FORMS.

2. The compound forms of *finir* are made as heretofore :

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>Compound Infin.</i> | avoir fini, (to) have finished.        |
| “ <i>Pres. Part.</i>   | ayant fini, having finished.           |
| “ <i>Present.</i>      | j’ai fini, I have finished.            |
|                        | tu as fini, thou, etc.                 |
|                        | etc. etc.                              |
| “ <i>Imperfect.</i>    | j’avais fini, I had finished.          |
| “ <i>Preterit.</i>     | j’eus fini, I had finished.            |
| “ <i>Future.</i>       | j’aurai fini, I shall have finished.   |
| “ <i>Conditional.</i>  | j’aurais fini, I should have finished. |
| “ <i>Pres. Subj.</i>   | j’aie fini, _____                      |
| “ <i>Past “</i>        | j’eusse fini, _____                    |
|                        | etc. etc.                              |

3. Other regular verbs in *ir* may be likewise conjugated ; as, bâtir, to build ; punir, to punish ; obéir, to obey, etc. ; as :

| <i>Present.</i>           | <i>Comp. Pres.</i>          |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| j’obéis, nous obéissons ; | j’ai obéi, nous avons obéi. |
| tu obéis, vous obéissez ; | tu as obéi, vous avez obéi. |
| il obéit, ils obéissent ; | il a obéi, ils ont obéi.    |
| etc. etc.                 | etc. etc.                   |

Exercises may be given in writing out omitted forms, as heretofore.

4. The verb haïr, to hate, contracts *ai* into *ai* (diphthong) in the singular of the present and of the imperative, but is elsewhere regular ; as :

*Present*, je hais, tu hais, il hait, nous haïssons, vous haïssez, ils haïssent.

*Imperative*, hais ; *pl.* haïssons, haïssez.

Note that, in this conjugation, the singular of the *present* and of the *preterit* indicative are the same. These forms, therefore, must be carefully distinguished. Other parts, which are identical in form, will be obviously distinguished by the construction.

## Vocabulary.

bâtir, to build ;  
choisir, to choose ;  
haïr, to hate ;

nourrir, to nourish, feed.  
obéir (à), to obey.  
punir, to punish.

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| remplir, to fill;        | la patrie, the (nation) country. |
| salir, to soil;          | fidèle, faithful.                |
| trahir, to betray;       | infidèle, unfaithful.            |
| la leçon, the lesson;    | déjà, already.                   |
| le travail, (the) labor. |                                  |

### Reading Lesson 15.

1. Le pain nourrit les hommes. 2. Les bons enfants obéissent à leurs maîtres. 3. Nous haïrons le vice. 4. Le maître punira les écoliers paresseux. 5. Il a puni hier Louis et Guillaume. 6. Le bon homme hait le vice. 7. Haïssons le vice, aimons la vertu. 8. Remplissez le verre. 9. Que les domestiques remplissent les verres. 10. Les verres sont tous remplis. 11. Finis ta leçon. 12. Ma leçon est finie. 13. Obéis à ton maître. 14. J'obéis à mon maître. 15. Nous bâtirions une maison, si nous avions plus d'argent. 16. Vous salirez vos habits (*clothes*). 17. Vous avez déjà sali vos gants blancs. 18. Les paresseux haïssent le travail. 19. Le général infidèle trahit (*pret.*) sa patrie. 20. Les soldats infidèles trahiront leur général. 21. Je choisirais un livre français, si j'avais à (*to*) choisir. 22. Finissons notre leçon.

### Theme 15.

1. The merchant is building some fine houses. 2. My father would build a house, if he had money. 3. The servants would fill all the glasses, if they had enough wine. 4. Good fathers will punish bad boys. 5. Let us obey (*to*) our mother. 6. We have always obeyed our mother. 7. The birds are feeding their little (*ones*). 8. A faithful soldier obeys his general, and loves his country. 9. I chose a red hat; you will choose a white (*one*). 10. The master punished the lazy scholars. 11. A good girl will obey always her father and (*her*) mother. 12. Let John fill my inkstand. 13. This black ink would soil your clothes. 14. My son, hate (*sing.*) vice, love virtue. 15. My children, choose always the good (*sing.*). 16. Who would punish the good (*pl.*)? 17. Who will hate virtue and (*will*) love vice? 18. Labor feeds the nations. 19. Who would betray his country to the enemy (*pl.*)? 20. Finish your exercise. 21. I should finish my exercise, if it were three o'clock. 22. The teacher finishes always at that hour. 23. You would have finished, if you were not so (*si*) lazy. 24. Our exercises are finished; we are happy.

## LESSON XXII.

## REGULAR VERBS : CONTINUED.

## THIRD CONJUGATION : INFINITIVE -RE.

## 1. CONJUGATION OF VENDRE, TO SELL : SIMPLE FORMS.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Pres. Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| vendre, (to) sell. | vendant, selling.  | venu, sold.       |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Singular.</i>                    | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Plural.</i>          |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| je vends, I sell, or<br>am selling. |                 | nous vendons, we, etc.  |
| tu vends, thou, etc.                |                 | vous vendez, you, etc.  |
| il vend, he, etc.                   |                 | ils vendent, they, etc. |

*Imperfect.*

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| je vendais, I sold, or was sell-<br>ing. | nous vendions, we, etc.   |
| tu vendais, thou, etc.                   | vous vendiez, you, etc.   |
| il vendait, he, etc.                     | ils vendaient, they, etc. |

*Preterit.*

|                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| je vendis, I sold, or did sell. | nous vendîmes, we, etc.   |
| tu vendis, thou, etc.           | vous vendîtes, you, etc.  |
| il vendit, he, etc.             | ils vendirent, they, etc. |

*Future.*

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| je vendrai, I shall or will<br>sell, or be selling. | nous vendrons, we, etc.  |
| tu vendras, thou, etc.                              | vous vendrez, you, etc.  |
| il vendra, he, etc.                                 | ils vendront, they, etc. |

*Conditional.*

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| je vendrais, I should or<br>would sell, or be selling. | nous vendrions, we, etc.   |
| tu vendrais, thou, etc.                                | vous vendriez, you, etc.   |
| il vendrait, he, etc.                                  | ils vendraient, they, etc. |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| vends, sell (thou). | vendons, let us sell. |
|                     | vendez, sell (ye).    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| je vende.  | nous vendions. |
| tu vendes. | vous vendiez.  |
| il vende.  | ils vendent.   |

*Past.*

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| je vendisse.  | nous vendissions. |
| tu vendisses. | vous vendissiez.  |
| il vendît.    | ils vendissent.   |

## VENDRE: COMPOUND FORMS.

## 2. The compound forms are made as heretofore :

|                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Comp. Infinitive.</i> | avoir vendu, (to) have sold.      |
| “ <i>Pres. Part.</i>     | ayant vendu, having “             |
| “ <i>Present.</i>        | j’ai vendu, I have “              |
|                          | etc., etc.                        |
| “ <i>Imperfect.</i>      | j’avais vendu, I had “            |
| “ <i>Preterit.</i>       | j’eus vendu, I had “              |
| “ <i>Future.</i>         | j’aurai vendu, I shall have sold. |
| etc.,                    | etc., etc.                        |

3. Other similar verbs in -re may be likewise conjugated ; as, perdre, to lose ; répondre, to reply ; entendre, to hear, etc., as :

*Present.* j’entends. *Imperfect.* j’entendais, etc.

4. Verbs in this conjugation not ending in -dre have *t* in the third person singular ; as, rompre, to break, il rompt, he breaks ; rire, to laugh, il rit, he laughs.

**Note.**—This *t* is properly part of the verb-form (Latin vendit, he sells).\*

5. Verbs ending in -ttre lose one *t* in the singular of the present and imperative, as :

battre, to beat, je bats, tu bats, il bat, nous battons, etc.  
*Imperative,* bats, battons, etc.

\* But the form -dre is used for the regular paradigm, because it includes the largest number of the verbs which are *otherwise* regular.



mettre, to put, je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, etc.  
*Imperative*, mets, mettons, etc.

**Note.**—In this conjugation, as also in the second, the third person singular, past subjunctive (*finit, vendit*), differs from the preterit (*finit, vendit*) only in the circumflex accent.

**Remark.**—Some French grammars make four regular conjugations, counting verbs in *-avoir*, as the third, those in *-re* as the fourth. The verbs in *-avoir* are here included among the irregular verbs. (L. XLVIII)

### Vocabulary.

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| attendre, to wait (for), expect;  | le chasseur, the hunter.                |
| entendre, to hear, understand;    | le menteur, the liar.                   |
| défendre, to defend;              | le bruit, the noise, report.            |
| descendre, to descend, come down; | la rue, the street.                     |
| mordre, to bite;                  | la montagne, the mountain.              |
| pendre, to hang;                  | la chose, the thing.                    |
| perdre, to lose, destroy;         | quelque chose, some (any) thing.        |
| répondre (à), to answer;          | longtemps, ( <i>adv.</i> ) long (time). |
| rompre, to break;                 | lorsque, when.                          |

### Reading Lesson 16.

1. Les soldats défendent la patrie. 2. Vous perdez le temps.  
 3. Les chasseurs descendaient de la montagne. 4. Je répondrai  
 demain à la lettre de mon père. 5. Le chien mordit l'enfant.  
 6. Charles a rompu sa canne. 7. Je répondrais aujourd'hui à votre  
 lettre, mais j'attends une lettre de Londres. 8. Un ami fidèle dé-  
 fendra ses amis. 9. Nous avons perdu nos cahiers. 10. J'entends  
 un grand bruit dans la rue. 11. Qui défendrait un menteur?  
 12. Nous perdrons notre temps. 13. Quel chien a mordu cet en-  
 fant? 14. Nous attendons des nouvelles de nos amis. 15. Les  
 pommes pendaient de l'arbre. 16. Elle descendait de sa chambre  
 lorsqu'elle entendit cette nouvelle. 17. Qui aurait répondu?  
 18. Le marchand vend bien des choses. 19. Réponds à ton maître.  
 20. Ce cheval a perdu un œil. 21. Attendez quelques jours.  
 22. Nous avons déjà attendu longtemps. 23. Attendons nos amis.  
 24. Que le domestique attende. 25. Qu'elles répondent à nos let-  
 tres. 26. Qui a entendu ce bruit? 27. Attendons, mes amis.

### Theme 16.

1. Who will defend the country? 2. What soldiers will defend  
 the city? 3. Who would wait-for the enemy? (*pl.*) 4. Let us de-  
 fend our house. 5. The nest hangs in the tree. 6. Let us answer

(car) mother's letter. 7. The dog will have bitten the cat. 8. We waited (*imp.*) (a) long time. 9. I heard (*pret.*) a great noise in your room. 10. Come down and answer. 11. My neighbor will sell his old house. 12. He would have sold the house, if he had had time. 13. The poor woman was-selling butter and milk. 14. The liar breaks his promise (*promesse, f.*). 15. I would sell my garden, if it were larger. 16. Wait; we will answer your letter. 17. I have lost something; who has found anything? 18. You lose all your books and (all your) pens. 19. I heard this news when I was in France. 20. Who has heard this false report? 21. Let us always defend our friends. 22. The dog would have bitten the boy. 23. Where *have* you *heard* this bad news? 24. I (have) heard this news at Paris. 25. Let us go down (descend) the street. 26. We shall expect your letter, (my) dear friend (*f.*).

## LESSON XXIII.

### REGULAR CONJUGATIONS—RECAPITULATION.

The learning of the regular verbs may be assisted by the following

#### COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS.

The table separates the roots and the endings. The points of difference are indicated by the type.\*

|      | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Pres. Part.</i> | <i>Past. Part.</i> |
|------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| I.   | donn -er           | -ant               | -é.                |
| II.  | fin -ir            | -issant            | -i.                |
| III. | vend -re           | -ant               | -u.                |

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

|      | <i>Present.</i> |     |     |      |         |        |          |
|------|-----------------|-----|-----|------|---------|--------|----------|
| I.   | donn            | -e  | -es | -e   | -ons    | -ez    | -ent.    |
| II.  | fin             | -is | -is | -it  | -issons | -issez | -issent. |
| III. | vend            | -s  | -s  | -(t) | -ons    | -ez    | -ent.    |

\* This comparison might be followed into much further detail, but it is thought best to give only such simple analysis as may be understood by all classes of learners. Here, as elsewhere throughout French grammar, students who know Latin may derive much advantage from additional explanations by the teacher, with reference to the Latin forms.

*Imperfect.*

|      |      |         |         |         |          |         |            |
|------|------|---------|---------|---------|----------|---------|------------|
| I.   | donn | -ais    | -ais    | -ait    | -ions    | -iez    | -aient.    |
| II.  | fin  | -issais | -issais | -issait | -issions | -issiez | -issaient. |
| III. | vend | -ais    | -ais    | -ait    | -ions    | -iez    | -aient.    |

*Preterit.*

|      |      |     |     |     |       |       |         |
|------|------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|---------|
| I.   | donn | -ai | -as | -a  | -âmes | -âtes | -èrent. |
| II.  | fin  | -is | -is | -it | -îmes | -îtes | -irent. |
| III. | vend | -is | -is | -it | -îmes | -îtes | -irent. |

*Future.*

|      |      |       |       |      |        |       |         |
|------|------|-------|-------|------|--------|-------|---------|
| I.   | donn | -erai | -eras | -era | -erons | -erez | -eront. |
| II.  | fin  | -irai | -iras | -ira | -irons | -irez | -iront. |
| III. | vend | -rai  | -ras  | -ra  | -rons  | -rez  | -ront.  |

*Conditional.*

|      |      |        |        |        |         |        |           |
|------|------|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------|-----------|
| I.   | donn | -erais | -erais | -erait | -erions | -eriez | -eraient. |
| II.  | fin  | -irais | -irais | -irait | -irions | -iriez | -iraient. |
| III. | vend | -rais  | -rais  | -rait  | -rions  | -riez  | -raient.  |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|      |      |     |         |         |
|------|------|-----|---------|---------|
| I.   | donn | -e  | -ons    | -ez.    |
| II.  | fin  | -is | -issons | -issez. |
| III. | vend | -s  | -ons    | -ez.    |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

|      |      |       |        |       |          |         |          |
|------|------|-------|--------|-------|----------|---------|----------|
| I.   | donn | -e    | -es    | -e    | -ions    | -iez    | -ent.    |
| II.  | fin  | -isse | -isses | -isse | -issions | -issiez | -issent. |
| III. | vend | -e    | -es    | -e    | -ions    | -iez    | -ent.    |

*Past.*

|      |      |       |        |     |          |         |          |
|------|------|-------|--------|-----|----------|---------|----------|
| I.   | donn | -asse | -asses | -ât | -assions | -assiez | -assent. |
| II.  | fin  | -isse | -isses | -ît | -issions | -issiez | -issent. |
| III. | vend | -isse | -isses | -ît | -issions | -issiez | -issent. |

## Remarks.

1. The *infinitive* has a different ending in each conjugation. Upon this difference is founded the distinction of the conjugations.
2. The *present participle* ends in all the conjugations in -ant. But II. has a distinctive syllable -iss- before the ending.
3. The *past participle* has a different ending in each conjugation.
4. The *present* differs in the singular. In the plural, the endings are the same, except that II. has the distinctive syllable -iss-.

5. The *imperfect* has the same endings in all except that II. has the distinctive syllable *-iss-*.

6. In the *preterit*, I. differs from II. and III. in the singular. In the plural the endings are the same; but in I. the preceding (*connecting*) vowels are different.

7. In the *future*, and in the *conditional*, the endings are the same, but with different connecting vowels; *-e* in I., *i* in II., and *none* in III. The *final* inflections in the *conditional* are the same as in the *imperfect*.\*

8. The *imperative* is in the singular like the first person present; in the plural, like the plural present (Remark 4).

9. In the *present subjunctive* the endings are the same; but II. has the distinctive syllable *-iss-*.

10. In the *past subjunctive*, the endings are the same, but the connecting vowel of I., (*a*), differs from that of II. and III., (*i*).

### Recapitulation.

The characteristic points of difference are therefore:

1. The different endings of the *infinitive* and of the *past participle*.
2. A difference of the *vowel* connecting the final ending with the root. This is in I. *a*, or *e*; in II. *i*; in III. *i*, or *none*.
3. The distinctive syllable *-iss-* in II., occurring in the *present participle*, in the plural of the *present* and of the *imperative*, in the *imperfect*, and in the *present subjunctive*.
4. The singular of the *present* and of the *preterit*. In both, I. lacks the endings *-s* and *-t* of the first and third persons. In the present, III. lacks connecting vowel, and sometimes *-t* in the third person. (See L. XXII. 4.)

The leading forms indicating these differences of conjugation are called the *principal parts*, from which the others are said to be *derived*. The following are the rules for the

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

1. The principal parts are the *Infinitive*, the *Present Participle*, the *Past Participle*, the *Present* and the *Preterit* (*Indicative*).

2. From the *infinitive* are formed the *future* and the *conditional* by adding the endings *-ai*, *-ais*, etc. (*-e* final being dropped in III.).

3. From the *present participle* are formed the *imperfect*, by changing *-ant* into *-ais*, etc.; and the *present subjunctive*, by changing *-ant* into *-e*, etc. Also the plural of the *present*, by changing *-ant* into *-ons*, *-ez*, *-ent*.

**Note.**—In the irregular verbs, as will be seen hereafter (L. XLVIII.), the third person plural of the present sometimes presents a different stem; but this need not be considered in the regular verbs.

---

\* The conditional is really an *imperfect of the future*.

4. With the *past participle* are formed all the *compound tenses*.

5. From the *present* is formed the *imperative*, the singular being the same as the first person present, and the plural the same as the same persons in the present.

6. From the *preterit* is formed the *past subjunctive*, by adding *-se*, etc., to the second person singular.

With these rules, the forms of the regular verbs may be reduced to the following synopsis, from which the other parts may be easily formed :

### Synopsis of the Regular Conjugations.

| PRINCIPAL PARTS.         | I.       | II.        | III.     |
|--------------------------|----------|------------|----------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i>       | donner,  | finir,     | vendre.  |
| <i>Pres. Participle.</i> | donnant, | finissant, | vendant. |
| <i>Past Participle.</i>  | donné,   | fini,      | vendu.   |
| <i>Present Indic.</i>    | donne,   | finis,     | vends.   |
| <i>Preterit.</i>         | donnai,  | finis,     | vendis.  |

**Remark.**—This synopsis will require some modification for the irregular verbs hereafter (L. XLVIII.).

### Exercise.

Let the class be exercised in writing synopses, and forming derived tenses, of regular verbs in the several conjugations.

## LESSON XXIV.

### REGULAR VERBS : INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

1. The general principles stated in Lessons X., XIII., apply also to the interrogative and negative forms of the regular verbs. The verb-forms themselves remain essentially the same as in the affirmative form, but only in different combinations.

In the *interrogative* form, however, the following points are now to be noted :

2. In the first person singular present of the first conjugation, the form *donne-je* becomes *donné-je*,\* *do I give*, etc.

\* Similarly the first person singular present of irregular verbs, ending in *e mule*, as, *ouvré-je* (from *ouvrir*), *do I open*, etc.; and in the conditional forms of the past subjunctive; as, *eussé-je*, *had I*; *dussé-je*, *should I*; *puissé-je*, *may I*, etc. (See Irregular Verbs.)



3. Instead, however, of *donné-je* (and similar forms which might be confounded in sound, *donnais-je*, *donnai-je*), the form *est-ce que* (L. XIV. 4) is more usually employed ; as :

*est-ce que je donne ?* do I give ? etc.

*est-ce que je donnai ?* did I give ? etc.

4. Also in the third conjugation, instead of the first person present, *vends-je*, etc. (especially in the monosyllabic forms), the form with *est-ce que* is more usually employed, for euphony ; as, *est-ce que je perds ?* do I lose ? etc.

5. The form with *est-ce que* may be used also with other parts of the verb, and is especially preferred in questions indicating *surprise*, or expecting a *negative* answer.

6. In the *negative* forms no new peculiarity is to be noted. They can always be formed (as L. XIII.) from the affirmative forms. The usual allowance must of course be made for *liaison* and *elision*.

7. Note, also, that in the interrogative and negative conjugations as well as in the affirmative (L. XX. 1), there is only *one* form for each tense, corresponding to the different forms in English ; as, *bâtis-je*, build I ? do I build ? am I building ? *je n'aime pas*, I love not, do not love, etc.

The following examples will suffice to illustrate the interrogative and negative forms.

#### INTERROGATIVE.

##### *Present.*

|                              |                           |                      |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>donné-je ;</i>            | <i>finis-je ;</i>         | <i>vends-je.</i>     |
| <i>donnes-tu ;</i>           | <i>finis-tu ;</i>         | <i>vends-tu.</i>     |
| <i>donne-t-il ;</i>          | <i>finit-il ;</i>         | <i>vend-il.</i>      |
| <i>donnons-nous ;</i>        | <i>finissons-nous ;</i>   | <i>vendons-nous,</i> |
| etc., or                     | etc., or                  | etc., or             |
| <i>est-ce que je donne ;</i> | <i>est-ce que finis ;</i> | <i>est-ce que je</i> |
| etc.                         | etc.                      | <i>vends, etc.</i>   |

##### *Imperfect.*

|                           |                             |                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>donnais-je, or</i>     | <i>finissais-je, or</i>     | <i>vendais-je, or</i>     |
| <i>est-ce que je don-</i> | <i>est-ce que je finis-</i> | <i>est-ce que je ven-</i> |
| <i>nais, etc.</i>         | <i>sais, etc.</i>           | <i>dais, etc.</i>         |

*Comp. Present.*

|                             |                            |                             |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ai-je donné ;               | ai-je fini ;               | ai-je vendu.                |
| as-tu donné ; or            | as-tu fini ; or            | as-tu vendu ; or            |
| est-ce que j'ai donné, etc. | est-ce que j'ai fini, etc. | est-ce que j'ai vendu, etc. |

## NEGATIVE.

*Infinitive.*

|                      |                  |                   |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| ne pas donner ;      | ne pas finir ;   | ne pas vendre.    |
| or (ne donner pas) ; | (ne finir pas) ; | (ne vendre pas).* |

*Present.*

|                   |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| je ne donne pas ; | je ne finis pas ; | je ne vends pas.  |
| je n'aime pas ;   | je n'obéis pas ;  | je n'entends pas. |
| etc.              | etc.              | etc.              |

*Comp. Present.*

|                     |                    |                      |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| je n'ai pas donné ; | je n'ai pas fini ; | je n'ai pas vendu.   |
| je n'ai pas aimé ;  | je n'ai pas obéi ; | je n'ai pas entendu. |

## NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE.

*Present.*

|                                  |                              |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ne donné-je pas ;                | ne finis-je pas ;            | ne vends-je pas ;            |
| or, est-ce que je ne donne pas ; | est-ce que je ne finis pas ; | est-ce que je ne vends pas.  |
| n'aimé-je pas ;                  | n'obéis-je pas ;             | n'entends-je pas ;           |
| or, est-ce que je n'aime pas ;   | est-ce que je n'obéis pas ;  | est-ce que je n'entends pas. |

*Comp. Present.*

|                            |         |        |          |
|----------------------------|---------|--------|----------|
| n'ai-je pas                | donné ; | fini ; | vendu.   |
| or, est-ce que je n'ai pas | donné ; | fini ; | vendu.   |
| n'ai-je pas                | aimé ;  | obéi ; | entendu. |
| or, est-ce que je n'ai pas | aimé ;  | obéi ; | entendu. |
| etc.                       | etc.    | etc.   | etc.     |

**Remark.**—These combinations, which need not be further exhibited, should be practiced, by examples and exercises, until their formation is

familiar. The rule given in Lesson X. 5, must be observed ; as, *vo*tre père donne-t-il ? does your father give ? etc.

### Reading Lesson 17.

Qui ? who ? whom ? que ? what ? quand ? when ? pourquoi ? why ?  
parce que, because.

(1) 1. Que cherchez-vous ? 2. Quelle robe porterez-vous ? 3. Le domestique qu'a-t-il apporté ? 4. Avez-vous trouvé ma canne ? 5. Est-ce que vous n'avez pas trouvé ma canne ? 6. Le maître louera-t-il les écoliers ? 7. Il ne louera pas les écoliers paresseux. 8. Ne louera-t-il pas les écoliers appliqués ? 9. Les enfants joueront-ils ? 10. Ils ne joueront pas ; ils pleurent. 11. Pourquoi pleurent-ils ? 12. Ils pleurent parce qu'ils n'ont pas trouvé leurs joujoux. 13. N'avez-vous pas parlé au maître. 14. Je n'ai pas parlé au maître. 15. Nous n'avons pas trouvé nos livres. 16. Ne donneriez-vous pas un morceau de pain au pauvre garçon ? 17. Nous n'avons pas trouvé vos livres. 18. Ne cherchez-vous pas vos livres ? 19. A qui avez-vous donné vos lettres ? 20. Auriez-vous pleuré, si vous n'aviez pas perdu votre cahier ? 21. Pourquoi votre sœur pleurera-t-elle ? 22. Elle ne pleurera pas. 23. Un étranger admirerait-il cette ville ? 24. Il n'admirerait pas cette ville ancienne. 25. N'aimons pas le vice.

(2) 26. Le marchand ne bâtira-t-il pas une maison ? 27. Que choisirez-vous ? 28. Quelle robe choisirez-vous ? 29. Pourquoi le domestique n'a-t-il pas rempli les verres ? 30. Ne remplira-t-il pas les verres ? 31. Pourquoi haïssez-vous cet homme ? 32. Je ne hais pas cet homme. 33. Auriez-vous puni ce pauvre garçon ? 34. Qui n'aurait pas puni ce menteur ? 35. Ces soldats ne trahiront pas la patrie. 36. Ces enfants n'obéissent pas à leurs maîtres. 37. Ne salis pas tes habits. 38. Ne choisissons pas un ami infidèle. 39. Est-ce que le pain ne nourrit pas les hommes ? 40. N'avez-vous pas fini votre thème ? 41. Le maître ne finira-t-il pas le thème ? 42. Il n'aurait pas fini le thème. 43. Punira-t-il les écoliers ? 44. Il ne punirait pas les écoliers, s'ils avaient fini leurs thèmes. 45. Punissons les paresseux.

(3) 46. Attendez-vous la lettre ? 47. Nous n'attendrons pas la lettre. 48. N'avez-vous pas entendu ce grand bruit ? 49. Je n'ai pas entendu le bruit. 50. Quel bruit entendîtes-vous ? 51. Ne défendrons-nous pas notre patrie ? 52. Est-ce que le chien a mordu l'enfant ? 53. Ne répondrez-vous pas à nos lettres ? 54. Ne défendriez-vous pas la (*your*) patrie contre ses (*its*) ennemis ? 55. Enten-

dez-vous quelque chose ? 56. Le marchand vend-il les pommes ? 57. Le général ne défendit pas la ville. 58. Qui ne défendrait pas sa patrie ? 59. Le chien mordrait-il l'enfant ? 60. Le marchand n'a-t-il pas perdu beaucoup d'argent ? 61. Qu'entendez-vous (qu'est-ce que vous entendez) ? 62. Ce cheval ne perdra-t-il pas un œil ? 63. Quand descendrez-vous ? 64. Nous ne descendrons pas. 65. Pourquoi ne descendrez-vous pas ? 66. Nous répondrons à la lettre du maître. 67. Que répondrez-vous au maître ? 68. Descendez et donnez-moi (*me*) la lettre.

### Theme 17.\*

1. What have you lost ? 2. What have we found ? 3. We were not looking for—. 4. Have you found—? 5. When will you finish—? 6. When will you have finished—? 7. Will the soldier betray—? 8. Will the soldiers not defend—? 9. Who has not admired—? 10. Who would not admire—? 11. Do you not hear—? 12. Will you not answer—? 13. Will not the teacher finish—? 14. Would not the merchant have sold—? 15. Who would not answer—would not have answered—? 16. When will they answer—have answered—? 17. Would the teacher praise—? 18. He would not praise—would not have praised—. 19. Are the children playing? 20. They are not playing; they have not found their toys. 21. Would they not have played, if they had found their toys? 22. We do not hate—shall not hate—. 23. Would you not hate—not have hated—? 24. Will they not answer—would they not answer—? 25. Would the general not have defended—? 26. Choose (*sing.*)—do not choose—. 27. Let them speak—let us not speak—. 28. What did the servant bring? 29. He did not bring—. 30. Why did the servant not bring—? 31. When shall we have finished—? 32. We shall not have finished—. 33. Let us finish; let us not wait. 34. We have finished.

---

\* This exercise may be repeated with the insertion of appropriate objects, etc., and additional examples may be given. As the exercises in the book are intended mainly for the illustration and practice of the grammatical forms in each lesson, they should be supplemented as early and as largely as possible by additional reading.



## LESSON XXV.

### REGULAR VERBS: CONTINUED.

#### ORTHOGRAPHICAL CHANGES IN FIRST CONJUGATION.

The following changes occur in some verbs of the first conjugation, in accordance with the usual rules of orthography :

**1.** Verbs in *-eler*, *-eter* double the *l* or *t* before silent *e*, as :  
*jeter*, to throw; *je jette*, *tu jettes*, *il jette*, *nous jetons*, *vous jetez*, *ils jettent*.

*appeler*, to call; *j'appelle*, etc.; *je jetterai*, *j'appellerai*, etc.

**Note.**—*Acheter*, to buy; *celer*,\* to conceal; *geler*, to freeze; *peler*, to peel, with their compounds, are excepted.

**2.** These, with other verbs having unaccented *e* in the last syllable of the root, change *e* to *è* before silent *e* in the next syllable, as :

*acheter*, to buy; *j'achète*; *j'achèterai*, etc.; but *nous achetons*, etc.

*geler*, to freeze; *il gèle*; *il gèlera*, etc.; but *il gela*, etc.

*mener*, to lead; *ils mènent*; *ils mèneront*, etc.; but *ils menaient*, etc.

*lever*, to lift; *je lèverai*; *je lèverais*, etc.; but *je levais*, etc.

**3.** Under the same circumstances *é* is changed to *è* (but not usually in the future or conditional), as :

*espérer*, to hope; *j'espère*, etc.; but *j'espérerai*.

*régner*, to reign; *je règne*; but *je régnerai*.

Except verbs in *-éger*; as *protéger*, to protect; *je protège*, etc.

**4.** In order to preserve the pronunciation, verbs ending in *-cer* change *c* to *ç* before *a* or *o*; those in *-ger* add *e* after *g*; as :

*placer*, to place; *plaçant*, *nous plaçons*, *je plaçais*, etc.

*manger*, to eat; *mangeant*, *nous mangeons*, *je mangeais*, etc.

---

\* *Celer* is also written *céler*. In other cases here included, usage is not wholly uniform. The rules here given include the most important verbs.



5. Verbs ending in -ayer, -oyer, -uyer, change *y* to *i* before silent *e*, as :

payer, to pay ; je paie ; je paierai, etc. ; but, nous payons, etc.

employer, to employ ; j'emploie ; j'emploierai, etc. ; but, vous employez, etc.

essuyer, to wipe ; j'essuie ; j'essuierai, etc. ; but, j'essuyais, etc.

**Note.**—On the other hand, *i* in the infinitive will be changed to *y* before vowel endings, except *e* mute ; as, fuir, to flee, fuyons, let us flee ; croire, to believe, vous croyez, you believe, etc. (See Irregular Verbs, hereafter.)

6. Verbs in -ier will sometimes exhibit the combination -ii- ; those in -éer will have -éé, or -éée ; as prier, to pray ; *impf.*, nous priions, we prayed ; créer, to create ; *p. part.*, créé, *f.* créée, created.

**Remark.**—As already remarked, the foregoing changes correspond to the usual rules of orthography, as elsewhere illustrated. See L. XVII. 4, 5 ; also L. II. 3, *note*, and L. III. 2, 4, etc. Hence they are not to be counted among irregularities. Further illustrations will be seen in the irregular verbs.

### Vocabulary.

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| appeler, to call ;         | commencer, to commence.  |
| jeter, to throw ;          | placer, to place.        |
| acheter, to buy ;          | manger, to eat.          |
| lever, to lift, raise ;    | ranger, to arrange, fix. |
| élever, to rear, educate ; | essayer, to try.         |
| mener, to lead ;           | payer, to pay.           |
| espérer, to hope ;         | employer, to employ.     |
| préférer, to prefer ;      | nettoyer, to clean.      |
| régner, to reign ;         | essuyer, to wipe.        |
| la larme, the tear ;       | créer, to create.        |
| la pierre, the stone ;     | la main, the hand.       |
| la dette, the debt.        |                          |

### Reading Lesson 18.

1. L'enfant jette une pierre. 2. Pourquoi jeta-t-il cette pierre ?  
 3. Lève la (*your*) main. 4. Levez les mains. 5. La mère élève ses enfants. 6. Où menez-vous ces enfants ? 7. Je mène ces enfants à l'école. 8. Le roi régna dix ans. 9. Qui règne en Angleterre ?  
 10. Je préfère les poires aux pommes. 11. Qui appelez-vous ?

12. J'appelle Jean. 13. Que mangiez-vous ? 14. Je mangeais une pomme. 15. Elle rangea son chapeau. 16. Qu'achetez-vous ? 17. J'achète des gants. 18. La terre a été créée par Dieu. 19. Les mauvais enfants jettent des pierres par la fenêtre. 20. Nous employons bien notre temps. 21. Emploie bien ton temps. 22. Je nettoie mes habits. 23. Que le domestique nettoie vos habits ? 24. Je plaçai les livres sur la table. 25. Nous commençâmes notre thème à dix heures. 26. Que jetez-vous à ce chien ? 27. J'appelle ce chien par son nom. 28. Combien paierez-vous ? 29. Je paierai tout. 30. La mère essuie les larmes de l'enfant. 31. Le marchand emploie bien les domestiques. 32. Nous employions bien notre temps. 33. Nous espérons toujours. 34. La servante mènera les filles à l'école. 35. Nous essaierons d'écrire (*to write*) notre thème.

### Theme 18.

1. What will you buy ? 2. I will buy some hats. 3. What (kind of) hat do you prefer ? 4. I prefer a white hat. 5. Why do you (*tu*) throw the stone at the man ? 6. I am not throwing a stone ; I threw an apple. 7. We will pay our debts. 8. This work employs my time. 9. The boys will try the exercise. 10. What do you hope ? 11. What does your friend hope ? 12. Where are you (*tu*) leading this horse ? 13. I am leading the horse to the house. 14. Pay (*sing.*) your debts. 15. The virtuous mother rears well her children. 16. The king and (the) queen reigned four years. 17. By what name do you call this boy ? 18. I call the boy John. 19. Let us commence our lesson. 20. We commenced the lesson at two o'clock. 21. Let us not eat too much. 22. The servant is cleaning my clothes. 23. Let him clean your boots also. 24. God (has) created the earth. 25. The boy raises his (*the*) hand—the boys raise their (*the*) hands. 26. The lady is buying a beautiful blue dress. 27. Let us arrange our papers. 28. Place your books on the table. 29. Let us hope always. 30. I ate some apples yesterday : now we are eating pears. 31. Will your mother buy a black hat ? 32. No, she will buy some white dresses.

## LESSON XXVI.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns are divided, according to their use, into *disjunctive* and *conjunctive* :

1. The *disjunctive* pronouns are not construed immediately with a verb.

2. The *conjunctive* pronouns are construed immediately with a verb.

2. The forms are here exhibited together, for comparison :

## SINGULAR.

|  | 1st Pers. | 2d Pers. | 3d Pers. Mas. | 3d Pers. Fem. |
|--|-----------|----------|---------------|---------------|
| Disjunctive ( <i>Subj. &amp; Obj.</i> ), | moi,      | toi,     | lui,          | elle.         |
| Conjunctive, <i>Subject</i> ,            | je,       | tu,      | il,           | elle.         |
| “ <i>Obj. direct</i> ,                   | me,       | te,      | le,           | la.           |
| “ <i>indirect</i> ,                      | “         | “        | lui           |               |

## PLURAL.

|  |       |       |      |        |
|--|-------|-------|------|--------|
| Disjunctive ( <i>Subj. &amp; Obj.</i> ), | nous, | vous, | eux, | elles. |
| Conjunctive, <i>Subject</i> ,            | nous, | vous, | ils, | elles. |
| “ <i>Obj. direct</i> ,                   | “     | “     | les  |        |
| “ <i>indirect</i> ,                      | “     | “     | leur |        |

REFLEXIVE, 3d Person : Disjunctive, soi, } for all genders and num-  
 “ “ Conjunctive, se, } bers.

3. These forms must be carefully distinguished. Note the following :

(1.) The disjunctive forms are invariable—subject and object.

(2.) *Nous* and *vous* are both disjunctive and conjunctive, subject and object.

(3.) *Elle* and *elles* are disjunctive, subject and object, and conjunctive subject.

(4.) *Lui*, disjunctive, is masculine only ; conjunctive, indirect object, both masculine and feminine.

(5.) *Les*, *leur*, are the same for both masculine and feminine plural.

(6.) The *indirect object* has distinct forms only in the third person ; elsewhere it is the same as the direct object.

(7.) The *reflexive* has distinct forms also, only in the third person ; elsewhere the regular objectives, *moi*, *me*, etc., are used in reflexive sense.

**Note.**—The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les* must not be confounded with the same forms of the definite article : nor *leur* with the same form of the possessive (*their*, *theirs*).

**Remark.**—As already stated (L. X.), the pronouns of the second per-

son singular (*toi, tu, te*) are not used in the ordinary form of address. In addressing the Deity, in poetry and in elevated rhetorical style, they correspond to the English singular forms (*thou, thee*). But they are used much more largely than these: as (generally), in speaking to kindred or intimate friends; to servants or other inferiors; to animals or inanimate things; and in the language of contempt or insult. In such cases they will be translated into English, idiomatically, by the plural form *you* and *vice versa*. The same distinctions apply also to the corresponding possessives, adjectives or pronouns. Especial care should be taken to learn and to observe correctly the idiomatic uses of the pronouns.

### The Disjunctive Forms.

4. The disjunctive forms are used whenever the pronoun is not immediately, or regularly, construed with a verb, as subject or object. Hence:

1. With prepositions; as, *pour moi, avec lui, chez elle*, etc.

2. In the predicate; as, *c'est moi, it is I; c'est lui, it is he*.

3. When the verb is suppressed, or the pronoun is used absolutely; as, *qui est là? Moi. Who is there? I (am). Elle est plus jeune que lui, she is younger than he (is). Toi! ingrate! Thou ungrateful, etc.*

4. When emphatically separated from the verb, as subject or object; as, *lui seul bâtit la maison, he alone built the house. Lui, que j'ai tant aimé, est mort, he, whom I have so loved, is dead. Elle n'aime que lui, she loves only him.*

5. When different pronouns are connected by a conjunction, or are emphatically contrasted. In such cases, the proper conjunctive form is usually added with the verb, as: *Lui et moi, nous aimons la ville, he and I (we) love the town. Moi, j'aime la ville, lui, il aime la campagne, I love the town, he loves the country. Elle nous aime, lui et moi, she loves (us) him and me. (See also L. XXVIII. 1.)*

Generally, the disjunctive form marks the use of the pronoun out of its usual relation or position with respect to *the verb*. (See L. XXVII.)

5. INTENSIVE FORMS.—The word *même, pl. mêmes*, is joined, with the hyphen, to the disjunctive pronouns in the emphatic, or *intensive*, sense of *-self, -selves*, as:

|                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>moi-même, myself;</i>   | <i>plur. nous-mêmes, ourselves.</i>  |
| <i>lui-même, himself;</i>  | <i>" eux-mêmes, themselves, (m.)</i> |
| <i>elle-même, herself;</i> | <i>" elles-mêmes, " (f.)</i>         |
| <i>etc.</i>                | <i>etc.</i>                          |



The form *vous-même* corresponds to the English *yourself*.  
(L. XII. 6.)

**Note.**—This use of *-self*, *-selves* must not be confounded with the simple reflexive, without emphasis; as, he killed himself, *il se tua*, etc. (L. XXXV.) The two forms may however concur; as *il se tua lui-même*, he *himself* killed himself.

6. *Soi, soi-même*, etc., are regularly used of things only; as, *la vie est bonne en soi*, life is good in itself: of persons, only in a general or indefinite sense; as, *on ne doit pas parler de soi*, or, *de soi-même*, one should not speak of one's self. *Le contentment de soi(-même)*, satisfaction with one's self. Otherwise, *lui, lui-même, elle, elle-même*, etc., are preferred; as, *il parlait de lui-même*, he was speaking of himself.

These forms are also used of subjects not persons (and especially for the feminine), in cases where there can be no ambiguity; as, *l'âme se retire en elle-même*, the soul withdraws into itself; *la guerre entraîne de grands maux après elle*, war draws great evils after it.

**Remark.**—Special vocabularies will not be given hereafter. For new words the student will refer to the vocabulary at the end of the book.

### Reading Lesson 19.

1. De qui parlez-vous? 2. Je parle de toi. 3. Parlez-vous de Jean ou d'Élise? 4. Je parlai de lui et d'elle. 5. Pensez-vous à moi? 6. Oui, je pense toujours à toi. 7. Est-ce lui? 8. Oui, c'est lui-même. 9. Est-il chez lui? 10. Non, il est chez son frère. 11. Je dînerai demain chez elle. 12. Ce livre est-il pour vous? 13. Non, il n'est pas pour moi; il est pour ma sœur. 14. A qui (*whose*) est-ce livre? 15. Ce livre est à moi. 16. Moi, je pense toujours à lui; mais lui, il ne pense pas à moi. 17. Lui et moi nous voyagerons en France. 18. Qui a apporté ces choses-ci? Moi-même. 19. Nous avons bâti la maison pour nous-mêmes. 20. Pour qui sont toutes ces pommes? Pour nous-mêmes. 21. Ce sont trop de pommes pour vous seul. 22. Je suis plus grand (*taller*) que lui, mais il est plus âgé que moi. 23. Quel âge a-t-il? 24. Il a dix ans, et moi, j'ai neuf ans et demi. 25. Qui (*whoever*) pense trop à soi oublie les autres. 26. Est-ce toi, mon fils? Oui, c'est moi, mon père. 27. Elle parle trop d'elle-même. 28. Jouons avec eux. 29. Ils ne joueront pas avec nous. 30. Qui jouera avec elle? Moi, nous tous. 31. Tout le monde parle contre lui. 32. Son (*her*) frère demeure chez elle. 33. Chez qui demeure le maître? Chez moi. 34. Avez-vous bâti vous-même cette maison? 35. Vous.



et moi nous avons fini notre thème. 36. Le thème n'est pas difficile en soi, mais nous perdions trop de temps.

### Theme 19.

1. My brother and I. 2. He and his sister. 3. She and her brother. 4. Let us not think of ourselves, let us think of her. 5. Why shall we not speak of him? 6. He alone is our enemy. 7. Of whom will you speak? 8. I will speak of myself and (of) my friends. 9. We will dine to-morrow with (*chez*) you. 10. Does William live with you, or with your sister? 11. He lives with her. 12. Did you speak with him? 13. She will travel without him; he will return home (L. VIII. 7). 14. They alone have defended the country against the enemy (*pl.*). 15. My mother and I have been sick. 16. *He* prefers France, *I* prefer England. 17. Do not speak too much of yourself. 18. She arrived before me. 19. You and she will travel in America. 20. Who is it? 21. It is he—it is not I. 22. We are wiser than they. 23. She is younger than he. 24. This man works for himself. 25. A good action has its reward in itself (*soi*). 26. To whom have you written, to him or to her? 27. I! I was not there! 28. Are you not yourself our friend? 29. Do not speak of yourself; speak of him. 30. *He* and *she* are our best friends (*masc.*). 31. Her brother is unjust towards (*envers*) her. 32. She is always good towards him and me.

---

## LESSON XXVII.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS—CONJUNCTIVE.

#### THE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

The use of the conjunctive pronouns as subject of the verb—affirmative or interrogative, has already been shown (L. X.). Their use as objects is as follows:

#### SINGLE PRONOUN OBJECT.

1. The pronoun object *immediately precedes* the verb (except as in 2), as:

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| je te donne, I give (to) thee;            | je le cherche, I seek him—or it. |
| je lui donne, I give (to) him, or<br>her; | je les cherche, I seek them.     |



*proclitic*, i. e., immediately depending *before* the verb; or *enclitic*, immediately depending *after* it. In no case can it be separated from the verb. The conjunctive *subject* following the verb (see L. X.) is also *enclitic*; before the verb it can be separated only by the negative *ne* (L. XIII.), and the conjunctive object (or objects, L. XXVIII.).

2. It also appears that the conjunctive subject or object, following the verb, is always connected with it by the hyphen.

### THE CONJUNCTIVES EN AND Y.

3. In addition to the conjunctive personal pronouns given above (L. XXVI.) *en* and *y* are also construed as *indirect conjunctives*, under the foregoing rules. Like the other conjunctives, they are used only *in immediate connection with a verb*.

4. *En* represents the third person, *it* or *them*, in the relations expressed by the preposition *de*: *of, from, etc.*, *it* or *them*; also *some, any* (partitive), referring to an antecedent noun (L. IX.); and the adverbial relations *thence, away, etc.*, as:

j'en parle, I speak of it, of them.    en avez-vous, have you any?

parlez-en, speak of it, of them.    j'en ai, I have some.

n'en parlez pas, do not speak of it, of them.    je n'en ai pas, I have none (not any).

Nous en avons beaucoup, peu, trop, etc., we have much, little, etc. (of it or of them).

Allez-vous-en (*reflexive*), go away, etc.

**Note.**—*En* can be used only when the verb is actually *expressed*. It must not be confounded with the preposition *en*, in its use before the present participle of verbs (L. XL.).

5. An adjective belonging to *en* will be construed with *de* after the verb, and will agree with the noun referred to; as, avez-vous du vin? J'en ai de très bon, I have some (of) very good. Avez-vous des poires? J'en ai de très bonnes, I have some (of) very good (*ones*).

6. *Y* represents the third person, *it* or *them*, in the relations expressed by the preposition *à*, *to, at, in—it, or them*; and the adverbial relations *there, thither*; as, avez-vous répondu à ma lettre? Oui, j'y ai répondu, I have answered (to) it. Étiez-vous à Paris? J'y étais, I was there; j'y vais, I am going there (thither).

**Note.**—In the adverbial sense of *there*, *thither*, *là* must be used, instead of *y*, unless an antecedent is implied; as, *qui va là* ? who goes there ? etc.; or unless the verb is *expressed*; as, *où est-il* ? *Là*, or *le voilà*, there (he is).

7. Before *en* or *y*, the second singular imperative (2), if ending in a vowel, takes *s* for euphony; as, *donnes-en*, give some; *portes-y*, carry there, etc. (L. XX.).

8. *En* and *y* are commonly used to represent objects and relations *not personal*. But *en* (and more rarely *y*) may sometimes be used for persons, in cases where no ambiguity can be possible. Such cases need not be included here. For *en* in place of the possessive, see L. XXIX. 6.

**Remark.**—*En* and *y* are properly demonstrative adverbs (Lat. *inde*, *ibi*, thence, there), but are construed like the personal conjunctive pronouns. They have many idiomatic uses, pronominal and adverbial; and in many cases can hardly be translated into English.

### Reading Lesson 20.

1. Où est mon livre ? je le cherche. 2. Quel livre cherchez-vous ? 3. Je cherche ma grammaire. 4. Ne la cherchez-pas; la voici. 5. Où est Charles ? je lui ai prêté (*lent*) mon chapeau. 6. Pourquoi lui avez-vous prêté votre chapeau ? 7. Il vous l'apportera demain. 8. Donnez-lui des plumes; ne lui donnez pas de papier. 9. Il me parlait; je lui ai parlé aussi (*also*). 10. Qui vous a donné cet encier ? 11. Je l'ai reçu du maître. 12. À qui donnerez-vous ces plumes ? 13. Je les donnerai à Charles. 14. Apportez-moi de l'eau fraîche, s'il vous plaît (*if you please*). 15. Je n'en ai pas de fraîche. 16. Ne leur parlons pas. 17. Le maître nous donnera des leçons. 18. A quelle heure nous donnera-t-il la première leçon ? 19. Il la commencera à onze heures. 20. Qui a mangé mon pain ? 21. Henri l'a mangé. 22. Où est Louise ? je l'attends. 23. La voilà. 24. Prêtez-moi votre canne, s'il vous plaît. 25. Non, je la garderai pour moi-même à présent; je vous la prêterai demain. 26. Pardonnez-moi, monsieur. 27. Je ne vous pardonnerai pas; vous m'avez trop offensé (*offended*). 28. N'en parlez pas, je vous prie (*beg*). 29. Nous écouterait-il ? 30. Il ne nous écouterait pas; il nous hait. 31. Pardonnons-leur; nous leur pardonnerons cette fois. 32. Voici de bon pain; mangez-en. 33. J'en mangerai, s'il vous plaît. 34. Avez-vous aussi de bonne viande ? 35. Oui, j'en ai d'excellente. 36. Vendrez-vous vos maisons ? 37. Non, je ne les vendrai pas; je les garderai. 38. Voilà la chambre de mon père; portes-y de l'eau fraîche. 39. Vos enfants me sont très chers;



ils m'ont toujours été chers. 40. Avez-vous répondu à ma lettre ? 41. Je n'y ai pas répondu. 42. Quand répondrez-vous au maître ? 43. Je ne lui répondrai pas. 44. Pourquoi ne lui répondrez-vous pas ? 45. Mon père lui répondra pour moi.

### Theme 20.

1. (Our) father has given you a gold watch, what will he give me ? 2. He will give you a gold ring, and a beautiful chain. 3. The teacher will be to-morrow at-our-house ; what will you say to him ? 4. I will show him your letter, and I will give him our exercises. 5. Will you eat these pears ? 6. Yes, I will eat them, if you please. 7. Eat them ; they are for (*pour*) you. 8. Have you seen my little dog ? 9. No, I have not seen him ; are you looking-for him ? 10. I am looking-for him, but I do not find him. 11. Are you waiting-for me ? 12. Yes, I am waiting-for you ; when will you come down ? 13. There are some beautiful silk stockings ; will the merchant sell them ? 14. At what price does he sell them ? 15. Pardon us, sir ; we did not hear you. 16. This cake is for you ; eat some. 17. I will not eat any (*en*) to-day ; I will eat some to-morrow. 18. Let us not eat any to-day ; let us eat some to-morrow. 19. Have you given him the book ? 20. Has he given you the paper ? 21. Give him some ink. 22. These exercises will be useful to you. 23. Has Henry answered (to) your letter ? 24. No, he has not answered it—he will answer (to) it to-morrow. 25. What will he answer you ? 26. Have you brought your grammar to-day ? 27. No, I will bring it (*la*) to-morrow. 28. When will the servant bring the shoes ? 29. He will bring them soon (*bientôt*). 30. Speak to him—do not speak to him. 31. I will speak to him ; what shall I say to him ? 32. Here I am, sir, and there is my exercise. 33. If you have no meat, I will give you some very good. 34. If you want (*voulez*) some apples, here are some very good (ones).

---

## LESSON XXVIII.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS—DOUBLE OBJECTS.

If there are two pronoun objects with the same verb, they may be :

1. Both disjunctive,



2. One disjunctive and one conjunctive, or
3. Both conjunctive ; as follows :

1. If the two objects stand *in the same relation* \* to the verb, both will be *disjunctive*, and will follow the verb : the proper *conjunctive* object may also stand before the verb ; as :

je (les) vois lui et elle, I see (them) him and her.

je (vous) parle à vous et à lui, I speak to you and to him.

2. If the two objects stand in *different relations* † to the verb, and the *direct* object is any other than *le, la, les*, the *indirect* object will be *disjunctive* ; as :

je vous présente à lui, I present you to him.

il se présenta à moi, he presented himself to me.

présenter-moi à elle, present me to her, etc.

**Note.**—*En* and *y* are not here included ; see below, 3, 3.

In all other cases, both objects will be *conjunctive*, as follows :

3. When there are two conjunctive objects, *both will precede the verb*, or *both will follow it*, according to the rules L. XXVII., and in the following order :

1. In the *third* person, the indirect objects *lui, leur*, will always *follow* the direct, *le, la, les*, whether before or after the verb ; as :

je le lui donne, I give it to him (her).

il le leur donnera, he will give it to them ; both preceding the verb.

donnez-le-lui, give it to him (her).

donnez-les-leur, give them to them ; both following the verb.

2. With this exception, the *direct* object will always stand *nearest* the verb, whether before or after it ; as :

je vous le donne, I give it to you.

me le donnera-t-il, will he give it to me ?

il se le permet, he allows it to himself : both preceding the verb.

donnez-les-moi, give them to me.

donnez-le-nous, give it to us : both following the verb.

Both pronouns are connected by the hyphen, when conjunctive after the verb.

\* That is, both direct or both indirect.

† That is, one direct, the other indirect.

**Note.**—The construction of the indirect object is the same whether expressed in English with or without preposition; as, give *me* the book, or give the book *to me*. See L. VI. 5.

3. But *en* and *y* will always follow other pronouns, whether before or after the verb; and *en* will follow *y*; as:

*je vous en donne*, I give you *donnez-lui-en*, give him some.  
some;

*je les y porte*, I carry them there. *portez-les-y*, carry them there.

*je vous y en porterai*, I will carry you some there.

Instead of *moi-en*, *toi-en*, *m'en*, *t'en* are used for euphony; and sometimes *y-moi*, *y-toi*, for *moi-y*, *toi-y* (but in such cases *là* is generally preferred); as:

*donnez-m'en*, give me some. *envoyez-y-moi*, send me there, or,  
*repens-t'en*, repent of it. *envoyez-moi là*, more usually.

### REPETITION OF PRONOUNS.

4. The conjunctive *subjects* may be repeated or not, with successive verbs. The repetition is more usual in the first and second persons than in the third.

Conjunctive *objects* are always repeated, as:

*je vous aime et (je) vous loue*, I love and (I) praise you.  
*il m'aime et (il) me loue*, he loves and (he) praises me.  
*aimez-moi et louez-moi*, love (me) and praise me.

**Note.**—In the repetition of pronoun objects with the imperative affirmative, the second will, contrary to the rule, be sometimes written before the verb; as, *aimez-moi et me louez*, etc.

5. This rule does not, however, apply to the compound tenses of the verb, unless the auxiliary itself is repeated (L. XI. 3); as, *je l'ai vu et entendu*, or,

*je l'ai vu et je l'ai entendu*, I have seen and (I have) heard him.

But both pronoun and auxiliary *must* be repeated, if the pronoun stands in different relations to the verb; as, *je l'ai entendu et je lui ai obéi*, I have heard and obeyed him (*lui indirect*).

### THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

6. In compound tenses formed with the auxiliary *avoir*, the past participle agrees only with a *preceding direct object*. Otherwise it remains *unchanged* (in the form of the masculine singular), as:

avez-vous *vu* ma sœur (dir. obj. *following*). Oui, je l'ai *vue* (dir. obj. *preceding*).

avez-vous *vu* mes frères, or mes sœurs? Oui, je les ai *vus*, or *vues*. m'avez-vous *vu*, or *vue*? Oui, je vous ai *vu*, or *vue* (*m. or f.*).

nous avez-vous *vus*, or *vues*? Oui, je vous ai *vus*, or *vues*.

But, je lui, or leur, ai *parlé*; j'en ai *parlé*; j'y ai *répondu*, etc.; the objects, though preceding, not being *direct*.

**Note.**—It will be observed that this rule embraces *two* conditions: the object must be *direct*, and must *precede the verb*. The failure of *either* of these conditions leaves the past participle unchanged.

### Reading Lesson 21.

1. Si vous avez mes livres, donnez-les-moi. 2. Je ne vous les donnerai pas; je les ai donnés à votre frère. 3. Pourquoi les lui avez-vous donnés? 4. Il me les a demandés (*asked for*). 5. Où est votre grammaire? 6. Je l'ai donnée à Jean. 7. Je vous l'apporterai demain. 8. Ne me l'apportez pas à moi; donnez-la au maître; il me la donnera. 9. Pardonnez-moi cette faute. 10. Je vous la pardonnerai cette fois. 11. Donnez-moi du pain. 12. Je vous en donnerai; je ne vous en donnerai pas. 13. Qui vous a donné ces beaux livres? 14. Jean me les a donnés. 15. Quand vous les a-t-il donnés? 16. Il me les a donnés (*gave*) hier. 17. Vous a-t-il dit (*told*) cela? 18. Oui, il me l'a dit. 19. Il ne vous a pas dit la vérité. 20. Voici de bonnes poires. 21. Donnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît. 22. Je ne puis (*cannot*) vous en donner; je les ai apportées pour ces messieurs (*gentlemen*). 23. Prêtez-moi votre plume, s'il vous plaît. 24. Je ne puis vous la prêter; je l'ai prêtée à Guillaume. 25. Guillaume a les livres d'Élise; elle les lui a prêtés. 26. Quelles fautes avez-vous faites (*made*) dans votre thème? 27. J'ai fait de grandes fautes. 28. Les avez-vous corrigées? 29. Non, le maître les a corrigées. 30. Les écoliers demandent leurs livres; donnez-les-leur. 31. Le maître les leur donnera. 32. J'ai vu lui et elle à l'école; où étiez-vous, vous et Élise? 33. Élise et moi nous étions chez nous. 34. Je donnerai les livres à vous et à lui. 35. Ne nous les donnez pas; donnez-les au maître. 36. Je vous conduirai (*will conduct*) à lui. 37. Ne me conduisez (*conduct*) pas à lui; conduisez-moi chez-moi. 38. Où est votre maison? 39. La voilà; conduisez-nous-y. 40. Portes-y de l'eau fraîche; mon père en a demandé. 41. Je lui en porterai.

### Theme 21.

1. Who has had my books? 2. I have had them. 3. Give them

to me. 4. I cannot (*ne puis*) give (*infin.*) them to you; I have lent them to John. 5. Let him bring them to me. 6. He will bring them to you himself to-morrow. 7. Eliza and her brother have been here; have you seen them? 8. I have not seen them; why do you ask? 9. They have left their gloves; will you carry them to them? 10. I cannot carry them to them; carry them to them yourself. 11. Have you any good red wine? sell me some. 12. I will not sell you any (*en*); I will give you some. 13. Do not give me any; I cannot take it. 14. I am going home (*chez moi*). Send some there, if you please. 15. Here are my children; I present them to you. 16. Take (*prenez*) them, and do not neglect them. 17. Where are your gold watches? 18. I have lost them. 19. Where have you lost them? 20. I was at school; I have lost them there, I think. 21. I speak to you and to her; why do you not answer me? 22. We will answer you, but we will not obey you. 23. When will you bring me the stockings home (*chez moi*). 24. Bring them there to-day, if you please. 25. I cannot bring them there to-day,—I will send (*enverrai*) them to you to-morrow. 26. Do not speak to him of it; he will tell (*dira*) it. 27. Have you bought the English horses? 28. I have not bought them; he will sell them to me to-morrow. 29. At what price will he sell them to you? 30. I cannot tell (it); I will tell you (it) to-morrow. 31. Here is some good red wine—shall I bring you some? 32. Are these (*sont-ce*) your friends? present me to them. 33. Here is my mother too; I will present you to them and to her. 34. I shall expect you and her at my house to-morrow. 35. We will dine with (*chez*) you.

## LESSON XXIX.

### LE, LA, LES, AS EXPLETIVES.

1. In addition to their regular use as objects, the conjunctives *le, la, les* are used to supply the place of a preceding noun or adjective, or of an entire phrase :

2. When the reference is to a noun, or word used as a noun, in a definite sense, the pronoun agrees with it. When the reference is to an adjective, or to a noun used only as an adjective, the pronoun *le* remains unchanged, as :

Êtes-vous les amis de M. B? Oui, nous les sommes; we are (*they*).

*The quality expressed by an*



Êtes-vous amis ? are you friends (friendly) ? Oui, nous le sommes (*so*).  
 Êtes-vous la mariée ? are you the bride ? Oui, je la suis ; I am (*she*).  
 Êtes-vous mariée ? are you married ? Oui, je le suis ; I am (*so*).

In this use the pronouns are usually not translated in English.

### THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

3. The possessive pronouns are used without a noun, and are always preceded by the article. (See L. XV.) They are :

|           | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i>  | <i>Pl. M.</i> | <i>Pl. F.</i> |                             |
|-----------|-----------|------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1st Sing. | le mien,  | la mienne, | les miens,    | les miennes,  | mine.                       |
| 2d Sing.  | le tien,  | la tienne, | les tiens,    | les tiennes,  | thine.                      |
| 3d Sing.  | le sien,  | la sienne, | les siens,    | les siennes,  | { his, hers,<br>its, one's. |

|           | <i>M. F.</i>   | <i>M. F.</i> |         |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|---------|
| 1st Plur. | le, la, nôtre, | les nôtres,  | ours.   |
| 2d Plur.  | le, la, vôtre, | les vôtres,  | yours   |
| 3d Plur.  | le, la, leur,  | les leurs,   | theirs. |

Similarly du mien, de la mienne; des miens, des miennes; of mine.

au mien, à la mienne; aux miens, aux miennes; to mine, etc.

4. Like the possessive adjectives (L. XV.), the possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the *object* referred to, not with the *person*; as :

mon frère a sa plume, et ma sœur a la sienne, *hers* (agreeing with *plume*).

mon frère a ses livres, et ma sœur a les siens, *hers* (agreeing with *livres*).

### POSSESSIVE IDIOMS.

5. Note the following idiomatic possessive expressions :

1. *Own*, in the expressions *my own*, etc., is expressed before a noun by the adjective *propre*—as, *ma propre maison*, my own house, etc. When the noun is omitted, it is usually expressed by the possessive pronoun only; as, *il a vendu ma maison et la sienne*, he has sold my house and his own.

2. The possessive pronouns are used absolutely (as nouns), in the singular, in the sense of *property*, *one's own*; in the plural, in the personal sense of *family*, *friends*, etc.; as, *chacun aime le sien*—*les siens*, everybody loves his own (property)—his own (friends).



3. The expression *est le mien*, etc., is distinctive of *mine* from *thine*, etc.; *est à moi* simply asserts my *ownership*; as, quel livre est le vôtre, which book is yours? cette bague est à moi, this ring is mine—belongs to me. (L. XIV.)

4. The expression, a *friend of mine*, of *ours*, etc. (meaning *one of my friends*, etc.), is rendered by *un de mes*—*nos*—*amis*, etc.

**Note.**—But not in such phrases as *this heart of mine*, which is simply *mon cœur*.

5. In cases of obvious reference to the same personal subject, the definite article alone is often equivalent to the English possessive adjective; as, il leva la main, he raised *his* hand, etc.

Or, the indirect object of the personal pronoun referred to will also be expressed; as, il se cassa la jambe, he broke his leg (*to himself the leg*). Je lui ai coupé le doigt, I have cut off his finger (*to him the finger*).

**Note.**—This idiom is sometimes called the *indirect* or *dative* possessive. It is limited mainly to expressions concerning the *body, mind, dress*, etc., where no ambiguity is possible.

### EN, FOR THE POSSESSIVE.

6. The possessives *its, their* will be expressed by *en* (L. XXVII.), when they do not refer to the subject of the verb, or belong to a noun governed by a preposition; as, Paris est une belle ville—j'en admire les grandes rues, I admire *its* large streets. But, Paris a ses beautés (referring to the subject); j'admire le grandeur de ses rues (the noun governed by a preposition). Similarly, cette farine est très bonne, mais le prix en est trop haut, *its* price is too high; or, je n'en paierai pas le prix, I will not pay *its* price, etc. But, cette farine ne vaut pas son prix, is not worth *its* price, etc.

**Remark.**—Generally, *en* can never refer to the subject of the verb, nor limit a noun depending on a preposition. Like other uses of *en*, this idiom is rarely extended to persons (L. XXVII. 8). It must in all cases be carefully guarded against possible ambiguity.

### Reading Lesson 22.

1. Êtes-vous cuisinière (a cook)? 2. Non, je ne le suis pas; je suis blanchisseuse (washer-woman). 3. Êtes-vous la blanchisseuse de Mme. B.? 4. Non, je ne la suis pas. 5. Est-elle mariée?

6. Non, elle ne l'est pas, mais elle le sera bientôt. 7. Êtes-vous les prisonniers français? 8. Nous ne les sommes pas. 9. Est-elle heureuse? 10. Oui, elle l'est, mais elle ne le sera pas longtemps. 11. Quels crayons avez-vous apportés? 12. J'ai apporté un des miens; la servante apporte (*is bringing*) les vôtres. 13. Cette dame a acheté une grande maison, et vendu la sienne. 14. Nous aimons les nôtres. 15. Donne à chacun le sien. 16. Cette maison est à moi; n'en admirez-vous les belles fenêtres? 17. Cette ville est remarquable par ses richesses; n'en admirez-vous pas les grandes et belles rues, et l'élégance de ses maisons? 18. Ce chien-ci est le mien; ce chien-là est le vôtre. 19. Le mien est plus grand que le vôtre. 20. A qui sont ces gants blancs? 21. Ils sont à moi; ne les salissez pas. 22. Quel est cet arbre? 23. Je n'en connais (*know*) pas le nom; mais j'en admire les grandes feuilles et les beaux fruits. 24. Une de mes anciennes amies fut chez moi. 25. Fermez les yeux. 26. Ouvrez (*open*) la bouche. 27. Je penserai à ma promesse; pense à la tienne. 28. Le pauvre prisonnier leva la tête et étendit les mains. 29. Chaque siècle a ses vices et ses vertus; les anciens avaient les leurs, nous avons les nôtres. 30. Lorsque le fils rencontra son père, il l'embrassa, et lui baisa les mains. 31. L'intérêt des nôtres nous est cher.

### Theme 22.

1. Where are your pencils? 2. Here are mine; where are yours? 3. I have lost one of mine; lend me one of yours. 4. Have you kept your promise? 5. Yes, I have kept mine; you have forgotten yours. 6. Are you sick, my dear daughter? 7. No, (my) father, I am not. 8. She was a friend of mine, but she shall not be now. 9. We were friends (*m.*); we are not now. 10. Are you Mr. B.'s daughter? 11. No, I am the daughter of a brother of his. 12. Are you Julia? No, I am not; my name is Eliza. 13. Answer (to) his letter and (to) mine. 14. I will answer his; I have answered yours. 15. Which house is yours, the red (one) or the white (one)? 16. The white house is mine; do you not admire its beauty? 17. Yes, but I do not admire the color of its windows. 18. France is a beautiful country; its air is soft, its soil is fertile. 19. I love its mountains, and I admire the beauty of its green fields. 20. Every country has its beauties and its defects. 21. Why do you close your eyes? 22. When he died (*mourut*) I closed his eyes. 23. He fell from the ladder, and broke his arm (*se*). 24. To each one his own. 25. He has always been faithful to his (friends). 26. These pens are mine,

but I will give you some (*en*). 27. The houses of the ancients were different from our own (*ours*). 28. She has destroyed the happiness of her family and her own also. 29. The physician carried the sick (*man*) home. 30. Will he cut off his leg? 31. He has lost his senses.

## LESSON XXX.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The simplest form of the demonstrative pronoun is *ce*, which is indeclinable. This must not be confounded with the demonstrative adjective *ce* (L. XV). It has two principal uses:

1. *Ce* is used as antecedent to a relative pronoun, not referring to *persons* (*ce qui*, *ce que*, etc.), in the sense of *that which*, or *what*. (L. XXXII.)

2. *Ce* is used as subject of the verb *être*.\* If the predicate noun or pronoun (the *logical* subject) is of the third person plural, the verb will agree with it; otherwise it agrees with *ce* (the *grammatical* subject); as, *est-ce vous?* Is it you? *c'est moi*, it is I. But, *ce sont eux*, it is they; *c'étaient mes amis*, it was (these were) my friends.

*Là* may be added for emphasis; as, *sont-ce là*—or *ce sont là*—*mes gants*; are those (*there*)—or, those (*there*) are—my gloves. *Ce les sont*, they are. (L. XXIX. 1.)

**Note.**—In English the verb always agrees with the *grammatical subject*, *it is*, or *they are*, etc.

2. The compounds *ceci*, *cela*, also indeclinable, are used in the substantive sense of *this*, *that*; as, *donnez-moi ceci*, or *cela*, give me this, or that; *ceci*, or *cela*, *est assez facile*, this, or that, is easy enough. *Que pensez-vous de cela*, or *de ceci?* what do you think of that, or of this?

**Note.**—*Ceci* and *cela* are composed of *ce*, with *ici* *here*, *là* *there*. *Cela* is often contracted, in familiar style, to *ça*.

3. The compound (*m.*) *celui*, (*f.*) *celle*, that (he, she);  
*pl. (m.) ceux*, (*f.*) *celles*, those (they);  
 is never used alone, but always with some defining word or words:

---

\* And (rarely) of a few other verbs (*devoir*, *pouvoir*, *sembler*).

1. As antecedent to a relative pronoun, *he who, that (one) which*, etc., as :

celui qui est content est heureux, he who is contented is happy.

je connais celle qui vous a écrit, I know her who has written to you.

quels livres avez-vous là ? ceux que vous m'avez donnés, those which you gave me.

cette maison, et celle que j'ai vendue, this house, and that (one) which I have sold, etc.

**Note 1.**—The relative is here always *restrictive* or *defining*, and must immediately follow celui, etc. (*without comma*, as in English also).

**Note 2.**—*That (one)*, expressed by celui, etc., before a relative, must not be confounded with *that which*, or *what*, expressed by ce qui, etc., above (1, 1).

2. With a limiting noun, depending on *de, that of*, etc., often rendered in English by the simple possessive of the noun ; as, ma maison et celle de mon frère, my house and that of my brother—or my brother's ; ces gants et ceux de ma sœur, these gloves and my sister's, etc.

3. With the addition of *-ci* and *-là*, celui-ci, celui-là, etc., in the definite sense of *this (one), that (one)*; *these, those* ; as, quelle robe préférez-vous ? Je préfère celle-ci, *or* celle-là. Je préfère celle-là, qui coûte cent francs, à celle-ci, qui est plus chère. I prefer that one, which costs one hundred francs, to this one, which is dearer. Note that here the relative may be separated by the comma.

**Note.**—But celui-là is sometimes used as antecedent in the sense of celui (*without comma*), when separated from the relative ; as, celui-là est heureux qui est content.

4. Celui-là often represents *the former*, celui-ci *the latter*, of two antecedents ; as, Napoléon et Wellington étaient deux grands généraux ; celui-ci fut vainqueur, celui-là fut vaincu : the latter was victorious, the former was vanquished.

Celui, etc., as already remarked, is a compound, and corresponds in its inflections with the disjunctives lui, elle, eux, elles. It is sometimes called the *determinative*, or *relative demonstrative*.

4. The adverb là, *there*, is also construed as a demonstrative pronoun with prepositions *de, par* ; as, de là, from that, therefore, thence ; par là, by that, thereby.



## FURTHER USE OF CE.

5. *Ce*, as subject of *être* (1, 2), must be distinguished in use from *il* :

1. In the sense of *it is*, *il* is used when the subject is *impersonal* ; or when the predicate is an adjective referring to something *following* ; as, *il est trop tard* ; *il est six heures*, it is too late ; it is six o'clock. *Il est impossible de faire cela*, it is impossible to do that ; *il est évident que vous avez tort*, it is evident that you are wrong.

In other cases *ce* is used ; as, *je ne ferai pas cela, c'est impossible*, I will not do that, it is impossible ; *vous avez tort, c'est évident*, you are wrong, it is evident ; *c'est un grand malheur*, it is a great misfortune ; *c'est dommage*, it's a pity ; *c'est moi*, etc.

2. In the sense of *he is*, *she is*, etc., *il*, *elle*, etc., are used if the predicate is an adjective, or a noun used alone in a simply adjective sense ; as, *il est anglais* ; *il est médecin*, he is a physician.

But *ce* is used if the predicate noun have an article, or adjective, or other limiting words ; as, *c'est un héros*, he is a hero ; *c'est un médecin anglais*, he is an English physician ; *c'est un père de l'église*, he is a father of the church.

6. When *ce qui*, *ce que*, etc. (1, 1), begin a relative clause subject of *être*, *ce* is regularly repeated before *être*, unless the predicate is an adjective or participle ; as, *ce que je souhaite le plus, c'est de vous voir*, what I desire most, (it) is to see you. But, *ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste*, what is useful is not always just.

**Remark.**—The demonstrative pronouns and adjectives (L. XV.) must be carefully distinguished in form and use, because their equivalents are often identical in English.

## Reading Lesson 23.

1. Voici mes gants et ceux de Charles. 2. Ceux-là sont neufs, ceux-ci sont vieux. 3. Nos enfants et ceux de nos voisins sont au (*in the*) jardin. 4. Pour qui est ceci ? 5. C'est pour ma cousine. 6. Ceci est pour moi, cela est pour vous. 7. Ne me parlez pas de cela ; je ne vous écouterai pas. 8. Est-ce toi, mon fils ? 9. Non,



mon père, c'est ta fille qui te parle. 10. Voici deux chapeaux de soie blanche; préférez-vous celui-ci ou celui-là? 11. Je préfère celui-là; celui-ci n'est pas beau. 12. Connaissez-vous (*do you know*) mon fils? c'est un bon garçon. 13. Cela n'est pas vrai. 14. Votre voisin est-il anglais? 15. Non, il est français. 16. C'est un très bon jardinier. 17. Sont-ce là (*those*) les pensées d'un roi? 18. De ces deux chapeaux, celui-ci, qui me coûta dix francs, est meilleur que celui-là, qui me coûta douze francs. 19. C'est donc (*then*) celui-ci que je porterai ce soir. 20. La vie des nations est comme celle des hommes. 21. Ce sont de grandes merveilles. 22. Oubliez les services que vous avez rendus; n'oubliez pas ceux que vous avez reçus. 23. Les blessures du corps ne sont pas si sévères que celles de l'âme. 24. C'est en Italie que les voyageurs trouveront les plus beaux monuments. 25. De ces deux généraux, celui-là fut heureux; celui-ci fut malheureux; mais celui-ci fut plus héroïque que celui-là. 26. Il est assez facile d'écrire ces thèmes. 27. Il n'est pas propre de parler ainsi. 28. Ne parlez pas ainsi; ce n'est pas propre. 29. Ça m'étonne. 30. Cela est assez facile à (*to*) faire. 31. Il est maintenant trop tard; finissons demain. 32. Le maître récompensera tous ceux qui auront fini leurs thèmes.

### Theme 23.

1. Which pens will you choose? 2. Give me these; I do not choose those. 3. Have you brought my books and John's? 4. I have brought yours; here they are. 5. I have not brought John's; the servant had forgotten them. 6. These hats are better than those; but those are dearer than these. 7. The wars of Alexander and those of Cæsar are very celebrated. 8. The former was the greatest general, the latter was the greatest man. 9. He who has good friends is rich. 10. Those who are contented are not poor. 11. She who does not obey (*to*) her mother is not a good girl. 12. She is not a good girl who does not obey her mother. 13. Why do you always talk of this and of that? it is a bad habit. 14. It is impossible to write (*d'écrire*) these exercises without mistakes. 15. No, it is not impossible; it is easy enough. 16. It is you (*toi*) that are (*qui es*) too lazy. 17. All (*those*) who have finished their exercises shall have a reward. 18. Which of those two houses do you prefer? 19. I prefer this one which has the large white windows. 20. It is that one which I should buy. 21. Which house did you buy? was it this one? 22. No, it was that one; it was Mr. B.'s (*that*) I bought. 23. It is not in America that (*the*) travellers find

the oldest monuments. 24. It is not always the richest that are the happiest. 25. Is he *a* doctor or *a* lawyer? 26. He is a Catholic priest. 27. It is a bad son who does not obey his father. 28. What time is it—is it six o'clock? 29. No, it is half-past six. 30. That (*ce*) is too late.

## LESSON XXXI.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The definite interrogative pronoun, *which, which one*, (or *ones*) is (*m.*) *lequel*, (*f.*) *laquelle*;  
*pl. (m.) lesquels, (f.) lesquelles*;  
 which agrees in gender and number with the noun referred to.

*Lequel* is composed of the definite article and *quel* (L. XVI.), and receives the usual contractions of the article; as, *auquel de ces messieurs avez-vous écrit?* to which (one) of these gentlemen have you written? *Voici deux robes; laquelle choisirez-vous?* which (one) will you choose? *Deux de ses fils sont morts; lesquels sont-ce?* which (ones) are they?

2. The indefinite interrogative pronoun *who? whom?* of persons is *qui*, which is indeclinable, as:

*Qui est là?* who is there?

*Qui cherchez-vous?* whom do you seek?

*De qui—à qui—parlez-vous?* of whom—to whom—do you speak?

3. The indefinite interrogative pronoun *what?* of *things*, has two forms, which are also indeclinable:

1. *Quoi, what?* is *disjunctive* (see L. XXVI. 4), as:

*Quoi! what!* *De quoi parlez-vous?* of what do you speak?

*En quoi, avec quoi, etc.* In what, with what?

*Je ne sais quoi,* I don't know what.

2. *Que, what?* is *conjunctive*, as direct object before the verb, as:

*Que cherchez-vous?* what do you seek (what are you looking for)?

*Qu'avez-vous?* what have you (idiom: what is the matter with you)?

*Je ne sais que faire,* I don't know what to do.

As subject, *que*, *what?* is used only with *être* and with some impersonal verbs; as, *qu'est-ce*, what is it? *Qu'arriva-t-il?* what happened?

4. Elsewhere *what?* as subject, must be expressed by the compound phrase *qu'est-ce qui?* what is it that? as, *qu'est-ce qui vous effraie?* what (is it that) frightens you?

5. Similarly *what?* as object, may be expressed by *qu'est-ce que?* as, *qu'est-ce qu'il demande?* what does he ask? etc. And for *persons*, similar phrases with *qui* may also be used; as, *qui est-ce qui*, *who?* *qui est-ce que*, *whom?* *à qui est-ce que*, *to whom?* etc.; as, *qui est-ce qui croirait ça?* who (is it that) would believe that? *À qui est-ce que vous parlez?* to whom do you speak? etc.

**Note.**—The following are similar idiomatic phrases: *qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?* What is that? etc.

6. The interrogative *whose?* as predicate of *être* in the sense of *belonging to* (L. XIV. 3), is *à qui*; otherwise *de qui*; as, *à qui est-ce livre-là*, whose is that book (whose book is that)? *De qui êtes-vous fils?* whose son are you?

7. The exclamatory *what!* standing alone is *quoi*. *Quoi* de, *what!* is used before an adjective, without verb; as, *quoi de plus beau que cela!* what more beautiful than that! *Que* de is used before a noun (L. IX. 5) in the sense of *how many!* *what!* as, *que de choses sont passées!* How many things have happened!

**Note.**—For the exclamatory use of the interrogative adjective *quel*, see L. XVI. 3.

8. The adverb *où*, *where?* is construed as an interrogative pronoun, with the prepositions *de*, *par* (see *là*, L. XXX. 4); as *d'où*, where from, whence? *par où*, whereby; usually, however, only in *local* relations.

9. The preposition in French must always stand immediately before its object, and cannot be transposed as in English; as, *what* are you talking of? *de quoi parlez-vous?*

**Remark.**—The interrogative pronouns and the interrogative adjective (L. XVI.) must be carefully distinguished, their forms being often identical in English. The forms of the interrogative pronouns are also used as relative pronouns. (L. XXXII.)

## Exercises.

The exercises, which might now be made more elaborate, will still be confined closely to the illustration of the grammatical forms under the several Lessons, as their proper and principal object. For this reason, however, it is the more important that they should now be supplemented by additional reading, and by more general grammatical exercises in connection therewith. The Introductory French Reader accompanying this volume, furnishes easy reading, with notes adapted to such exercises.

## Reading Lesson 24.

1. Lesquels de vos chevaux avez-vous vendus ? 2. J'ai vendu celui-ci et celui-là. 3. Voici deux pommes; laquelle choisirez-vous ? 4. Je choisirai celle qui est la plus mûre. 5. Auquel de vos écoliers donnerez-vous le prix ? 6. Je le donnerai à celui qui l'aura mérité. 7. De qui avez-vous reçu cette lettre ? 8. Je l'ai reçue de mon père. 9. A qui écrivez-vous (*write*) ? 10. D'où vient (*comes*) cette lettre ? 11. Par qui fut-elle apportée ? 12. Que voulez-vous, Monsieur ? 13. Qu'est-ce que vous voulez, Monsieur ? 14. A quoi pensez-vous ? 15. Par quoi apaiserai-je ma douleur ? 16. A qui est ce livre ? 17. Qu'avez-vous perdu ? 18. Qu'est-ce que vous avez trouvé ? 19. Qui est-ce qui a dit (*said*) cela ? 20. Qui punirez-vous ? 21. Je punirai tous ceux qui méritent d'être (*to be*) punis (*pl.*). 22. Qui est-ce qui a été ici ? 23. Quoi ! vous parlez de cela ! 24. Qu'a-t-il ? il est très malade. 25. Quoi de plus magnifique qu'un beau ciel ! 26. Que de belles fleurs ! 27. Quelle merveille ! Quelle chose étonnante ! (L. XVI.) 28. Quels beaux jours ! 29. Que pensez-vous de cela ? 30. Qu'est-ce qui vous afflige ? dites-le-moi. 31. Deux de ses fils sont morts ; lesquels sont-ce ? 32. Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela ? 33. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la vie humaine ? 34. Laquelle de vos écolières est la meilleure ? 35. Qui est-ce qui ne défendrait pas sa patrie ? 36. Que sont les hommes devant Dieu ? 37. Quelle est la vie des hommes ? 38. De qui Alexandre fut-il fils ? 39. Qu'est-ce qui vous étonne ? 40. Qui est-ce que vous désirez de (*to*) voir ? 41. Qu'est-ce que vous avez dit ? 42. Quelle est la cause de vos larmes ? 43. Quel est le plus joli dessin ? 44. Lequel préférez-vous ?

## Theme 24.

1. Who goes (*va*) there ? 2. To whom do you speak ? 3. Who is it that you speak to ? 4. Who is-looking-for me ? 5. Which of your sisters are married ? 6. From whom have you received this letter ? 7. By whom was it written (*écrite, f.*) ? 8. Whom do



you desire to (*de*) see? 9. To whom do you desire to speak? 10. What have you in your (*the*) hand? 11. What is the price of these books? 12. What! do you ask that? 13. It is too much (*trop*); what is the least price? 14. Who are these men? whence do they come (*viennent*)? 15. What have you brought with you? 16. What more astonishing than that news? 17. What beautiful flowers! 18. What beautiful nights in the summer! 19. How many palaces are in Paris! 20. Which of your scholars is the most industrious? 21. To which (one) will you give the greatest reward? 22. To whom will you give these flowers? 23. To her (that) I love. 24. What are the pleasures of this life? 25. What is true happiness? 26. Whose horses are these? 27. Which (ones) do you speak of? 28. What have you talked of all (the) day? 29. What a story! 30. How many men perish in (*art.*) war! 31. What more dreadful than war! 32. Which teacher are you speaking of? 33. What will happen? whence comes the danger? 34. What a thought!

---

## LESSON XXXII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

As already remarked (L. XXXI.) the interrogative pronoun forms are also used as relatives. Hence the two uses must be carefully distinguished.

1. The relative pronoun *who, which, that*, of persons or things, is *qui* (subject), *que* (object), which are unchanged for gender or number; as, *l'homme qui parle*; *les femmes qui parlent*; *la maison, les maisons, que j'achèterai*; *les personnes que je connais*, the persons whom I know, etc.

2. Instead of *qui, que*, the compound (L. XXXI. 1) *lequel, laquelle*, etc., which agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, will be used:

1. To avoid ambiguity between foregoing nouns, when the relative refers to the more remote; as, *le père de la jeune fille lequel était ici*—the young girl's father who was here; while *qui* would refer to *fille*—the nearer noun: 'the father of the young girl who was here.'



2. When the relative depends on a preposition and refers to *things*; as, la table sur laquelle j'ai trouvé le livre—the table *on which*, etc.; but l'homme à qui je parlais, the man to whom I was speaking.

**Note.**—But lequel, etc., is also sometimes used of persons with prepositions—and always with *entre* and *parmi*.

3. The relative *whose*, *of whom* or *which*, is expressed :

1. By *dont*, for all genders and numbers, if dependent on a verb, its subject or direct object; as, la femme dont vous parliez—dont la fille était ici—dont vous avez lu la lettre—of whom you were speaking—whose daughter was here—whose letter you have read, etc.

2. By *duquel*, *de laquelle*, etc., if dependent on a noun governed by a preposition, or if referring to the more remote noun (as above, 2); as, la femme, à la lettre de laquelle vous avez répondu, (to) whose letter you have answered; le père de la fille, duquel vous avez lu la lettre—referring to père.

*Dont* will always stand at the head of the relative clause; *duquel*, etc., after the governing word.

**Remark.**—*Dont*, like *whose*, must always immediately follow its antecedent; but, unlike *whose*, it may be separated from its governing word (as in the preceding examples)—and the governing word may take the article. *Dont*, like *en* (L. XXVII. Rem.), is really adverbial (*Lat. de unde, from whence*), and has no exact equivalent in English.

4. The substantive (or compound) relative *what* = *that which*, with a verb, is *ce qui*, *ce que*, *ce dont*, according to the grammatical relation; as, je sais ce qui vous effraie—ce que vous désirez—ce dont vous parlez; I know what frightens you—what you desire—what you are talking of, etc. Je suis étonné de ce que vous dites, I am astonished at what you say. (L. XXX. I.)

**Note.**—*Que*, in the combination *ce que*, may also stand as nominative (predicate) with *être* and some idiomatic verbs; as, vous voyez ce que nous sommes—ce que nous deviendrons—ce qu'il faut, etc. You see what we are—what we shall become—what is necessary, etc.

5. *Quoi*, *what*, is used as relative only with prepositions, and without definite antecedent; as, voilà de quoi il parle toujours—à quoi il pense toujours; that is *what* he is always talking of—always thinking of, etc. But, c'est la même chose *dont* il parle toujours—à laquelle il pense, etc.

6. Qui is often used substantively in the indefinite sense of *celui qui*, *he who*, or *whoever*; as, *qui est content est heureux*—*je donnerai le prix à qui l'aura mérité*—to him who (whoever) shall deserve it, etc.

7. The adverb *où*, *where*, is also construed as a relative pronoun, in the *local* relations *at*, *to*, *in*, *which*; as, *la maison où je demeure—où je vais*—the house in which I live—to which I am going. Also with the prepositions *de*, *par*, (as L. XXXI. 8); as, *la maison d'où je viens—par où je passai*—from which I come—by which I passed.

8. The relative pronoun must never be omitted in French; as, the book I bought—the book I spoke of, *le livre que j'achetai, dont je parlai*, etc. For the place of the preposition see L. XXXI. 9.

9. Observe the rule for the agreement of the past participle (L. XXVIII. 6), even when the pronoun object itself does not indicate gender or number; as, *les maisons que j'ai vendues*; but, *dont j'ai parlé*, because *dont* is not direct object.

10. The subject noun will sometimes follow the verb in a relative clause; as, *avez-vous entendu ce que vous dit votre père?*—what your father said to you; *les conseils que m'a donnés mon père*, the counsels which my father gave me. But no ambiguity must be allowed.

**Remark.**—Generally, the relative clause requires, more strictly than in English, to be placed close after the antecedent; as, I have received a letter from your sister, which I will now answer, etc.; *j'ai reçu de votre sœur une lettre, à laquelle*, etc. The learner should pay careful attention to such idiomatic differences, in the course of his reading.\*

### Reading Lesson 25.

1. Voici le jeune homme qui a apporté la lettre. 2. De qui est la lettre qu'il a apportée? 3. Elle est du père de la jeune fille qui est morte. 4. Avez-vous perdu les rubans que je vous ai donnés? 5. Quel est l'écolier à qui (auquel) vous avez donné les livres fran-

\* As further distinction between the interrogatives and the relatives, observe that as *interrogatives* *qui* and *que* distinguish *persons* and *things*; as relatives, *subject* and *object*; the distinction being in the first case logical; in the second, grammatical only. *Dont* is always *relative*; *lequel*, *quoi*, *où*, *interrogative* or *relative*, according to the sense.

çais ? 6. C'est celui qui les a mérités. 7. Quelle est la dame dont vous parliez ? 8. C'est celle-là—celle que vous voyez-là. 9. J'ai trouvé fermée la porte par où (par laquelle) le voleur entra. 10. La chambre où (dans laquelle) je travaille est trop froide. 11. J'entends ce qu'il disait (*said*). 12. Ce qu'il disait m'étonna. 13. Ce que vous dites (*say*) est vrai. 14. Que pensez-vous de ce qu'il disait ? 15. Ce qui m'étonnait c'était sa lettre. 16. Celui dont vous parliez est un de mes amis. 17. L'homme dont vous avez vu les enfants à l'école, est un médecin français. 18. L'homme, des enfants duquel nous parlions hier, est mort. 19. La table sur laquelle je posai mes livres est derrière la porte. 20. C'est moi dont vous avez cassé l'encrier. 21. L'encrier que vous avez cassé est à moi. 22. Le médecin du roi, lequel a été ici hier, est français. 23. L'amie, des mains de laquelle j'ai reçu tous ces bienfaits, est morte. 24. Tout ce (*all that*) que vous dites n'est pas vrai. 25. Tout ce qui nous étonne n'est pas merveilleux en soi. 26. Qui méritera le prix le gagnera. 27. Voilà à quoi il pense toujours. 28. Il m'a dit je ne sais quoi—je ne sais quelles choses merveilleuses ! 29. Dites (*tell*) ce qui vous étonne—ce que vous désirez—ce dont vous parliez. 30. Je vous dirai ce qu'il est—ce que nous sommes—ce que nous serons. 31. Avez-vous vu les livres que m'a donnés mon père ? 32. Ce sont les mêmes livres dont il parlait hier.

### Theme 25.

1. Here is the letter which the young man has brought. 2. Where did he bring it from (whence has he brought it) ? 3. It is from the young Frenchman of whom we spoke yesterday, and whom we saw (*have seen*) to-day at the theatre. 4. The lady whose money you have found lives with me. 5. Here is the purse in which I found it. 6. The servant by whose hands I received the letter forgot the address. 7. Do you not hear what he says ? 8. What afflicts us is his death. 9. Tell me all that you wish—all that afflicts you. 10. I know (*sais*) whom you love. 11. He I love is not here. 12. Great souls (*art.*) ennoble misfortune (*art.*) by the courage with which they support it. 13. The building in which I found these jewels is a Catholic church. 14. It was this river on whose banks the Romans gained their first victories. 15. This is what (*quoi*) they accuse me of. 16. He asked me who I was ; I did not tell him (it). 17. Tell me what you think of all that. 18. This author has written a history of the war, which is very celebrated. 19. Have you

sold the horses I gave you ? 20. Have you answered (to) the letter I brought you ? 21. I have received a letter from your sister at Rome, which afflicts me much. 22. Do you know (*connaissiez-vous*) the gentleman with whom I travelled in Italy ? 23. Have you seen the lady whose daughter was here yesterday ? 24. (He) who works gains. 25. This is the sword with which he slew him. 26. The merchant will sell the house where I live. 27. I will tell you what you are. 28. Give me what is necessary for (*art.*) life. 29. What is just, is just. 30. I know what you have need (*besoin*) of.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Only some of the most important forms known as Indefinite Pronouns will here be given.

1. The following are used only as pronouns, that is, without a noun :

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| on, one, they, etc.                      | personne (with ne), nobody.   |
| chacun, each (one) every one.            | rien (with ne), nothing.      |
| quelqu'un, some (one), <i>pl.</i>        | quiconque, whoever.           |
| some (ones).                             |                               |
| quelque chose, something, any-<br>thing. | autrui, others, other people. |

Others are also used as adjectives ; some of these have been given. (L. XVI.)

2. On is the indefinite personal subject, and is translated by various English forms, as, *one, they, we, you, people*, etc. ; also frequently by the passive form of the verb. It is always singular, always subject, and must be repeated with every verb ; as, on dit, they say, it is said ; on doit aimer ses amis, one (*we*) should love one's (*our*) friends ; on parlait et on riait, they talked and (they) laughed.

**Note 1.**—L'on is sometimes used for euphony, at the beginning of a sentence, or after et, que, si, or a vowel generally ; but not before an immediately following l ; as l'on croit, it is believed ; but, on le croit (not l'on le croit), etc.

**Note 2.**—When used with special reference to women, on may take a



predicate adjective in the feminine (or even in the feminine plural); as, quand on est mariée, when one (a woman) is married, etc.

**Remark.**—This indefinite personal *one* (*on*, Lat. *homo*) must not be confounded with the numeral *one* (*un*, Lat. *unus*); nor with the idiomatic *one, ones* used with adjectives, as *a good one*. *On* has many idiomatic uses, and much care is often required for its correct translation.

3. Chacun, *f.* ~~chacune~~ (composed of *chaque* and *un*), corresponds, as pronoun, to the adjective *chaque*, and, like it, is always singular; as, chacun a son tour, each one has his turn; ~~chacune de ces dames~~, each one of these ladies, etc.

4. Quelqu'un, *f.* ~~quelqu'une~~; *pl.* ~~quelques-uns~~, *f.* ~~quelques-unes~~, corresponds to adjective *quelque* (L. XVI.) in the sense of *some one*, *pl. some (ones), a few*; as, quelqu'un me l'a dit, some one has told me so; ~~quelques-unes de ces pommes~~, some (a few) of these apples.

If the noun is omitted it will be represented by *en*, and an adjective belonging to it will then follow with *de* (as L. XXVII. 5); as, où trouverai-je des poires? J'en ai quelques-unes—~~quelques-unes de bonnes~~—I have some—some good *ones*.

**Note.**—*Quelqu'un*, like *quelque*, expresses a more limited or individual sense than the simple partitive, or *en* alone. (See L. XVI. 7.)

5. *Quelque chose*, as indefinite pronoun, is masculine (or without gender), though, as noun, *chose* is feminine. Before an adjective, it is limited by *de*; as, avez-vous quelque chose de bon, have you anything good? *Quelque chose* est arrivé, something has happened, etc.

6. *Personne* (Lat. *persona*, *person*), and *rien* (Lat. *rem*, *thing*), may be used without *ne*, in an indefinite question, in the sense of *anybody, anything*; as, avez-vous vu personne? have you seen anybody? y a-t-il rien? is there anything? etc. Generally, however, they are used with *ne* before the verb, or stand alone in answer to a question, in the sense of *nobody, nothing*; as, je ne vois personne, I see nobody; je ne vois rien, I see nothing. Qui voyez-vous? whom do you see? Personne, nobody. Que voyez-vous? what do you see? Rien, nothing, etc.

Before an adjective, they will also be limited by *de*; as, je ne vois rien de beau—I see nothing beautiful. Je n'ai vu personne de si sot, I have seen nobody so stupid, etc.

*Personne*, indefinite, is masculine; as noun, *person*, feminine.



**Note.**—Rien may precede an infinitive, or a past participle in a compound tense; as, *je ne veux rien dire*, I wish to say nothing. *Je n'ai rien dit*, I have said nothing.

7. Quiconque, *whoever*, is undeclined. The corresponding adjective is *quelconque*, *whatever*, which always follows the noun; as, *quiconque est content est heureux*—*je le donnerai à quiconque le méritera*, etc. Une *idée* *quelconque*, any idea *whatever*.

8. Autrui is used only with prepositions, and of persons indefinitely; as, *ne parle mal d'autrui*—*le bien d'autrui*—the property of others. *D'autres*, *others*, *other people*, may be used indefinitely as subject or object; as, *d'autres me l'ont dit*, others have told me so.

9. L'un, *f. l'une*, *the one*; l'autre, *the other*; plural, *les uns*, *f. les unes*, *some*; *les autres*, *(the) others*, express contrast; as, *l'un joue, l'autre danse*, *(the) one plays, the other dances*. *Je lis pour les uns, je chante pour les autres*, I read for some, I sing for others. They are also used idiomatically, in several combinations, as follows:

1. Accompanying a plural verb (commonly reflexive\*), or connected by a preposition, they express the reciprocal relation, *each other*, *one another*; as, *ils se haïssent l'un l'autre*, they hate each other (*the one the other*). *Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre*, they speak ill of each other (*the one of the other*); or *pl.*, *les uns des autres*, etc.

2. Connected by a conjunction:

*l'un et l'autre*, both (*the one and the other*).

*l'un ou l'autre*, either (*the one or the other*).

*ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither (*the one nor the other*), with *ne* before the verb.

As in the following examples:

*L'un et l'autre sont ici*, both are here.

*Je parle de l'un et de l'autre*, I speak of both.

*L'une ou l'autre répondra*, either one or the other will answer.

*J'écirai à l'un ou à l'autre*, I will write to either one or the other.

*Je n'écirai ni à l'un ni à l'autre*, I will write to neither.

*Other*, meaning *additional*, is expressed by the adverb *encore* with a numeral; as, *encore une tasse de thé*, another cup of tea, etc.

**Note.**—Un, *one*, as indefinite pronoun sometimes takes l' (like l'on, 2); as, l'un de mes écoliers, *one of my scholars*.

10. Pas un, pas une, *not one*, requires ne before the verb; as, pas une de ces dames n'a été ici, *not one of those ladies has been here*.

Aucun and nul were given L. XVI. They are also used as pronouns.

11. Même, pl. mêmes (L. XXVI. 5), is added also to nouns in the sense of *self*, *selves*; as, les généraux mêmes, *the generals themselves*. Preceded by the article, it means *same*; as, le même courage, *the same courage*; ce sont les mêmes, *they are the same*. Un même, *one and the same*.

As adverb même, undeclined, means *even*, and in this sense may also be used before nouns or pronouns; as, même les ennemis, *even the enemy*; même toi, *even thou*, etc.

12. Tel, telle, as adjective, *such*; un tel, une telle, *such a*; as, une telle personne, *such a person*, etc. As pronoun, tel, *many a one*; un tel, *such and such a one*; as, tel rit qui pleurera, *many a one laughs who shall weep*. Un tel me l'a dit, *such-a-one told me*; Madame une telle, *Mrs. Such-a-one*.

**Note.**—*Such a*, before an adjective, is si; as, *such a fine day*, un si beau jour, etc.

13. Tout, pronoun, *all, everything*; le tout, noun, *the whole*; du tout, after negative, *at all*. Plural, tous, *all, everybody*. Tous deux, tous les deux, *both*. Before a relative, *all (that)*, tout ce, or tous ceux, (*qui or que*). *All of* is not partitive, but simply tout, etc.; as, je le mangerai tout, *je les mangerai tous*—*all of it—of them*, etc.

**Note.**—Tout, like rien, may stand before an infinitive, or before the participle in a compound tense; as, je vais tout dire, *I am going to tell all*; j'ai tout dit, etc.

Other idiomatic forms, called indefinites, are not here included, but will be met with in reading. As elsewhere, let the distinction be carefully made between pronoun and adjective uses, the forms being often identical.

### Reading Lesson 26.

1. On est heureux quand on est content. 2. On est souvent trop content de soi. 3. On le dit. 4. On parle de la guerre. 5. On

dit que le roi arrivera demain. 6. Ici on parle français. 7. Tout le monde le croit. 8. Tout ce qu'on dit n'est pas toujours vrai. 9. Chacun a eu ses plaisirs et ses peines. 10. Quelqu'un m'a prêté un peu d'argent. 11. Combien? Quelques francs seulement. 12. Quelques-unes de ces pommes ne sont pas mûres. 13. Personne n'a été ici. 14. Je n'ai rencontré personne; je n'ai rien entendu. 15. Avez-vous entendu quelque chose de nouveau? 16. Je n'ai rien entendu de nouveau. 17. Plusieurs jeunes filles étaient là; les unes chantaient; les autres dansaient. 18. Ces deux jeunes gens s'aiment l'un l'autre. 19. Ces deux filles se ressemblent l'une à l'autre. 20. Combien de crayons avez-vous achetés? 21. J'en ai acheté beaucoup. 22. Prêtez-m'en quelques-uns, s'il vous plaît. 23. Prêtez-m'en quelques-uns de plus durs (*harder*)—des plus durs (*of the hardest*). 24. Quiconque (qui) trahit sa patrie est digne de la mort. 25. Attendez-vous quelqu'un? 26. Je n'attends personne? 27. Ne désire pas les biens d'autrui. 28. Il donne tous ses biens à autrui. 29. C'est la même histoire. 30. Même ses ennemis l'admiraient. 31. Je les ai vus l'un et l'autre (tous les deux). 32. Je n'ai vu ni l'un ni l'autre. 33. Je n'ai parlé ni de l'un ni de l'autre d'eux. 34. L'un ou l'autre arrivera bientôt. 35. Tout est perdu. 36. Pas un de ces écoliers n'a fini son thème. 37. Aucun d'eux n'aura un prix. 38. Vos filles seront-elles au bal? 39. On les a invitées (*passive*). 40. On doit (*ought to*) payer ses dettes. 41. Tel donne des largesses qui ne paie pas ses dettes. 42. Avez-vous jamais vu une telle personne? 43. Je n'ai jamais vu personne de si drôle. 44. Combien de personnes avez-vous invitées. 45. Je n'ai invité personne du tout. 46. Donne à chacun le sien. 47. Cette mère et cette fille sont très contentes l'une de l'autre. 48. On pense trop à soi, et trop peu à autrui. 49. Que dit-on de cela? 50. Personne n'en parle; on a oublié l'affaire. 51. Monsieur un tel; Madame une telle. 52. Je n'admire pas un tel exemple. 53. Personne a-t-il été ici (est-ce que personne n'a été ici)? 54. Personne du tout. 55. Nous avons tous fini notre leçon. 56. Je n'ai jamais vu une si belle personne. 57. Des personnes quelconques. 58. Encore une leçon.

### Theme 26.

1. Have you seen any one here to-day? 2. I have seen no one; no one has been here. 3. No one is without faults; every one has his (own). 4. Have you found anything new in that book? 5. I have found nothing new, but I have found something amusing. 6. Tell me what it (*ce*) is; do not keep everything for yourself. 7. What

have you lost; have you lost anything? 8. I have lost some (few) of my pens. 9. I hear nothing at all. 10. Everybody is talking of war. 11. It is believed (*on*) that we shall have war soon. 12. People talk too much of other people's affairs. 13. What is the price of each of these books? 14. (The) one costs ten francs, the other twelve. 15. I will buy them both. 16. Will you buy either of these tables? 17. No, I will buy neither. 18. Not one of your friends will betray you. 19. Somebody will be here soon. 20. Where do *we* find the best jewels? 21. They are found among (*chez*) the French. 22. Have you invited any one? 23. I have invited three persons; my mother has invited no one. 24. The three persons (whom) I have invited will be here; we expect them all. 25. Will you sell either of these horses? 26. No, I will keep both for myself. 27. We have <sup>2</sup>lost <sup>1</sup>all; every one has abandoned us. 28. Some of our friends will be faithful to us. 29. Whoever abandons his friend in (*art.*) misfortune is unworthy of confidence. 30. Do you write to any (one) of these girls? 31. No, I do not write to any (*aucune*) of them. 32. Have you ever seen such a man? 33. Have you ever seen such a lazy boy? 34. Not one of those children was at school to-day. 35. Some of them will be there (*y*) to-morrow; the others will be punished. 36. One helps the other. 37. Does one find anything agreeable in that country? 38. One finds there nothing agreeable, but many things troublesome. 39. These two friends are always talking of each other. 40. The young and the old are very different from each other (*pl.*). 41. The best rewards shall be (*on*) given to the most diligent (*pl.*). 42. We (*on*) must not (*ne doit pas*) neglect our (*ses*) affairs for the affairs of others. 43. Have you ever seen such a beautiful lady? 44. Have you ever heard anything more strange than that? 45. They are the same stories; I do not believe (*crois*) them. 46. He who speaks ill of others will have few friends. 47. No one is *a* prophet in his own country. 48. They abandoned to each other the goods and even the lives (*sing.*) of their enemies. 49. His three children <sup>2</sup>all <sup>1</sup>died (*moururent*) on one and the same day. 50. The physicians themselves were-ignorant-of (*ignoraient*) the disease. 51. Many-a-man sows who does not reap. 52. Mr. So-and-so was there. 53. Give him nothing at all; he would lose everything. 54. He has lost his whole (all his) property. 55. All is finished. 56. No, let us finish another (one more) sentence.

The longer exercises may be divided, or reserved in part for review.



## LESSON XXXIV.

## THE AUXILIARY ÊTRE : PASSIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

## THE PASSIVE VERB.

1. The auxiliary être, with the past participle of a transitive verb forms, as in English, the passive verb, or passive conjugation.

2. The Past Participle in the passive verb agrees in gender and number with the *subject*.

3. The following example will show the passive conjugation :

*Infin.*

Être aimé, *or* aimée ; aimés, *or* aimées ; to be loved.

*Pres. Part.*

Étant aimé, *or* aimée ; aimés, *or* aimées ; being loved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| je suis aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, I am<br>loved.                           | nous sommes aimés, <i>or</i> aimées,<br>we are loved.                  |
| tu es aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, thou art<br>loved.                         | vous êtes aimés,* <i>or</i> aimées,<br>ye are loved.                   |
| il, <i>or</i> elle, est aimé, <i>or</i> aimée,<br>he (or she) is loved. | ils, <i>or</i> elles, sont aimés, <i>or</i><br>aimées, they are loved. |

*Imperfect.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| j'étais aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, I was<br>loved. | je fus aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, I was<br>loved. |
| etc. etc.                                      | etc. etc.                                     |

*Preterite.**Future.*

|  |  |
|--|--|
| je serai aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, I shall<br>be loved. | je serais aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, I<br>should be loved. |
| etc. etc.  | etc. etc.  |

*Conditional.*

\* Or, aimé, *or* aimée, according to L. XII. 6.



*Imperative.*

Sois aimé, *or* aimée, be loved.  
 Soyons aimés, *or* aimées, etc., etc.

*Subjunctive.*

| <i>Present.</i>                |      |  | <i>Past.</i>                    |      |
|--------------------------------|------|--|---------------------------------|------|
| je sois aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, | —.   |  | je fusse aimé, <i>or</i> aimée, | —.   |
| etc.                           | etc. |  | etc.                            | etc. |

4. The Compound Tenses are similarly formed with the corresponding compound tenses of être ; thus :

*Comp. Infin.*

Avoir été aimé, *or* aimée ; aimés, *or* aimées.

*Comp. Pres. Part.*

Ayant été aimé, *or* aimée ; aimés, *or* aimées.

*Comp. Present.*

j'ai été aimé, *or* aimée, I have been loved.  
 tu as été aimé, *or* aimée, etc.  
 il (or elle) a été aimé, *or* aimée, etc.  
 nous avons été aimés, *or* aimées, we have been loved.  
 etc. etc.

*Comp. Imperf.*

j'avais été aimé, *or* aimée, I had been loved.  
 etc. etc.

*Comp. Pret.*

j'eus été aimé, *or* aimée, I had been loved.  
 etc. etc.

*Comp. Fut.*

j'aurai été aimé, *or* aimée, I shall have been loved.  
 etc. etc.

*Comp. Cond.*

j'aurais été aimé, *or* aimée, I should have been loved.  
 etc. etc.

Other forms may be written, according to the same rules.

5. It will be observed that the passive in French corre-

sponds precisely to the equivalent form in English, except for the inflection of the past participle ; also that, according to the rule (L. XXVIII. 5), the auxiliary past participle *été* is never changed.

6. The *Progressive* passive forms in English do not exist in French, but must be expressed by other idioms ; as, the house *is building*, or *being built*, etc. ; on bâtit la maison, etc. (See also L. XXXV. 6.)

7. *By*, expressing the agent of a passive verb, is translated by *par* in a physical (or *objective*) sense ; by *de* in a moral (or *subjective*) sense ; as, la maison fut vendue *par* le marchand ; les enfants sont aimés *de* leur mère, etc.

**Remark.**—The use of the passive is much less frequent in French than in English. Other idioms, as the active with *on*, or the reflexive (L. XXXV.) often correspond to the English passive. Especially, the passive in French can never be used unless its subject, in the active form, would be a *direct object* ; as, *the laws are obeyed*, on obéit aux lois ; *I have been told*, on m'a dit ; *I was told by the king* ; le roi m'a dit, etc.

The proper idiomatic forms should always be observed in translation.

### NEUTER (INTRANSITIVE) VERBS.

8. Neuter verbs have for their auxiliary avoir or être.

1. The majority are conjugated with avoir (as with *have* in English) ; as, il a couru, he has run ; ils ont fui, they have fled.

2. Others are conjugated with avoir when they express *action* or *motion* ; with être when they express *state*, *condition*, *position*, etc., resulting from the action or motion, as :

Il a entré en grande hâte, he entered in great haste.

Il est entré dans la maison, he has gone into the house (*and is still there*).

**Note.**—With some verbs avoir or être will be used, in different idiomatic senses, as ;

Ce mot m'a échappé—this word escaped (from) me (*was not heard by me*).

Ce mot m'est échappé—this word escaped (from) me (*was uttered unawares by me*).

3. A few are always conjugated with être. Of these are :

aller (*irreg.*), to go ;

partir (*irreg.*), to depart, set out,  
start.

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| arriver, to arrive;                   | sortir ( <i>irreg.</i> ), to go out.                      |
| “ ( <i>impers.</i> ), to happen;      | venir ( <i>irreg.</i> ), to come.                         |
| décéder, to deccase;                  | <i>p. part.</i> , venu; and some of<br>its compounds, as: |
| mourir ( <i>irreg.</i> ), to die;     | devenir ( <i>irreg.</i> ), to become.                     |
| <i>p. part.</i> , mort;               | <i>p. part.</i> , devenu.                                 |
| naître ( <i>irreg.</i> ), to be born; | revenir, to come back.                                    |
| <i>p. part.</i> , né;                 | <i>p. part.</i> , revenu.                                 |

as, les lettres sont arrivées, the letters have (are) come, etc.

**Note.**—The use of *be* with such verbs was formerly much more common in English than at present.

**9.** The agreement of the past participle in neuter verbs depends upon the auxiliary. There can be no direct object. Hence (L. XXVIII. 6) :

1. The past participle of a neuter verb with *avoir* never agrees.

2. The past participle of a neuter verb with *être* agrees with the subject (as 2).

**10.** When, however, a verb, usually intransitive, is used in a transitive sense, it is construed as transitive, and the past participle may then agree ; as, descendre, to land ; *trans.* nous les avons descendus, we have *landed* them, etc.

**Note.**—Such double uses of a verb are, however, much less frequent than in English, other distinctive idioms being used instead ; especially the reflexive (L. XXXV.) for the English intransitive, etc.

### Reading Lesson 27.

1. Les bons écoliers seront loués du maître ; les paresseux seront punis. 2. Les bons enfants sont loués de tout le monde (tout le monde loue les bons enfants). 3. Bien des soldats furent tués et blessés dans la dernière bataille. 4. Ces écoliers ont été punis par le maître parce qu'ils avaient été si paresseux. 5. Cette maison fut bâtie l'année dernière. 6. Une nouvelle maison sera bâtie bientôt par le même marchand. 7. Avez-vous été invitée au bal du prince ? 8. Non, ma sœur a été invitée ; on ne m'a pas invitée (*f.*). 9. Pourquoi ne vous a-t-on pas invitée, ma petite amie ? 10. La ville de Troie fut prise (*f. taken*) par les Grecs ; les femmes furent emmenées comme captives. 11. Si l'on est vertueux, on sera aimé et estimé de tout le monde. 12. Les règles de l'école doivent (*must*) être observées de tous ; ceux qui les transgressent seront punis. 13. La

reine est arrivée hier; elle a voyagé par toute l'Europe. 14. Les princes sont revenus de la ville. 15. Ma mère est née (*was born*) en Angleterre. 16. Les voyageurs anglais sont partis pour l'Allemagne. 17. Que sont devenus (*what has become of*) nos anciens amis? 18. Ils sont tous morts. 19. Ma fille serait partie ce matin, si vous étiez arrivée (*f.*) plus tôt (*sooner*). 20. Tous les enfants sont sortis (les enfants sont tous sortis). 21. Elle est allée à l'école. 22. Les voyageurs qui sont arrivés aujourd'hui avaient voyagé en France et en Italie. 23. Il a couru trop vite. 24. Tous nos amis ont fui; nous sommes restés seuls. 25. Qui est-ce qui entra dans cette maison? 26. C'est ma mère qui est entrée chez elle; elle est revenue de la ville. 27. Ces noix sont tombées de l'arbre. 28. Je les ai ramassées. 29. La pauvre malade est morte (*died*) ce matin. 30. On le lui a dit (*he has been told so*). 31. On répondra bientôt à votre lettre. 32. On obéira aux lois. 33. On m'a donné dix francs.

### Theme 27.

1. Children will be loved, if they are good (*sages*). 2. By whom have you been praised, my daughter? 3. I have been praised by no one; I have been blamed by the teacher. 4. Has the letter been carried to the post-office? 5. It has not been carried; it will be (*on*) carried soon. 6. Was the general killed, or wounded? 7. He was wounded; three soldiers were killed, and seven were wounded. 8. Will Miss Emily be invited to the queen's ball? 9. No, she has gone to London; she (*has*) started this morning. 10. The French language is (*on*) spoken in all the cities of Germany. 11. These palaces were built by the last king. 12. Has the queen arrived? 13. No, she has gone to Berlin, and she has not returned. 14. The children have all started for (*pour*) the school. 15. My two daughters were (*are*) born in France. 16. The poor widow who died (*est morte*) in the hospital, will be carried out of the town. 17. We (*have*) started too late; the ladies have already gone out. 18. This letter (*has*) arrived to-day. 19. Some English horses will be sold to-morrow; they (*have*) arrived to-day. 20. The poor girl has fallen from the ladder. 21. Have the children returned? 22. No, they have all gone to the city. 23. At what age did your little sister die (*comp. pres.*)? 24. When will my letter be answered? 25. Will the laws be obeyed? 26. I was paid a large salary. 27. I was asked why they had not returned. 28. I was answered by the general. 29. Why are we not believed? 30. When shall we be written to? 31. I was told so.

## LESSON XXXV.

## THE REFLEXIVE VERB.

1. When the object of an active verb is the same person or thing as the subject, the action is said to be *reflex*, and the verb is called *reflexive*. This idiom is of great importance in French.

2. The object of a reflexive verb will always be the *pronoun* corresponding in number and person to the subject. Hence the reflexive verbs are sometimes called *pronominal verbs*.

3. The reflexive object is construed in all respects like other object pronouns (L. XXVII.). In the third person the object will be *se*; in the others, the usual objective forms *me*, *te*, etc. When the subject is a pronoun, the pronouns will occur *in pairs*, subject and object, thus:

|                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1st. je me —       | pl. 1st. nous nous — |
| 2d. tu te —        | 2d. vous vous —      |
| 3d. il (elle) se — | 3d. ils (elles) se — |

In the imperative, the subject being omitted, the object pronoun stands alone; and in the imperative *affirmative*, it follows the verb, *toi* being then used instead of *te*. (L. XXVII., 2.)

4. In other respects the reflexive conjugation, in the simple tenses, offers no peculiarity.

## REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION—SIMPLE TENSES.

*Infin.* Se \* lever, to raise one's self, to rise. (L. XXV. 2.)

*Pres. Part.* Se \* levant, rising.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| je me lève, I rise.                | nous nous levons, we rise.        |
| tu te lèves, thou risest.          | vous vous levez, you rise.        |
| il (elle) se lève, he (she) rises. | ils (elles) se lèvent, they rise. |

---

\* *Se* here represents the reflexive object generally. It may equally be *me lever*, *te lever*, etc.; *me levant*, *te levant*, etc.



*Imperfect.*

je me levais, I rose, was rising.  
 tu te levais, etc.  
 etc.

*Preterit.*

je me levai, I rose, did rise.  
 tu te levas, etc.  
 etc.

*Future.*

je me lèverai, I shall rise.  
 tu te lèveras, etc.  
 etc.

*Conditional.*

je me lèverais, I should rise.  
 tu te lèverais, etc.  
 etc.

*Imperative.*

lève-toi, rise (thou).  
 etc.

levons-nous, let us rise.  
 levez-vous, rise (ye).  
 etc.

5. The interrogative and negative conjugations are made according to the usual rules, thus :

INTERROGATIVE—*Present.*

me levè-je, do I rise ? or  
 est-ce que je me lève, etc. (L. XXIV. 2.)  
 te lèves-tu, dost thou rise ?  
 se lève-t-il, or etc.  
 se lève-t-elle, etc.  
 nous levons-nous, etc.  
 etc.

*Imperfect.*

me levais-je, did I rise ?  
 te levais-tu, etc.  
 etc.

NEGATIVE—*Present.*

je ne me lève pas, I do not rise.  
 tu ne te lèves pas, etc.  
 il (elle) ne se lève pas, etc.  
 nous ne nous levons pas, etc.  
 etc.

*Imperfect.*

je ne me levais pas, I did not rise.  
 tu ne te levais pas, etc.  
 etc.

*Imperative.*

ne te lève pas, etc., do not rise. (L. XXVII. 2.)

INTERR. NEGATIVE—*Preterit.*

ne me levai-je pas, did I not rise ?

ne te levas-tu pas, etc.

ne se leva-t-il pas, etc.

*Future.*

ne me lèverai-je pas, shall I not rise ?

ne te lèveras-tu pas, etc.

ne se lèvera-t-il pas, etc.

etc.

The omitted forms may be written in the same way.

## THE REFLEXIVE IDIOM.

6. The reflexive idiom is used in French much more largely than in English, and is variously translated :

1. By the English reflexive, *self*, *selves* ; as, vous vous flattez, you flatter yourself.

2. By the simple intransitive ; as, le soleil se lève, the sun rises.

3. By the passive ; as, les chameaux se trouvent (are found) en Asie.

4. By the reciprocal, *each other*, *one another* (with *plural* subject) ; as, ils se haïssent, they hate each other.

5. Often, with a secondary object depending on a preposition, by the simple transitive with *direct* object ; as, il s'approcha de la ville, he approached the city.

**Note 1.**—The reflexive *self* must not be confounded with the emphatic *self*. (L. XXVI. 5.)

**Note 2.**—The *passive* translation is common in general statements (like the active with on) ; or in the sense of the English *progressive passive* forms (L. XXXIV. 6) ; as, le bruit se répand, the report is being spread (*spreading*).

**Note 3.**—In the *reciprocal* sense, l'un l'autre, les uns les autres (L. XXXVIII. 9), must be added in case of possible ambiguity.

7. On the other hand, these several forms in English will often be rendered idiomatically into French by the *reflexive*.

Especially when, as so frequently in English, the same verb is used as both transitive and intransitive, the *intransitive* sense is commonly expressed in French by the reflexive ; as, arrêter, to stop (*trans.*) ; s'arrêter, to stop (*intrans.*).

8. Many verbs are used almost exclusively as reflexives; others have peculiar idiomatic meanings in the reflexive form. This, therefore, must always be looked for in the dictionary.

Examples of common reflexive verbs are :

|   |   |
|---|---|
| s'affliger (de), to be sorry (for),<br>to grieve. | se moquer (de), to ridicule.<br>se passer, to happen.     |
| s'appeler, to be named.                           | se porter, to be, <i>do</i> , (in <i>health</i> ).        |
| s'approcher (de), to approach.                    | se promener, to take a walk.                              |
| s'arrêter, to stop.                               | se réjouir (de), to rejoice ( <i>in or at</i> ).          |
| s'attendre (à), to expect.                        | se rendre, to surrender.                                  |
| se battre, to fight.                              | se répandre, to be spreading<br>abroad.                   |
| se coucher, to go to bed; to set.                 | se tromper, to be mistaken ( <i>deceive one's self</i> ). |
| se douter (de), to suspect.                       | se trouver, to be, be found.                              |
| s'écrier, to cry out.                             | se vanter (de), to boast (of).                            |
| se fier (à), to trust, rely on.                   | se vendre, to be sold.                                    |
| se hâter, to make haste.                          |   |
| se lever, to rise, get up.                        |   |

### Reading Lesson 28.

1. Comment vous portez-vous ce matin ? 2. Je me porte assez bien (*pretty well*), je vous remercie (*thank*). 3. Comment vous portez-vous vous-même ? 4. Et votre père, comment se porte-t-il ? 5. À quelle heure vous couchez-vous ? 6. Je me couche à onze heures; je me lève à six heures du (*in the*) matin. 7. Lève-toi, paresseux, il est déjà sept heures. 8. Vous vous trompez, Monsieur; il est six heures et demie. 9. Comment s'appelle votre frère ? 10. Il s'appelle Henri; ma sœur s'appelle Louise. 11. Ne te vante pas de tes richesses. 12. Nous nous réjouissons de votre bonne fortune. 13. Nous nous promenons tous les matins. 14. Le roi se promène tous les soirs dans le jardin du palais. 15. Le bruit se répand que la reine arrivera demain. 16. Où vous promènerez-vous ce soir ? 17. Ils se trompent eux-mêmes. 18. Ils se trompent les uns les autres. 19. À quelle heure le soleil se lève-t-il maintenant ? 20. Le soleil se lève à sept heures et se couche à cinq heures du soir. 21. Pourquoi vous battez-vous ? 22. Nous nous battons parce qu'il se moquait de moi. 23. Je ne me doutai pas de cela. 24. Ceux qui se vantent de leurs richesses, se trompent souvent eux-mêmes. 25. La montre s'arrêta à onze heures. 26. Vous attendiez-vous à cela ? 27. Je ne m'y attendais pas (*it*); je ne m'en doutais pas.

28. Ce jeune homme se fie à tout le monde. 29. Nous nous affligeons de votre malheur. 30. Ils se moquaient de nous. 31. Les ennemis s'approchent de notre armée. 32. L'armée se trouvait à onze lieues de la ville. 33. Les plus beaux monuments se trouvent en Italie. 34. Promenons-nous. 35. Couche-toi. 36. Ne vous fiez pas à tout le monde. 37. Je me lave les mains (L. XXIX. 5). 38. Pourquoi ne te laves-tu pas les mains? 39. Tout le monde se réjouira de cette bonne nouvelle. 40. Réjouissons-nous-en (*at it*). 41. A quoi vous attendez-vous? s'écria-t-il. 42. Hâtons-nous. 43. Ne nous hâtons pas. 44. Fie-toi à toi-même? 45. Qui se fie à tout le monde se trompe. 46. Il est temps de se réjouir. 47. Il est temps de te coucher.

### Theme 28.

1. Why do you grieve? 2. I grieve because my friends have (*are*) departed. 3. The sun is setting; night is approaching. 4. Go to bed (*sing.*), my little girl; it is time to go-to-sleep (*t'en dormir*). 5. At what o'clock will you go to bed yourself? 6. I shall go to bed at ten o'clock; we shall both get up at six (o'clock). 7. Do not fight (with) your brother. 8. My brother fights (with) me. 9. The two armies approached each other. 10. She is mistaken; she deceived *herself* (*elle-même*). 11. We did not expect that news. 12. I rejoice that you are well. 13. How are your sisters? 14. I thank you, they are very well. 15. What is the name of (*s'appelle*) this little girl? 16. Her name is (*elle*, etc.) Louise. 17. Stop! cried the general; the enemy (*pl.*) is approaching our city. 18. Those who trust everybody are often <sup>2</sup>mistaken. 19. Do you take a walk every evening? 20. I do not take a walk every evening; I walk often (*in*) the morning. 21. The finest fruits are found in France. 22. Hasten; do not stop. 23. Many things will happen in a day. 24. They ridiculed us; we shall fight (with) them. 25. Do not ridicule (*sing.*) the unhappy. 26. Apples are sold here. 27. Do not flatter yourself; we are not mistaken. 28. The army was (found itself) in a desert country. 29. Shall we stop before the door? 30. A report is spreading (*being spread*) that the queen is dead. 31. Do not grieve; let us trust in God. 32. It is easy to rejoice when one is fortunate. 33. It is time to get up; get up, lazy (fellow). 34. He relies too much on himself. 35. Do not boast of the misfortunes of others (*autrui*). 36. They ridiculed each other.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## REFLEXIVE VERB—COMPOUND TENSES.

1. Reflexive verbs form their compound tenses with the auxiliary être; as, je me *suis* levé, I *have* risen.

2. The past participle of the reflexive, however, follows the same rule as in active verbs (L. XXVIII. 6). The pronoun object always precedes. Hence:

1. If the reflexive object is *direct*, the past participle agrees with it.

2. If the reflexive object is *indirect*, the past participle does not agree with it.

3. The distinction must therefore be observed between *direct* and *indirect* reflexive objects. The former is the more usual construction, and is shown in the following conjugation.

## 4. REFLEXIVE CONJUGATION—COMPOUND TENSES.

*Comp. Infin.*

s'être\* levé, or levée; levés, or levées, to have risen.

*Comp. Pres. Part.*

s'étant levé, or levée; levés, or levées, having risen.

*Comp. Present.*

|                 |        |               |                        |                         |
|-----------------|--------|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| je me suis levé | levée, | I have risen. | nous nous sommes levés | levées.                 |
| tu t'es         | “      | “             | etc.                   | vous vous êtes “† “     |
| il (elle) s'est | “      | “             | etc.                   | ils (elles) se sont “ “ |

*Comp. Imperfect.*

|                 |        |              |                        |                     |
|-----------------|--------|--------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| je m'étais levé | levée, | I had risen. | nous nous étions levés | levées.             |
| tu t'étais      | “      | “            | etc.                   | vous vous étiez “ “ |
| etc.            |        |              | etc.                   |                     |

*Comp. Preterit.*

|                |        |              |                       |         |
|----------------|--------|--------------|-----------------------|---------|
| je me fus levé | levée, | I had risen. | nous nous fûmes levés | levées. |
| etc.           | “      | “            | etc.                  | “ “     |

*Comp. Future.*

|                  |        |              |                        |         |
|------------------|--------|--------------|------------------------|---------|
| je me serai levé | levée, | I shall have | nous nous serons levés | levées. |
| etc.             |        | [risen.      | etc.                   |         |

\* See \* p. 121.

† See \* p. 116.



*Comp. Conditional.*

je me serais levé (levée).  
etc.

nous nous serions levés (levées).  
etc.

5. Similarly in the interrogative and negative forms, following the usual rules, as:

INTERROGATIVE—*Comp. Present.*

( ? )

me suis-je levé, *or* levée, have I risen (*or*,  
est-ce que je me suis levé, *or* levée, etc.)

t'es-tu

“

“

s'est-il, *or* s'est-elle,

“

“

nous sommes-nous levés, *or* levées.

vous êtes-vous

“

“

se sont-ils, *or* se sont-elles, levés, *or* levées, etc.

*Comp. Imperfect.*

m'étais-je levé, *or* levée, had I risen, etc.

*Comp. Preterit.*

me fus-je levé, *or* levée, etc.

etc.

etc.

NEGATIVE—*Comp. Present.*

je ne me suis pas levé, *or* levée, I have not risen.

tu ne t'es pas

“

“

etc.

il (elle) ne s'est pas

“

“

etc.

nous ne nous sommes pas levés, *or* levées, etc.

vous ne vous êtes pas

“

“

etc.

ils (elles) ne se sont pas

“

“

etc.

*Comp. Future.*

je ne me serai pas levé, *or* levée, I shall not have risen.

tu ne te seras pas

“

“

etc.

etc.

*Comp. Conditional.*

je ne me serais pas levé, *or* levée.

etc.

etc.

INTERR. NEGATIVE—*Comp. Present.*

ne me suis-je pas levé, *or* levée, have I not risen.

ne t'es-tu pas

“

“

etc.

ne s'est-il (elle) pas

“

“

ne nous sommes-nous pas levés, *or* levées.

ne vous êtes-vous pas

“

“

ne se sont-ils (elles) pas

“

“

*Comp. Imperfect.*

ne m'étais-je pas levé, or levée.  
etc. etc.

*Comp. Preterit.*

ne me fus-je pas levé, or levée.  
etc. etc.  
etc. etc.

## DIRECT AND INDIRECT REFLEXIVES.

6. The English idiom does not always indicate the distinction between the *direct* and the *indirect* reflexive in French. The indirect reflexive may generally be known by the preposition *to* or *for*, or by the possessive idiom (L. XXIX. 5); as, elle s'est achetée une robe, she has bought (for) herself a dress. Elle s'est lavé les mains, she has washed *her* hands.

In other cases the reflexive is generally *direct*.

7. If the indirect reflexive has another object, *direct*, preceding the verb, the past participle will agree with it, according to the rule, L. XXVIII. 6; as, les robes qu'elle s'est achetées (agreeing with *que*), the dresses which she has bought for herself.

8. The direct reflexive always requires a second object, except *en* or *y*, to be construed with a preposition (see L. XXVIII. 2); as, je me présente à vous, I present myself to you; je me fie à toi, I rely on (trust) thee. But, je m'en réjouis, I rejoice at it; je m'y fie, I rely on it, etc.

This object will often seem to be *direct* in English: the different idioms must, therefore, be carefully distinguished.

**Remarks.**—1. The reflexive verb requires particular attention in consequence of its frequency of use, and of its idiomatic forms unlike the English. Note especially that the auxiliary *être* is here = *have*, and *vice versa*.

2. In the compound tenses, the reflexive verb corresponds, in the use of the auxiliary *être*, with the *passive*; in the construction of the past participle, with the *active* (*avoir*). The reflexive thus stands between the active and the passive, or rather partakes of both—the subject being at once *actor* and *object*.

3. Any compound reflexive tense, with the object removed, will give the corresponding *simple* tense of the passive, as:

je me suis levé, I have raised myself—risen (*comp. pres.*).  
je ( ) suis levé, I am raised— (*present.*)

The *passive state* thus corresponds to the *completed action*, as these forms indicate.

4. Finally, in translating the reflexive, let only the *proper idiomatic forms* in English be always employed; *as with all other French idioms.*

### Reading Lesson 29.

1. Pourquoi vous êtes-vous arrêtés ici ? 2. Nous ne nous sommes pas arrêtés; nous nous promenons. 3. Louise s'est habillée. 4. Est-ce qu'Élise s'est habillée aussi ? 5. Non, elle s'habille en ce moment. 6. Je me suis beaucoup amusé hier *au* soir. 7. Comment vous êtes-vous amusé ? 8. Votre père s'est-il levé ? 9. Non, il ne s'est pas encore levé. 10. À quelle heure vous êtes-vous levé ? 11. Je me suis levé à sept heures. 12. Nous nous sommes promenés une heure ce matin. 13. Vous êtes-vous attendu à cela ? 14. Non, je ne m'y suis pas attendu. 15. Nous nous sommes beaucoup réjouis de votre bonne fortune. 16. Il s'est fié à moi; je ne le tromperai pas. 17. Je me suis souvent trompé. 18. Ce bruit s'est répandu par toute la ville. 19. Bien des choses se sont passées depuis ce matin. 20. Vous êtes-vous lavé les mains ? 21. Oui, je me les suis lavées. 22. Le bruit se répand que l'armée des ennemis s'est rendue. 23. Vous y fiez-vous ? 24. Je ne m'y étais pas fié; qui a apporté cette nouvelle ? 25. Les enfants se sont tous couchés; hâtons-nous de (*to*) les éveiller. 26. Nous avons connu (*learned*) votre bonne fortune; nous nous en sommes beaucoup réjouis. 27. Comment se sont-ils trompés ? 28. Ils se sont trompés parcequ'ils se fiaient à lui; il les a trompés. 29. Vous étiez-vous douté de cela ? 30. Non, je ne m'en étais pas douté. 31. Ces marchands se sont ruinés par leur mauvaise conduite. 32. Ces deux garçons se sont battus. 33. Ils s'étaient battus longtemps lorsque le maître arriva. 34. Je me serais battu avec lui, s'il s'était moqué de toi. 35. Nous nous serions trompés, si nous nous étions fiés à vous. 36. Elle s'est blessée dangereusement. 37. Le chapeau noir qu'elle s'est acheté ce matin, ne me plaît pas, mais la robe qu'elle s'est achetée au même temps, est très belle. 38. Combien de plumes vousêtes-vous achetées ? 39. Je m'en suis acheté beaucoup. 40. Nous nous sommes fiés à toi; ne nous trompe pas.

### Theme 29.

1. Where have you *been taking* (taken) a walk, my daughter ?
2. My sister and I (*we*) have been taking a walk in the garden.
3. Did you stop (*comp. pres.*) in the city ? 4. No, we did not stop; we made haste to arrive home. 5. Have the children got up yet ?
6. Had they got up when their father arrived ? 7. They went to

bed (*comp. pres.*) at eight o'clock; it is time to (*de*) wake them. 8. The enemy (*pl.*) have boasted much of their victories. 9. Have the boys washed their hands? 10. No, they have not yet washed them; they are washing them. 11. Make haste, boys; wash your hands and dress yourselves. 12. We have dressed ourselves; we are ready. 13. Has the city surrendered? 14. The city has surrendered, but all the soldiers have escaped. 15. Would you have relied upon him? 16. Would this affair have happened, if you had relied upon me? 17. How have the girls amused themselves? 18. They have not amused themselves much. 19. They would have amused themselves if they had taken a walk with me. 20. The moon has risen; the sun will have set soon. 21. Do not make haste; stop a moment for me. 22. Have you seen the jewels which my sister has bought (for) herself? 23. Have you heard the bad news? 24. I had expected it (*y*). 25. I have been much grieved at it (*en*). 26. He has made (*fait*) himself many enemies. 27. He has boasted of it to everybody. 28. Have you seen each other to-day? 29. We have seen each other, but we have not spoken to each other. 30. Have they spoken to each other since this morning?

## LESSON XXXVII.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, or in the infinitive. They have for their subject *il*, *it* (*there*); as:

#### NEIGER, TO SNOW (L. XXV.).

##### *Simple.*

##### *Compound.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Present.</i> <i>il</i> neige, it snows—is snowing.       | <i>il</i> a neigé, it has snowed—been snowing.     |
| <i>Imperf.</i> <i>il</i> neigeait, it snowed—was snowing.   | <i>il</i> avait neigé, it had snowed—been snowing. |
| <i>Preterit.</i> <i>il</i> neigea, it snowed—did snow.      | <i>il</i> eut neigé, it had snowed—been snowing.   |
| <i>Future.</i> <i>il</i> neigera, it will snow, etc.        | <i>il</i> aura neigé, it will have, etc.           |
| <i>Cond.</i> <i>il</i> neigerait, it would snow, etc., etc. | <i>il</i> aurait neigé, it would have, etc., etc.  |

**Note.**—*Il* must be repeated before every impersonal verb.



2. Some verbs are necessarily (or *logically*) impersonal. Such are :

geler, il gèle, it freezes;  
grêler, il grêle, it hails;  
etc.

pleuvoir, il pleut, it rains.  
tonner, il tonne, it thunders.  
etc.

3. Other verbs are used, *idiomatically*, as impersonals, while still retaining their use with other subjects. Such are :

il arrive, it (there) happens;  
il reste, it (there) remains;  
il fait, it makes (*is*);

il semble, it seems.  
il suffit, it suffices.  
il me plaît, *I please*, etc.

Such impersonal *idioms* will differ in different languages. They are much more frequent in French than in English, and hence must be carefully regarded with respect to idiomatic translation.

4. Impersonal verbs take as auxiliary avoir or être, according to their meaning (but mostly avoir). In either case the past participle will remain *unchanged*.

5. The impersonal form (il=*there*) is used, in indefinite expressions, even before a plural noun in the predicate; as, il venait des gens, there came some people; il est des hommes, there are some men; il *est* arrivé de grands malheurs, there *have* happened some great misfortunes. And the impersonal il will be retained, in a question, even after *que* as subject, as, qu'arriva-t-il? what happened? (L. XXXI. 2.)

6. The English *there is, there are*, is usually expressed by the impersonal il y a (infin. y avoir), which is always singular, the noun following being grammatically the object (literally, *it there has*, etc.). Thus :

#### THE IMPERSONAL Y AVOIR.

##### *Simple.*

##### *Compound.*

*Present.* il y a, there is, there are; il y a eu, there has, or have been.

*Imperf.* il y avait, there was, there were; il y avait eu, there had been.

*Preterit.* il y eut, there was, there were; il y eut eu, there had been.



*Future.* il y aura, there will be;      il y aura eu, there will have been.

*Cond.* il y aurait, there would be;      il y aurait eu, there would have been.

etc.

etc.

7. Similarly in the interrogative and negative ; as :

y a-t-il ? is there, are there?      y a-t-il eu? has there, have there, been?

il n'y a pas, there is not, are not;      il n'y a pas eu, there has not, have not, been.

n'y a-t-il pas? is there, are there,      n'y a-t-il pas eu? has there, have there, not been?

not?

etc.

etc.

**Note.**—This indefinite *there is* must not be confounded with the definite (local) *there is* = *voilà*.

8. Il y a expresses, idiomatically, extent of distance or of time (English *far, off; since, ago*); as, combien y a-t-il à cette ville? How far is it to that city? Il y a trois milles, it is three miles (off). Je l'ai vu il y a trois mois, I saw him three months ago; or negative, il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai vu, I have not seen him *for* three months.

**Note.**—If the time is *continuous*, the accompanying verb will be present (English *perfect*); as, combien de temps y a-t-il que vous êtes ici? How long *have you been* here? Il y a trois mois que je suis ici, I have been here (for) three months.

9. The impersonal il fait (literally, *it makes*, infin. faire) is used idiomatically for *it is*, in statements concerning the weather; thus:

*Compound.*

*Present.* il fait froid, it is cold;      il a fait froid, it has been cold.

*Imperf.* il faisait froid, it was cold;      il avait fait froid, it had been cold.

*Future.* il fera froid, it will be cold;      etc.,      etc.

as, quel temps fera-t-il? what (kind of) weather will it be? Il fera beau temps—or mauvais temps—de la pluie, etc. It (there) will be good weather—bad weather—there will be rain, etc. (The full conjugation of faire will be given under Irregular Verbs.)



## THE AUXILIARY AND THE PAST PARTICIPLE:

## SUMMARY.

13. The rules already given for the use of the auxiliary, and the agreement of the past participle, in compound tenses, may be now conveniently summed up :

|      | AUXIL.         | VERB.        | PAST PARTICIPLE.                  |
|------|----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| I.   | avoir,         | transitive : | agrees with dir. obj. preceding.* |
|      | “              | intrans. :   | does not change.                  |
| II.  | être,          | “            | agrees with subject.              |
|      | “              | passive :    | “ “ “                             |
|      | “              | reflexive :  | agrees with dir. obj. preceding.  |
| III. | avoir or être, | impers. :    | does not change.                  |

## Reading Lesson 30.

1. Neige-t-il à présent ? 2. Non, il ne neige pas, il pleut. 3. Il neigera peut-être cette nuit (*to-night*), car il fait maintenant très froid. 4. Il a fait très froid hier, mais il fait maintenant plus chaud. 5. Avez-vous froid ? 6. Non ; j'ai eu froid, mais maintenant j'ai trop chaud. 7. L'eau est trop froide. 8. Quel temps fera-t-il demain ? 9. Il fera mauvais temps ; je crois qu'il fera de la pluie. 10. Y a-t-il de l'eau dans ce verre-là ? 11. Oui, il y en a (*some*). 12. Cette eau est trop chaude ; je vous en apporterai de meilleure. 13. Y aura-t-il beaucoup de fruits cette année ? 14. Oui, il y en aura beaucoup de toutes les sortes. 15. Il y a beaucoup d'hommes qui se réjouissent des malheurs d'autrui. 16. Combien d'argent y a-t-il dans cette bourse ? 17. Il y a quelques francs seulement. 18. Il est arrivé un grand malheur. 19. Il était arrivé de grands malheurs. 20. Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous êtes en Amérique ? 21. Je suis ici depuis sept ans—il y a sept ans que je suis ici. 22. Je fus à Berlin il y a trois mois (*ago*). 23. Quelle distance y a-t-il d'ici à la ville ? 24. Qu'est-il arrivé ? 25. Il est arrivé une mauvaise affaire. 26. Il vint (*there came*) hier des étrangers chez nous. 27. Il arrive souvent des accidents affreux sur les chemins de fer. 28. Il n'est arrivé aucun accident il y a plusieurs mois. 29. Il semble que Marie est très malade. 30. Faut-il lui donner de la médecine ? 31. Il faudra peut-être lui en donner demain. 32. Il m'a fallu (*I had to*)

---

\* It follows, that the past participle of a verb used as *auxiliary*, or having another *verb* as object, can never change.

lui en donner hier. 33. Il nous faudra vendre notre maison. 34. Il ne vous faudrait pas la vendre, si vous vous étiez fiés à moi. 35. Il me faut des plumes; il me faut d'autres choses aussi. 36. Il nous faudra partir demain. 37. Les enfants sont partis pour l'école il y a une heure. 38. Il semble qu'il fera de la pluie. 39. Que vous reste-t-il? 40. Il me reste ma femme et mes enfants; que me faut il de plus (*more*)? 41. Il y aura toujours des pauvres dans ce monde.

### Theme 30.

1. What kind of weather is it? 2. It is very bad weather; it is snowing and (it is) hailing. 3. It will be very cold to-morrow; there will be no rain to-night. 4. It has been very warm this morning; it will be colder *in* the evening. 5. I am too cold; bring me my hat. 6. The room in which I work is always too warm. 7. There has been too much rain this year. 8. Will there be many fruits? 9. There will be plenty (*assez*) of apples and (of) pears, but few (*peu de*) peaches. 10. There will always be persons who will boast of their riches. 11. There was nobody in the house. 12. What remains to us now? 13. What do we need? 14. We need money and friends. 15. You must obey me. 16. You (*thou*) must write your (*thy*) exercise. 17. You (*sing.*) will have to stay at school, if you do not finish your exercise. 18. Must I go to school? 19. Must we lose all our time for nothing (*rien*)? 20. We were obliged to surrender to the enemy (*pl.*). 21. We shall have to answer (to) that letter to-morrow. 22. One must not ridicule the faults of others. 23. He would be happier if he were obliged to work. 24. There has happened a dreadful accident in the city. 25. It seems that (*que*) there have been some fires. 26. There was a poor man who fell from the roof of a house and killed himself. 27. What shall we have to do? 28. What should we have to do, if there happened *such a* thing? 29. Has there ever been *such a* dreadful affair as that? 30. Do you want anything? 31. Yes, I want some fresh water; send me some, if you please. 32. There are no servants here; I will bring you some.

**Remark.**—In the continuous development of the grammatical forms, the *irregular verbs* should follow here. But in order to secure for these a systematic treatment, they have been reserved to a later place (L. XLVIII., etc.). Such of their forms as are not actually irregular are meanwhile used freely in the exercises. Of the irregular forms, some have become familiar by use in examples heretofore. Others will be indicated as they occur. Some of the more important verbs may be selected by the teacher to be learned singly in advance—along with the intervening Lessons—and afterwards reviewed systematically in their proper place.



## LESSON XXXVIII.

## ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs are simple, derivative, or compound. Simple adverbs are such as *très*, very; *souvent*, often, etc., which have no corresponding adjectives. Compound adverbs are adverbial phrases, such as *à peu près*, almost, etc. Derivative adverbs are generally formed from adjectives.

2. Adverbs are derived from adjectives by adding *-ment* to the masculine, if the adjective ends in a vowel; to the feminine, if it ends in a consonant; as, *joli*, *joliment*; *heureux*, *heureusement*; *léger*, *légèrement*, etc.

**Note.**—The adjectives *beau* (bel), *nouveau* (nouvel), *fou* (fol), *mou* (mol), form *bellement*, *nouvellement*, *follement*, *mollement*, corresponding to the forms *bel*, etc. (L. XVII. 10.)

3. Adjectives in *-ant*, *-ent*, form adverbs in *-amment*, *-emment*; as, *constant*, *constamment*; *évident*, *évidemment*, etc. (L. IV. 8). Exceptions are *lent*, *lentement*; *présent*, *présentement*, *véhément*, *véhémentement*.

4. Some adverbs have *é* before *-ment*; as, *communément*, *profondément*; *impunément*, etc.

5. The adjective form is sometimes used unchanged as adverb; as, *vite*, quickly; *haut*, aloud; *bas*, low; and in such expressions as *sentir bon*, to smell sweet; *coûter cher*, to cost dear; *être bien*, to be well, etc.; as, *la rose sent bon*, the rose smells sweet.

6. The adverb *tout*, *wholly*, *very*, before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant, adds *e*—before a plural adjective, *es*; as, *elle est toute triste*; *toutes tristes qu'elles sont*; but, *elle est tout étonnée*; *elles sont tout heureuses*, etc.

**Note.**—These are the adjective endings, added, by false analogy, to preserve the sound of *t*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

7. Adverbs are compared by *plus*, *more*, *moins*, *less*, for the comparative; *le plus*, *le moins*, for the superlative, the article remaining *always unchanged*, as:

*facilement*, easily; *plus facilement*, *le plus facilement*.

*souvent*, often; *moins souvent*, *le moins souvent*, etc.



8. The following are irregular :

|               |                 |                        |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| bien, well ;  | mieux, better ; | le mieux, (the) best.  |
| mal, ill ;    | pis, worse ;    | le pis, (the) worst.   |
| peu, little ; | moins, less ;   | le moins, (the) least. |

**Note.**—These must not be confounded with the corresponding *adjective* forms. (L. XIX. 4.)

9. For the so-called absolute superlative forms (*most, very, etc.*) ; also for *as* and *so* in comparison ; see L. XIX. *As much* is *autant* ; *so much*, *tant* ; *much, very much, beaucoup, or bien*. Note the phrases, *tant mieux*, so much *the* better ; *tant pis*, so much *the* worse.

*More*, at the end of a clause, is often *davantage*. *More*, denoting *addition*, is expressed by *encore* ; *as, encore un*, one more ; *encore une fois*, once more, etc.

For the construction of adverbs of quantity, number, etc., see L. IX.

10. The correlatives of comparison, *the more, the less*, are expressed simply by *plus—moins*, as : *plus on aime quelqu'un, moins on doit le flatter* ; *the more* we love any one, *the less* we should flatter him. If an adjective or adverb is included, it will stand after the verb ; as, *plus on est bon, plus on est aimé, the better one is, the more one is loved*. *Plus vous lisez lentement, plus vous lisez bien*, the slower you read, the better you read.

#### PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

11. The adverb may not, as in English, stand between the subject and the verb. It must either follow both, or, more emphatically, it will precede both ; as, *I often see him, je le vois souvent, or souvent je le vois*.

12. In compound tenses, some of the more common adverbs will stand between the auxiliary and participle ; as, *je l'ai toujours aimé*, I have always loved him. But not *ici, là, hier, aujourd'hui, demain, tôt, tard* ; nor very long adverbs, or adverbial phrases. Further details will be learned hereafter.

**Note.**—After interrogative adverbs, the noun will follow the verb ; or if it precede, the pronoun will be repeated after the verb (as L. X. 5) ; as, *comment se porte votre père ; or, comment votre père se porte-t-il ?*

13. *Tant*, in the sense of *si, so, and comme, or que, how* (in exclamations), will precede the verb, when qualifying the predicate adjective or adverb following ; as, *tant nous*

marchions rapidement (for nous marchions si rapidement), so rapidly did we march; comme elle est belle, or qu'elle est belle, how beautiful she is! comme il écrit rapidement, how rapidly he writes!

### Reading Lesson 31.

1. La pluie est tombée abondamment. 2. Tôt ou tard une bonne action trouve sa récompense. 3. Saint Louis a régné sagement. 4. La tortue, qui marche lentement, arrive souvent plus vite que le lièvre. 5. Cette jeune fille répondit finement. 6. Le vent soufflait violemment. 7. Vous avez assez joué. 8. Elle parle beaucoup et mal. 9. Si nous travaillons peu, travaillons bien. 10. Ces fleurs sentent bon, mais celles-ci sentent mauvais. 11. Le président parla ainsi. 12. Sa santé va de mal en (to) pis. 13. Hâtons-nous lentement. 14. Il était profondément affligé. 15. Ne parlez pas si haut. 16. Elle était tout étonnée de vous rencontrer. 17. Plus on parle, moins on pense. 18. Jadis un seigneur était maître et souverain sur ses terres. 19. Souvent ce qui était vérité hier, est erreur aujourd'hui. 20. Rire trop haut n'est pas fort poli. 21. Vous raisonnez juste, mais vous agissez mal. 22. Les bergers de Virgile chantent tour à tour les louanges des leurs troupeaux. 23. Pascal a défini l'univers: un cercle infini dont le centre est partout et la circonférence nulle part. 24. Plus on lui donne, plus il demande. 25. Mon frère se porte un peu mieux, mais ma sœur est pire que jamais. 26. Cet homme est justement célèbre; il est fort savant, et extrêmement modeste. 27. Bien faire et peu dire, est une fort bonne devise. 28. Vous le désirez; soit, je vous l'accorde volontiers. 29. Beaucoup de gens n'ont jamais assez. 30. Je n'ai que peu d'argent, beaucoup en ont davantage. 31. Presque tous les gens pensent ainsi. 32. Je ne me fie pas entièrement à lui, tant il parle et agit imprudemment. 33. Qu'elle est malheureuse! 34. Comme ces fleurs sont belles! comme elles sentent bon! 35. Elle est toute bonne.

### Theme 31.

1. We expect him to-day or to-morrow. 2. Where were you then? 3. He receives everybody politely. 4. You walk too fast. 5. The fox is naturally cunning. 6. Read slowly and carefully. 7. You have played enough, work now. 8. She speaks much and thinks little. 9. He will probably succeed in his undertaking. 10. Your exercise is badly written; it is not as well written as your brother's. 11. In the (au) spring, the birds sing (the) most sweetly.

12. Speak loud, louder, a little louder still. 13. The poor girl was wholly surprised (*surprise*) by this news. 14. She is still quite inconsolable. 15. Everywhere the love of gold has destroyed the love of virtue. 16. Suddenly the carriage stopped short. 17. Judge prudently, in order to (*pour*) judge justly. 18. The wind was blowing violently. 19. He asked me abruptly: where do you come *from* now? 20. I often think of (*à*) you; I recollect vividly our last meeting. 21. She had entirely forgotten her lesson. 22. Charles told me softly that he would seek me directly. 23. The prima donna sang that song quite correctly. 24. Whither are you going? 25. I am going in haste to the physician's; my brother is dangerously ill. 26. She would be loved much more, if she were more amiably disposed. 27. The guard defended itself bravely, and perished most heroically. 28. Formerly you came earlier. 29. The rain was beating violently against his face. 30. He was severely wounded. 31. Speak to me frankly. 32. You work too slowly. 33. The more willingly you work, the easier your task will be. 34. The more he studies the less he learns; he is so (*tant*) stupid. 35. How beautiful that young mother is; how tenderly she loves her little children! 36. One more lesson is finished.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### NEGATIVES.

1. The disjunctive negative *no*, or *not*, without a verb, is non, non pas; or, with other words added, simply pas, sometimes point; as, pas moi, not I; pas un, not one; pas, or point, du tout, not at all, etc.

2. The conjunctive negative is *ne*, which is used only before a verb. Some other word is usually added—generally after the verb, to complete the negation. If the verb is omitted, this other word may stand alone as a negative; but if the verb is expressed, *ne* is always required.

3. The most important of these completing negatives are:

1. The adverbs pas, point, *not*.

Point is stronger than pas, and sometimes gives a different sense; as, je ne chante pas, I am not singing; je ne chante point, I do not sing (at all).

**Note.**—For pas, point, with *de*, see L. IX. But if the negative limits the verb only, not the participle, the article will be used; as, ne versa-t-il pas des larmes? did he *not* shed tears? But, pas de larmes, *no* tears.

2. The adverb *jamais*, *never* ; plus, *no more, no longer* ; as, je ne le vois jamais, I never see him ; je ne lirai plus, I shall read no longer ; or without verb, *jamais*, *never* ; plus de paroles, no more words.

**Note.**—*Pas plus* expresses *comparison* ; as, je ne lirai pas plus que cette page, I shall read no more than this page. *Pas plus que moi*, no more than I.

3. For *personne*, nobody ; rien, nothing ; aucun, nul, no, no one, see L. XVI., XXXIII.

4. *Pas*, point, *jamais*, plus, rien will stand before the participle in a compound tense ; and usually, with *ne*, before an infinitive ; as, je n'ai jamais vu, I have never seen ; pour ne pas voir, in order not to see, etc. *Jamais* often stands emphatically at the head of the sentence ; as, jamais je n'ai vu, etc., never have I seen, etc.

**Remark.**—These words are not originally negative, but have acquired a negative sense by idiomatic use with *ne*. *Un pas* is a step ; *un point*, a point ; *jamais* is properly *ever* ; plus is *more* (L. XXXVIII.) ; for *personne*, rien, see L. XXXIII.

5. *Ne—que*, *not—but, only*, limits the verb with reference to a following object or other predicate adjunct ; as, cela ne coûte que six francs, that costs only six francs ; il n'est que trop juste, he is only too just ; je n'ai parlé que de lui, I have spoken only of him, etc.

**Note.**—If the limitation applies to the verb itself, or to the subject, *only* is *seulement* ; as, entrez seulement, only come in. *Seulement les bons* sont heureux, only the good are happy.

But by employing the verb or the subject as a *predicate* limitation, *ne—que* may be used, thus : Il ne fit que pleurer, he did nothing but weep (only wept) ; ce ne sont que les bons qui sont heureux, (it is) only the good (that) are happy, etc.

6. *Ni, nor*, and *ni—ni*, *neither—nor*, also require *ne* before the verb, and before each of two or more verbs ; as, je ne l'aime ni ne le crains, I neither love nor fear him ; je n'ai vu ni lui ni elle, I have seen neither him nor her.

*Not—either, nor—either*, emphatic, is *non plus* ; as, je ne le ferai pas non plus, I shall not do it either ; ni moi non plus, nor I either.

7. Other completing words or phrases, requiring *ne* before the verb, are *guère*, *little, hardly* ; *nullement*, *not at all* ; *nulle part*, *nowhere*, etc. Similarly may be used the indefinite *quelconque*, *whatever* ; *qui que ce soit*, *whoever* ; *d'autre*



que, other than ; the nouns, goutte, drop ; mot, word ; mie, bit, etc. ; as :

il n'avait guère dix ans, he was hardly ten years old.

je n'ai vu homme quelconque, I have seen no man whatever.

je n'ai d'autre ami que toi, I have no other friend than you.

je ne dirai mot, I'll not say a word ; je ne vois goutte, etc., etc.

**Note.**—Different *completing* negatives may concur, giving however only *one* negative in English ; as, je n'ai jamais rien dit, I have *never* said *anything*, etc. But two *complete* negatives logically exclude each other ; as, on ne peut pas ne pas croire cela, one *cannot not*, *i. e.*, one *must*, believe that.

### NE ALONE WITH THE VERB.

8. In some idioms ne stands before the verb without other completing negative ; as :

1. In some idiomatic phrases ; as, n'importe, no matter ; à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid, etc.

2. Often, with the verbs *cesser*, to *cease* ; *oser*, to *dare* ; *pouvoir*, to *be able* ; *savoir*, to *know* (how) ; as, elle ne cessa de pleurer, she did not cease to weep ; je n'ose lui dire, I dare not tell him, etc. (*Pouvoir* and *savoir*, under Irregular Verbs, Part II.)

3. After *qui*, or *que* (*why*?) in *rhetorical* questions ; as, qui ne croirait cela ? who would not believe that ? Que ne lui parlez-vous ? why don't you speak to him ? etc.

4. With compound tenses of verbs, after *il y a* or *depuis*—*que*, expressing *continuous* time ; as, il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu, or, depuis que je ne l'ai vu, I have not seen him for two months—or it is two months *since I have seen* him. But *il y a deux mois que je ne le vois pas*, or, *depuis que je ne le vois pas*, in *simple* tense. See L. XXXVII. 7.

5. Frequently after *si*, *if* ; as, si je ne me trompe, *unless* I am mistaken, etc.

6. In some subjunctive clauses, which will be explained hereafter. (L. XLIII.)

### NE NOT TRANSLATED.

9. In other idioms, ne will stand alone with the verb where no negative is indicated in the English idiom ; such as :

1. With *il y a* or *depuis*—*que*, above (4) if translated *since*. See Example 4.

2. In the second clause of a comparative sentence, or after *autre*—*que*, *autrement*—*que*, provided the first clause is *affirmative* ; as, il est plus grand qu'il n'était, he is taller than he was ; il parle autrement qu'il ne pense, he speaks otherwise than he thinks. But, il n'est pas plus grand qu'il était—il ne parle pas autrement qu'il agit—where the first clause is *negative*.



3. In some subjunctive clauses, which will be explained hereafter. (L. XLIII.)

### Reading Lesson 32.

1. Je n'ose dire où j'ai été. 2. La vie n'est qu'un éclair dans la nuit de l'éternité. 3. Ni la richesse ni les grandeurs ne nous rendent heureux. 4. Il est mieux de ne pas parler que de parler mal. 5. Jamais on n'aimera un envieux ni un menteur. 6. Pour ne pas se tromper, il faut ne pas être distrait. 7. Pour ne jamais se tromper, il faudrait ne pas être homme. 8. Ne parlez pas autrement que vous pensez. 9. Il ne faut pas écouter des secrets, et n'en point avoir. 10. Non, je ne le lui demanderai jamais. 11. Avez-vous jamais entendu rien de plus beau? Jamais. 12. Il ne cesse de (*to*) gronder et de quereller. 13. Je n'ose le lui dire. 14. Je ne puis me taire (*cannot keep silent*) plus longtemps; jamais je n'y consentirai. 15. On ne sait (*know*) où il demeure. 16. Cet homme ne comprend (*understand*) ni l'Allemand, ni le Français. 17. Il n'y a pas de bonheur sans vertu. 18. Il parle beaucoup mieux qu'il n'écrit. 19. Il est plus riche qu'on ne pense. 20. Il avait des flatteurs, et non des amis. 21. Vous n'aimez pas cet homme; il ne vous aime pas non plus. 22. Vous n'aimez pas les paresseux, ni moi non plus. 23. Nul ne me trompe impunément. 24. Je n'ai jamais rien vu de plus beau que cela. 25. Que ne lui demandez-vous conseil? qui ne s'empresserait de le consulter? 26. Il n'est pas plus malade qu'il était hier. 27. On ne flatte guère ceux dont on n'a pas besoin. 28. Je n'ai écrit qu'à lui, et je ne lui ai écrit que deux fois. 29. Non seulement je l'aime, je l'adore! 30. Dites-lui que je ne lui donnerai plus rien du tout. 31. Je n'ai d'autre désir que de (*to*) vous voir heureuse. 32. Rien ne peut (*can*) empêcher le ravage du temple, si je n'ai cet enfant pour ôtage. 33. Cet enfant ne fait que jouer toute la journée.

### Theme 32.

1. What you demand is unjust; I shall never grant it. 2. I advise you not to (*de*) speak to him. 3. She does not cease to talk and (*de*) laugh. 4. Will you not obey me? Never; no, never! 5. I cannot consent to it. 6. I know not whence (*d'où*) he comes (*vient*). 7. They dared not speak to her of it (*en*). 8. Neither his brother nor his cousin will speak (*pl.*) to him. 9. Do you not fear (*craignez*) his resentment? Not at all. 10. The earth can (*peut*) not suffer two suns, nor Asia two kings, said Alexander. 11. Have you ever seen any one more charming? Never. 12. I cannot (*puis*) answer (*to*) that

question; it is not as easy as it seems. 13. There are but few (*de*) strangers in the town. 14. No money, no friends. 15. One must be blind, not to (*pour*) see that he is unhappy. 16. He is much taller than he was formerly. 17. I trust only you. 18. Mortal, do not forget that thou art but dust. 19. Never was there a happier man than he. 20. Why will you not speak to him? 21. In order not to be unhappy when we (*on*) are old, we must not be idle when we are young. 22. How long is it (*combien y a-t-il*) since you were in France? 23. It is a year and (a) half since I was (have been) there. 24. Why do you not pardon him? Who would not pardon him? 25. If he does not arrive to-day, I shall wait-for him no longer. 26. Never have I seen anybody more foolish than he. 27. I shall not finish more than this exercise before three o'clock. 28. We have only a few words more (*de plus*) to (*à*) write. 29. Only the good are truly great. 30. No one has helped me in my exercise, nor in my translation *either*.

---

## LESSON XL.

### PREPOSITIONS: THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

1. A list of some of the most common prepositions was given L. VIII. Others need not now be specially enumerated.

In addition to the simple prepositions, a number of phrases ending with a preposition are known as *compound prepositions*. Such are *près de*, *auprès de*, near; *autour de*, around; *jusqu'à*, up to, until, etc. These need not be enumerated.

2. The idiomatic uses of the prepositions are numerous, and will often differ widely in different languages. Examples will constantly occur in reading, and will require the careful attention of the student.

**Note.**—The idiomatic peculiarity will be as often in English as in French, for which reason it is often difficult to assign equivalent meanings, in the two languages, to the prepositions. In all cases, however, let only the true *idiomatic form* be used in translation.

3. In many cases, especially with verbs, a preposition is used in the one language and omitted in the other; as, *attendre*, to wait *for*; *écouter*, to listen *to*; *espérer*, to hope *for*, etc., which take only a direct object in French. On

the other hand, obéir à, to obey; ordonner à, to order; résister à, to resist; jouir de, to enjoy, etc., which take a direct object in English. Especially is this the case with the secondary object of *reflexive* verbs. See L. XXXV. 6, 5,

4. In some cases, also, the relations of the two objects with the equivalent verbs will be *reversed* in the two idioms; as, demander quelque chose à quelqu'un, to ask somebody *for* something; reprocher quelque chose à quelqu'un, to reproach somebody *with* something; vous lui inspirez un grand espoir, you inspire *him with* a great hope, etc. (The relation of the objects in French will usually be the same as in Latin.)

5. Sometimes, also, the relation of the object will be different with successive verbs, where no change is indicated in English; as, I love and obey my father—j'aime mon père et je *lui* obéis. In such cases, the object must be expressed in proper form with each verb. See L. XXVIII. 5.

6. The *indirect object*, with or without *to*, is expressed regularly by à (L. VI. 5, 2); or in conjunctive pronouns, by the *indirect* forms alone (L. XXVII.).\* Sometimes, also, this object will have the (Lat. *dative*) sense of *from* or *of*; as, échapper à, to escape *from*; emprunter à, to borrow *of*, etc. (For *from*, *of*, etc., expressed by en, see L. XXVII. 4.)

**Note.**—For some other uses of prepositions, see L. VIII., IX. For the place of prepositions, L. XXXI. 9; for their use in forming compound nouns, L. XLVI.

Besides their use with nouns, prepositions are also used before the present participle and the infinitive of verbs:

### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

7. All prepositions which govern verbs take the infinitive, except en. En is used only with the present participle.

**Note.**—In English, on the other hand, only one preposition, *to*, is used with the simple infinitive; all others require the participial infinitive in -ing, as *in reading*, *by reading*, etc.

8. En with the present participle, sometimes called the *gerund* or *gerundive*, is used to express *simultaneous action*; also the *manner* or *means* of the principal action—English *while*, *in*, *on*, *by*, *as*, etc.; as, elle pleura en me parlant—

---

\* But after verbs of *motion*, à will be expressed with the pronoun; as, venez à moi, come to me; je cours à lui, I ran to him, etc.

en me voyant, etc., she wept *while* (*in*) speaking to me ;—*on* seeing me, *as* she saw me, etc. On apprend en lisant et en écrivant, one learns *by* reading, etc. En must be repeated before each participle.

**Note.**—This construction always refers to the *subject* ; as, je le rencontraï en allant à l'église, I met him while (*I was*) going to church. Je le rencontraï allant à l'église, I met him going—*i. e.*, as he was going—to church.

9. Without en, the present participle corresponds closely to its use in English, simple or compound.

**Note.**—But this must not be confounded with the English *infinitive* (*participial noun*) form in *-ing*, which is usually expressed in French by the infinitive (see 7, above). The participle proper always belongs to a noun, in an adjective relation ; the infinitive form in *-ing* is always *substantive* in character and construction. In the following exercises both forms are introduced, to illustrate their distinction.

10. The present participle, however, is not used as frequently in French as in English—being more commonly expanded into a relative or other dependent clause ; as, I saw a man coming, j'ai vu un homme qui venait—who was coming, etc.—especially when belonging to the *object*.

It is also not used in forming compound tenses—as, am speaking, was speaking, etc. See L. XX. 1.

11. The present participle does not change for gender or number, except when used as a simple adjective, or adjective noun ; as une femme charmante, des filles tremblantes, les mourants, the dying, etc. But, elle entra, charmant tous les spectateurs ; votre mère, me parlant un jour, etc. For the position of the participle as adjective, see L. XVIII.

**Note.**—The participle is not thus construed as an adjective (with agreement) except when used without the idea of time, and without object. The participle with en *never agrees*, and is *never compound*.

### Reading Lesson 33.

1. L'Arve a son embouchure dans le Rhône, au dessous de Genève. 2. On trouve des vins excellents en Bourgogne. 3. Regardez autour de vous, et admirez ces belles montagnes dans le lointain. 4. Je le rencontraï en me promenant dans la rue. 5. Il y a près de New York, sur les bords du Hudson, des maisons de campagne charmantes. 6. Le fort Mifflin est au dessous de Philadelphie, sur le Delaware. 7. Je me promènerai jusqu'à six heures. 8. Attendez-moi, je vous accompagnerai dans votre promenade. 9. Elle cessa de parler (*speaking*) et nous marchâmes en silence. 10. Dans le



silence de la nuit, on entendit un pas qui approchait (*approaching*). 11. Il a été chassé de l'école pour avoir (*having*) menti. 12. Évitez de donner (*giving*) de la peine à ceux que vous aimez. 13. Il ne faut pas nuire à ses (*one's*) amis. 14. Obéissez à vos parents et à vos maîtres en toutes choses. 15. Il faut résister aux tentations. 16. Demandez l'heure qu'il est (*what time it is*) à votre père. 17. Ne reprochez jamais à personne des fautes involontaires. 18. On représente souvent David jouant de (*on*) la harpe. 19. Obligeant nos amis, nous leur prêtâmes de l'argent comptant (*cash*). 20. Comme votre sœur est charmante; comme elle est obligeante! 21. La passion dominante de cet homme c'est l'avarice. 22. En sortant, elle salua tout le monde. 23. Nous marchions lentement, toujours *en* parlant. 24. C'est en fabriquant des soieries que les fabricants de Lyon se sont enrichis. 25. Un méridien est une ligne imaginaire tirée autour de la terre et passant par les deux pôles. 26. Dans cette forêt il y a des loups dévorants. 27. Il résista à l'autorité du maître, et ne lui obéit point. 28. Je lui ai demandé les lettres, mais il ne me les a pas données. 29. Il jouit d'une bonne santé. 30. Il se réjouit des malheurs d'autrui. 31. Le malheureux père lui reprocha la mort de son fils. 32. Il a emprunté de l'argent à son père, mais il n'a pas encore payé (*for*) ses emplettes d'hier.

### Theme 33.

1. This dog barks incessantly around the house. 2. In prosperity we (*on*) have many friends. 3. With patience we triumph over (*de*) all (*the*) difficulties. 4. After the king, the duke advanced with his friends. 5. By working during (*the*) youth, we seek repose (*art.*) for old age. 6. Whilst the professor was-speaking, the students were-playing; they did not listen-to him at all (*point*). 7. A child without innocence is a flower without perfume. 8. In spite-of his anger, they advanced (*en*) playing and dancing, toward the house. 9. All is lost save (*art.*) honor, exclaimed Francis, King of France, after the battle of Pavia. 10. We will talk as we (*en*) walk. 11. Amuse yourself by reading amusing books. 12. Do not stoop to (*à*) lying (*infin.*). 13. We must not reproach him with his loss. 14. These provident men, wishing to arrive in (*à*) time, have set out early. 15. Seeing that it was late, we departed. 16. Having examined the pupils, I left the school. 17. Being impatient, he ceased (*de*) reading (*infin.*) without finishing (*infin.*) the book. 18. She answered, weeping and sobbing. 19. I met him as I was entering (*dans*) the house. 20. I met him going home (*i. e.*, as he



was going home). 21. Studying thus, you will soon speak French. 22. I saw the minister passing before the church. 23. Passing before the church, I saw the minister. 24. We found them smoking their pipes and talking gaily; entering, we saluted them. 25. We were soon surrounded by the conquering enemy (*pl.*). 26. While travelling, let us enjoy (*de*) the beauties of nature. 27. Let us resist the temptations of vice. 28. Let us obey the laws of our country. 29. Listen to me: do not reproach me with the faults of others. 30. This unhappy event has inspired me *with* a great sorrow. 31. Do not ask any one *for* money; I will lend you some myself. 32. Wait for us: we are finishing our exercise at this moment.

## LESSON XLI.

### THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive is a verbal noun, and is construed as such, without or with prepositions.

#### 1. The infinitive is used without preposition :

1. As subject of a verb; as, *manger trop est dangereux*, to eat too much is dangerous.

2. As predicate (*complement*) after *être*, and some neuter verbs (as, *paraître*, to appear; *sembler*, to seem, etc.); as, *te quitter c'est mourir*, to leave thee is to die. *Il paraît être certain*, it appears to be certain, etc.

3. Absolutely, in exclamation, or elliptical question; as, *quoi, fuir!* what, flee! *Pourquoi fuir?* why flee?

4. As object after certain verbs. Such verbs are: verbs of *motion*, as, *come, go, run, send*, etc.; verbs of *sensation*, as, *feel, hear, see*, etc.; verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (including acts and states of the mind); and verbs which correspond to the English auxiliaries before an infinitive: *can, dare, may, must, let, ought*, etc.; and a few others.\*

\* The verbs which are followed by the infinitive without a preposition, though comparatively few in number, are among the most common and familiar verbs. The most important are included in the following list :

|                                     |                             |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>aimer mieux</i> , to prefer.     | <i>avouer</i> , to confess. | <i>croire</i> , to believe. |
| <i>aller</i> , to go.               | <i>compter</i> , to intend. | <i>daigner</i> , to deign.  |
| <i>avoir beau</i> , to try in vain. | <i>courir</i> , to run.     | <i>désirer</i> , to desire. |

**Note.**—This infinitive will be variously translated in English; as, venez me voir, come and see me; envoyez chercher le médecin, send for (to seek) the physician; je crois avoir raison, I think *I am* right; je l'entends chanter, I hear her *singing*, etc. Other forms will be indicated under the Irregular Verbs, Part II.

2. The infinitive will follow the governing verb more closely than in English. A noun object will follow both verbs; as, j'ai vu tomber l'arbre, I saw the tree fall; j'ai ouï dire à mon père, I have heard my father *say*, etc. Pronoun objects (conjunctive) may precede both; as, je l'ai vu tomber, I saw it fall; je le veux voir, I wish to see him; or may stand between the two; as, je veux le voir. See 3, note.

3. After certain verbs, such as *see, hear, cause (have), let*, the infinitive active, if its *subject* is not expressed, will often correspond to the English *passive* idiom; as, je l'ai ouï dire, I have heard it *said*; je le vis tuer, I saw him *killed*; j'ai entendu chanter cette chanson, I have heard that song *sung*; je fais bâtir une maison, I have a house *built* (cause to be built); il laissa écrire cette lettre, he let this letter *be written*, etc. These forms are of frequent occurrence, especially after *faire*. See L. LII. 5.

**Note.**—In these idioms, the infinitive is the true object of the governing verb, and the noun or pronoun is the object of the two verbs jointly. Hence, if a pronoun, it will always precede both; and in compound tenses, the past participle will not change; as, la maison *que* j'ai fait bâtir, the house which I had built; la chanson *que* vous avez entendu chanter, the song which you have heard *sung*. But, cette dame, je l'ai entendue chanter, I heard her *sing*, where *la* is the true object. (L. XXVIII. 6.)

4. But if its subject is expressed, the form of the infinitive will be *active* in English also (as in the last example). This subject will be construed as an object, and will always be *indirect* if any other direct object is expressed; as, je lui ai entendu chanter cette chanson, I have heard *her sing that song*.

devoir, *ought, should*.  
entendre, to hear.  
envoyer, to send.  
espérer, to hope.  
faire, to make, cause, *have*.  
faillir, to miss.  
falloir (il faut), *must*.  
jurer, to swear.

laisser, to let.  
nier, to deny.  
oser, to dare.  
paraître, to appear.  
penser, to think.  
pouvoir, to be able, *can*.  
préférer, to prefer.  
prétendre, to pretend.

savoir, to know (how).  
sembler, to seem.  
sentir, to feel.  
souhaiter, to wish.  
valoir mieux (*imp.*), to be  
venir, to come. [better.  
voir, to see.  
vouloir, to wish.

Some of these verbs have also uses with a preposition before the infinitive; or with different prepositions in different senses. Such idioms are generally indicated in the lexicons. See Irregular Verbs, Part II.

**Note.**—In this case, if both objects precede, the past participle will not change, as already explained; as, *je la lui ai entendu chanter*, I heard her sing it; *je la lui ai fait bâtir*, I made him build it (*maison*); the *true object* of the conjoint verbs being *indirect*.

**5.** The infinitive is used with prepositions (English *to*) :

1. Depending upon nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. The particular preposition will be determined by the sense of the governing word; as, *le désir de vivre*, the desire to live (*of* living); *une maison à vendre*, a house to sell (*for sale*); *assez pour vivre*, enough (*for*) to live; *prêt à mourir*, ready to die (*for death*); *content de mourir*, satisfied to die (*with death*).

2. With *de*, as logical subject, standing in the predicate of être; as, *c'est un grand honneur de mourir ainsi*, to die thus. *Il est facile d'apprendre cette leçon*, to learn this lesson. See L. XXX. 5.

But if the infinitive is *objective* (*i. e.*, passive in sense), and the true subject precedes, *à* must be used; as, *cette leçon est facile à apprendre*, easy to learn (*to be learned*). *Cela est difficile à faire*, that is hard to do (*to be done*).

3. With *de*, or *à*, as object of a verb; as, *il cessa de parler*, he ceased to speak; *il apprend à lire*, he learns to read, etc.

**Remark.**—No sufficient rule can be given for this distinction. Most verbs will require *de* or *à* before an infinitive (see exceptions already given). Lists will be found in the larger grammars, and generally the dictionaries will indicate the usage. Some verbs will take *de* or *à* with a difference of sense.

**Note.**—After a comparative, the second infinitive takes *de*, if the first has no preposition; as, *j'aime mieux mourir que de mentir*, I had rather die than lie; *il vaut mieux périr que de fuir*, it is better to die than to flee. But a preceding preposition will be repeated; as, *plus prêt à mourir qu'à fuir*, etc.

4. With *pour*, *for to*, *in order to*; as, *on lit pour apprendre*, one reads in order to learn; *assez pour vivre*, enough (*for*) to live; *trop jeune pour mourir*, too young to die. *Pour* must always be used if *to=in order to*.

5. Elliptically, with *à*, sometimes with *de*, like the *absolute infinitive* in English; as, *à le voir*, on le croirait insensé, *to see him*, one would think him mad; *de répéter*, to repeat, etc. *So to speak* is *pour ainsi dire*.

**6.** In the sense of the English participial infinitive in *ing* :

With *sans*; as, *sans répondre*, without *replying*; with *par*;

as, il finit par dire, he ended by *saying*; and with compound prepositions; as, avant de partir, before *starting*; loin de vous accuser, far from *accusing* you; de peur de perdre, for fear of *losing*, etc.

**Note 1.**—Par is thus used only after the verbs *commencer* and *finir*. Otherwise *by*, etc., is expressed as in L. XL. 8.

**Note 2.**—After is expressed by après de before the simple infinitive; by après alone before the compound; as, après de fuir, after fleeing; but, après avoir fui, after having fled.

7. Generally, the infinitive, with or without preposition, is used when the subject of both verbs is the same, or when, otherwise, no ambiguity can arise. In other cases, a new clause with *que*, followed by a finite verb (indicative or subjunctive), must be used; as, je crois avoir raison, I think I am right; but je crois que vous avez raison, I think (that) you are right.

In some cases, without ambiguity, either construction may be employed; as, je vous ordonne d'obéir, I order you to obey, or j'ordonne que vous obéissiez (*subj.*), that you obey. Similarly, the subject of the two verbs being the same: je crois avoir raison, or je crois que j'ai raison, etc. Such idiomatic uses must be learned by experience.

**Remark.**—In studying the infinitive, the student must bear in mind the different English forms: 1. The simple infinitive, without *to*; 2. The infinitive with *to*; 3. The participial infinitive in *-ing*. (See also L. XL. 9, note.) The French infinitive may correspond, variously, to all of these.

### Reading Lesson 34.

1. Souffler n'est pas jouer. 2. Prendre le bien d'autrui est coupable. 3. Il faut te conter que j'arrive de Paris. 4. Il semble être nécessaire à l'homme de s'amuser. 5. Allons prendre congé de nos amis. 6. Il envoya chercher le médecin. 7. Demander trop est imprudent. 8. Risquer tout sur un hasard n'est pas être sage. 9. Savoir lire et écrire est absolument nécessaire. 10. Nous allons (*are going to*) entendre un concert instrumental. 11. Cet homme devrait mieux se comporter, sa position peut en (*on it*) dépendre. 12. Il faut toujours aider un plus faible que soi. 13. Elle aime mieux s'amuser que de travailler. 14. Je l'ai envoyé chercher. 15. Avez-vous entendu parler de cette affaire? 16. Il s'est fait faire un habit neuf. 17. L'avocat laissa perdre la cause de cet homme. 18. Je vois tomber les feuilles pour la dernière fois. 19. Le désir de vivre accompagne l'homme jusqu'au tombeau. 20. Moi, aimer cette femme! 21. Nous le forçâmes, pour ainsi dire, à nous suivre. 22. Je vous écris afin d'avoir des nouvelles de votre frère. 23. Elle croit avoir raison, et il serait difficile de la persuader du contraire.



24. Sa vie ne fut, pour ainsi dire, qu'une longue souffrance. 25. Il commença par ôter ses gants et son chapeau. 26. Après avoir parlé sans rime ni raison, il finit par se taire. 27. On peut toujours supporter les malheurs d'autrui avec beaucoup de fortitude. 28. Lui, s'approprier le bien d'autrui! 29. Est-il près de partir pour l'Europe? 30. Sa maison est à vendre. 31. Quoi, punir un innocent! 32. Je connais cette chanson, je l'ai entendu chanter. 33. Comment, fuir au moment de la victoire! 34. Adieu, te quitter c'est mourir! 35. C'est un grand honneur de vous connaître. 36. Il est amusant de regarder les passants pendant un orage. 37. Il est aisé de critiquer, mais souvent difficile de pratiquer. 38. Plus il est facile d'apprendre une chose, moins il est difficile de l'oublier. 39. Avoir de quoi vivre est tout ce que demande un homme modeste. 40. La belle maison que j'ai fait bâtir l'année dernière, est brûlée. 41. Les dames que j'ai vues passer par la rue, sont entrées dans leur maison. 42. Cette lettre, je l'ai vu écrire par votre frère lui-même.

### Theme 34.

1. I am ready to (*à*) lend you some money. 2. He spends his life in (*à*) playing. 3. To die is to rest forever. 4. It is better to be seated than to be standing, to be lying down (*couché*) than to be seated, to be dead than to be lying down; saying (*dire*) of a Persian sage. 5. Taking others' property is forbidden. 6. Taking such liberties is unheard of (*inouï*). 7. To deny his guilt would be risking too much. 8. Too loud talking is ill bred. 9. What! (would you) receive such a man? 10. He likes better to study than to walk. 11. I have had a coat made. 12. The general caused (*fit*) the soldier to be thrown into prison. 13. Riding, hunting, and fishing are his favorite occupations. 14. Experience will prove to you the necessity of reflecting before speaking, and yet more before writing. 15. He wishes to see you before leaving. 16. I thought I should never (never to) meet you. 17. A teacher must punish the child who dares to disobey him. 18. It is difficult to please every one. 19. We should blush to (*de*) do evil, and not to confess it. 20. Where do you get (*faites-vous*) your shoes *made*? 21. Here are some young ladies who delight in (*à*) singing, playing, chatting, and laughing. 22. It is better to give than to receive. 23. Do not trust him, he wishes to deceive you. 24. Before accusing me, you should consult your own conscience. 25. That was to be (*à*) expected. 26. To play is not the aim of life. 27. Time is too precious to be squandered in vain speeches. 28. In order to avoid



confusion, let us proceed methodically. 29. Reading is a pleasant occupation. 30. What! not dare to speak? 31. This man allowed that occasion to pass. 32. That event was, so to speak, the cause of his death. 33. We had to ascend a high hill before reaching the main (principal) peak. 34. He is learning to draw and to paint. 35. The words which I have heard spoken by him, I shall never forget (them). 36. I have heard her sing that song before. 37. I saw the letter written, and I heard (*comp. pres.*) it read. 38. He has allowed our cause to be lost by his negligence. 39. I think I have seen you before: am I not right in (*à*) thinking so (*le*)?

## LESSON XLII.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Conjunctions are in form, *simple*; as *et*, and; *mais*, but; *car*, for, etc.: or *compound*; as *puisque*, since; *parce que*, because; *aussitôt que*, as soon as, etc. Their further classification, as *co-ordinating* or *subordinating*, etc., belongs to the syntax of the complex or compound sentence. Only a few idiomatic forms will be here mentioned:

1. *Both—and* is expressed by *et—et*; as, *et le feu et le fer sont prêts*, both fire and sword are ready.

**Note.**—*And*, after a verb of motion, is sometimes idiomatic; as, *come and see me, venez me voir (infin.)*. See L. XLI. 1.

2. *Either—or*, is *ou—ou*; as, *ou le roi ou la reine sera ici*, either the king or the queen will be here. *Ou nous vaincrons ou nous mourrons*, either we will conquer or we will die.

3. *Neither—nor*, is *ni—ni*, with *ne* before the verb; as, *je n'ai vu ni le roi ni la reine*, I have seen neither the king nor the queen. Two subjects connected by *ni—ni* take the verb in the plural, if *both* are excluded; but singular, if they are excluded *alternately*; as, *ni le roi ni la reine ne seront ici*; but, *ni lui ni elle ne gagnera le prix*.

**Note.**—The article is generally omitted after *ni—ni*; as, *il n'a ni argent ni amis*; *ni honneur ni devoir*, neither honor nor duty.

4. *Not only—but (also)* is *non seulement—mais (aussi)*, without *ne*; as, *il est non seulement riche mais avare aussi*, not only rich but, etc.

2. The conditional *si*, *if*, is followed regularly by the indicative mood :

1. In a simple present or future condition, by the *present* tense ;

2. In a condition represented as *unreal*, or as merely *assumed*, by the *imperfect* ;

3. In a condition implied as *real* or true, by the present, imperfect, or preterit, as the sense may require ; and similarly, by the respective compound tenses, as :

1. S'il est ici (or s'il vient), je le verrai, If he is here (or if he comes), I shall see him.

S'il est venu, je lui parlerai, If he has come, I will speak to him.

2. S'il était ici (or s'il venait), je lui dirais, if he were here (or if he *should* come), I should tell him.

S'il avait été ici, je lui aurais dit, if he had been here, I should have told him.

3. S'il est ici, je ne le verrai pas, if he *is* here, I will not see him.

S'il lisait, je ne le savais pas, if he *was* reading, I did not know it.

Si j'osai le faire, pardonnez-moi, if I dared (*did* dare) to do it, pardon me, etc.

**Note 1.**—Sometimes in (2) the past subjunctive, or its compound, is used instead of the imperfect indicative, or its compound ; as, s'il eût été ici, etc. For the conditional in these forms, see L. XX. 5.

**Note 2.**—Thus *si*, expressing *condition*, can never be used with the future, nor with the present subjunctive, as in English. See 4, note.

**Note 3.**—But *si* (*if* = *whether*) may be used with the future, in a dependent question ; as, je ne sais s'il viendra, I don't know whether he will come. Elsewhere *whether* is *soit* or *soit que*.

4. Like the English *if*, *si* is sometimes omitted, the condition being indicated by placing the subject after the verb (inversion) ; as, était-il (fût-il) ici, were he here, etc. This form will be used only when no ambiguity is possible.

3. Quand (*when*) is used with the *conditional* in the sense of *though* ; quand vous auriez raison—though you were (should be) right, etc.

4. Que—used also as pronoun and as adverb—has a variety of uses as a conjunction :

1. In the sense of *that*, connecting clauses, it must never be omitted ; as, I think (that) you are right, je crois *que* vous avez raison.

2. In relations of time, *when, since, until*, instead of the more specific conjunctions, after definite expressions of time; as, *une nuit que je ne dormais pas*—one night when (lorsque) I did not sleep. *Il y a deux ans que je ne l'ai vu*; it is two years since (depuis que) I saw him, etc. (L. XXXIX. 8.)

3. *Que* is used in place of the repetition of other dependent conjunctions, *si, comme, quand, lorsque*, and other compounds of *que*; as, *comme il est malade et qu'il souffre beaucoup*, since he is sick and (since he) suffers much. *Quand il viendra et que je le verrai*, when he shall come, and (when) I shall see him, etc.

*Que* replacing *si, if*, requires the subjunctive; as, *s'il m'obéit et qu'il réponde à ma lettre*; if he obeys me, and answers my letter. *S'il venait et qu'il me demandât*—If he should come and ask me.

For other uses of *que* with the subjunctive, see L. XLIII.

5. Compound conjunctions are formed with *que*, added generally to an adverb or a preposition; as, *bien que*, although; *pendant que*, while; *tant que*, as long as; *depuis que*, since; *pour que*, in order that; *sans que*, without, unless, etc. Most of the phrases ending in *de* or *à*, as compound prepositions (L. XLI. 1, 6), have corresponding forms ending in *que*, as compound conjunctions; as, *afin que*, in order that; *avant que*, before (that); *loin que*; *jusqu'à ce que*, etc.

**Note.**—*Lorsque, when*; *puisque, since*; *quoique, although*, though compounds, are written in one word. *Quoique* must not be confounded with the pronoun *quoi que*—*whatever*; nor the conjunction *parce que, because*, with the phrase, *par ce que, by that which, or what*.

6. As already remarked (L. XLI. 7) the conjunctive forms with the finite verb must be used (instead of the infinitive) whenever the sense requires the introduction of a new clause. The finite verb will be indicative or subjunctive according to the sense. See L. XLIII.

### Reading Lesson 35.

1. Si le temps est beau demain, je vous accompagnerai. 2. Je suis heureux, parce que tous mes vœux sont accomplis. 3. Je n'aime pas cet homme, parce qu'il m'a trompé. 4. Tant qu'on est dans la prospérité, il faut se préparer à l'adversité. 5. Demandez-le-lui,

lorsque vous le rencontrerez. 6. Je lui en parlerai si je le vois (*see*). 7. Soit par bonté, soit par faiblesse, il accorde tout à cet enfant. 8. Les animaux n'inventent ni n'améliorent rien. 9. Je crois qu'il arrivera demain. 10. Avant que Dieu eût (*subj.*) créé le monde, rien n'existait excepté Dieu. 11. Ou lui ou sa sœur arrivera demain. 12. Ou il obéira ou il partira. 13. On n'est jamais si heureux ni si malheureux qu'on s'imagine. 14. Ni l'orange ni le citron ne mûrissent dans nos climats. 15. Quand on travaille bien, on fait bien des progrès. 16. Quand je suis avec mon ami, je ne suis plus seul. 17. On est blâmable quand on a des talents et qu'on refuse d'en faire usage. 18. Comme la vie est courte, et que nos jours sont comptés, épargnons le temps. 19. Si vous rencontrez un sage, et qu'il vous choisisse (*subj.*) pour son ami, estimez-vous heureux. 20. Il ne fait pas juger les hommes par ce qu'ils ignorent, parce que ce serait être injuste. 21. Je vous en donnerais volontiers si j'en avais. 22. Je ne sais (*know*) s'il partira aujourd'hui ou demain. 23. Soit qu'il arrive ou non, je ne l'attendrai pas plus longtemps. 24. Si vous aviez mieux étudié votre leçon, vous la réciteriez mieux. 25. Et tout mon honneur et tous mes biens sont dans vos mains. 26. Quand je perdrais tout, je n'abandonnerai jamais mes amis. 27. Tant que vous serez ici, vous demeurerez chez moi. 28. Je vous montrerai la lettre aussitôt que je l'aurai lue (*read*). 29. Puisqu'il est malade, nous ne l'éveillerons pas. 30. Ni honneurs ni places ne les contentent plus. 31. Ni lui ni son ami ne me plaisent (*please*).

### Theme 35.

1. We love the memory of Washington, because he was good as well as great. 2. The teacher is satisfied with his scholars when they are diligent; but if they are idle, he is not satisfied with them (*en*). 3. Since they are here, I will give them a lesson. 4. We shall not walk to-day, for it is raining. 5. Ask him if that is true; he will neither confess nor (*ni ne*) deny. 6. Though (*quand*) he were right, I should not give it to him. 7. Some one has stolen my watch, while I was absent. 8. Although (*quoique*) ambition is (*soit*) a vice, it is sometimes the cause of great deeds. 9. Whether to-day or to-morrow, you must consent at last. 10. If you desire to be happy, love virtue. 11. As long as I (shall) have money, you shall not want (*manquer*) any (*en*). 12. Both he and his brother are here. 13. Neither love nor duty will persuade him. 14. If you had been there, I should have remained longer. 15. Have you heard whether he will remain here, or whether (*ou si*) he will



depart? 16. Before starting, he demanded both his money and his letters. 17. If that were true, I should ask nothing of him (*lui*). 18. He thought his father would forgive him. 19. Since you leave for New York to-morrow, go *and* see Mr. W. for me. 20. Though you are right it is not necessary to be angry. 21. I hope to receive a letter from you soon, and *that* you will arrive in a few days. 22. As soon as I (shall) have finished my exercises, I will play with you. 23. If you have committed (*commis*) a fault, confess it frankly. 24. If I dared to offend you, I pray you to (*de*) pardon me. 25. If the Romans were brave, they were wise also. 26. If he should come, and I should be absent, beg him to wait-for me.

---

## LESSON XLIII.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Remark.**—The treatment of conjunctions involves, in part, the use of the *subjunctive mood*. This subject cannot be fully explained within the limits of an elementary work. Only such of the uses will be given as may suffice for essential illustration. Others will be found explained in the larger grammars.

*Let the subjunctive paradigms be now carefully reviewed.*

1. The French subjunctive has no equivalent idiom in English, and there is no English form which regularly, or even usually, corresponds to it. (See verb paradigms, L. XX., etc.) It is translated, according to circumstances, by the English indicative, subjunctive, imperative, infinitive, or by auxiliary forms, *may*, *shall*, *will*, etc. Hence great care is necessary to learn its use, and its idiomatic translation.

2. The subjunctive, as the name implies, is used mainly in dependent (*subjoined*) clauses, and in relation to a leading or principal verb. The tense of the subjunctive depends upon the tense of the leading verb. Present or future tenses require the present tense of the subjunctive; past tenses, or the conditional, require the past tense of the subjunctive. This rule applies equally to the compound tenses.

It must be borne in mind that the compound present (like the Latin *perfect*) is sometimes a *present perfect*, sometimes simply a *past* tense (*aurist*). See L. XX.



## EXAMPLES.

Je ne pense pas que vous ayez raison, that you are right.  
 “ “ que vous ayez eu raison, that you have been right.  
 Je ne pensai pas que vous eussiez raison, that you were right.  
 “ “ que vous eussiez eu raison, that you had been right.  
 Je n'ai pas pensé que vous eussiez raison, that you were right.  
 Qui penserait qu'il eût raison, that he was right.  
 etc. etc. etc.

**Note.**—If, however, a subjunctive, following a present tense, is used with reference to a condition expressed by the imperfect (L. XL. 2, 2), it will be construed in the *past* tense; and similarly if such condition is *implied*; as:

Je ne pense pas que vous eussiez raison, si vous demandiez cela, I do not think you would be right, if you asked that.

Je ne pense pas qu'il eût tenté cela, sans votre aide, that he would have tried that, without your aid.

**Remark.**—The above examples illustrate only the simplest cases. The general principle remains, however, always the same, and must be carefully studied in the different forms met with in reading. The *relation of time* between the two verbs *must be always carefully regarded*.

**3.** The use of the subjunctive depends properly upon the notion of some contingency or doubt involved in the verb, or in its relation to the principal verb. But as this is often indicated by the conjunction, some conjunctions, by habitual use, are said to *govern* (or *require*) the subjunctive. Such are the compounds:

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| avant que, before.                 | jusqu'à ce que, until.                    |
| bien que, } although.              | loin que, far from.                       |
| quoique, }                         | de peur que ( <i>ne</i> ), for fear that. |
| afin que, }                        | pourvu que, provided that.                |
| pour que, } in order that.         | sans que, without, unless.                |
| à moins que ( <i>ne</i> ), unless. | soit que, whether.                        |

And others of like signification, as:

avant qu'il vienne, before he comes.  
 jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne, until he comes.  
 soit qu'il vienne, whether he comes.  
 pourvu qu'il vienne, provided (that) he comes.  
 j'écris pour que vous appreniez, in order that you may learn, etc.

For à moins que, etc., with *ne*, see 8.

**4.** The subjunctive clause, being *dependent*, is generally introduced by *que* (as in these compounds), or by some other

subordinating (or *relative*) word. As already seen, this connective, even though not expressed in English, must not be omitted in French.

5. The following are some of the principal uses of the subjunctive :

1. In clauses apparently independent, but really elliptical, expressing a *wish, command, concession* ; as, que Dieu te bénisse, (may) God bless thee ; qu'il finisse sa leçon, let him finish his lesson ; qu'il vienne ou non, whether he come or not.

**Note.**—Sometimes also, idiomatically, without que, if the subject is impersonal, or follows the verb ; as, plaise à Dieu, please God ; plutôt à Dieu, would God ; puissiez-vous être heureux, may you be happy ; dussé-je mourir, should I die (irr. verbs, plaire, pouvoir, devoir).

2. After the indefinite pronouns qui que, *whoever* ; quoi que, *whatever* ; the adjective, quel que, *whatever* ; the adverb, quelque—que, *however* ; and the phrases qui que ce soit que, quoi que ce soit qui, etc. ; as, qui que vous soyez, whoever you are ; quoi que vous demandiez, whatever you ask ; quelles que soient vos promesses, whatever are your promises ; quelque grands qu'ils soient, however great they are, etc.

3. After *impersonal* expressions (instead of the infinitive, L. XLI. 7), as, il est impossible qu'on croie (for de croire) ; il faut que nous finissions (for il nous faut finir), etc.

The subjunctive form *must* be used if the dependent subject is a *noun* ; as, il faut que Jean finisse sa leçon. See L. XXXVIII. 11.

4. In dependent clauses, limiting an *indefinite, interrogative, negative, exclusive, or superlative* statement ; as :

Je cherche quelqu'un qui fasse cela. I seek some one *to do* that.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui croie cela ? Do you know any one that believes that ?

Je ne connais personne qui croie cela. I do not know any one that, etc.

C'est le seul tableau que j'aie acheté. It is the only picture that I have bought.

C'est le plus bel homme que je connaisse. He is the handsomest man that I know.

**Note.**—But the indicative will be used if the dependent clause states a *definite fact* ; as, je connais quelqu'un qui croit cela, *who* believes that ;

connaissez-vous l'homme qui a dit cela? *who* said that; c'est le plus jeune écolier qui a gagné le prix, *who* has gained the prize. (Note here the relative *who*, *which*, in English, instead of *that*.)

5. Likewise after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, etc., when used negatively or interrogatively; as, croyez-vous que j'aie raison? je ne crois pas que vous ayez raison, I do not think you are right, etc.

But here also the indicative will be used if a distinct *fact* is stated or implied; as, il ne savait pas que son père était mort, he did not know that his father was dead (when he *was*).

6. Similarly, after verbs expressing *denial*, or *doubt*, if affirmative, or negative-interrogative (*implying affirmative*); as, je nie—je doute—que cela soit vrai, I deny—or I doubt—that that is true. Ne niez-vous pas—ne doutez-vous pas—que cela soit vrai? do you not deny—or doubt—that that is true?

But these verbs, if themselves negative or *simply* interrogative, will take *ne* with the subjunctive; as, je ne nie pas—niez-vous—que cela *ne* soit vrai, I do not deny—do you deny—that that is true.

7. Also, *with ne*, after verbs of *fearing*, *prohibition*, *hindrance*, etc.; as, je crains qu'il ne vienne; ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne? I fear—do you not fear, that he will come? j'empêcherai qu'il ne vienne, I will prevent him from coming, etc.

But if the verb of *fearing* be negative, or *simply* interrogative, *ne* will be omitted; as, je ne crains pas—or craignez-vous—qu'il vienne, I do not fear—do you fear—that he will come, etc. The *negative-interrogative* is construed as implying an *affirmative*.

**Note.**—In these two cases (6, 7) the use of *ne* with reference to a preceding negative is *reversed*; and in neither is *ne* translated in English. (L. XXXIX. 9.)

In both cases, however, if the subjunctive is itself negative, *ne pas* will *always* be used; as, je crains—or je ne crains pas—qu'il ne vienne pas, that he will *not* come; je nie—or je ne nie pas—qu'il ne soit pas venu, that he *has not* come, etc.

8. *Ne, not translated*, is used with the subjunctive also after some compound conjunctions, expressing *negation*, *doubt*, *fear*, etc.; as, à moins que, *unless*; de crainte—de peur—que, *for fear that*; or que, in the sense of *avant que*, *before*; sans que, *without, unless*; as:

A moins qu'il ne vienne, unless he comes.

De crainte qu'il ne vienne, for fear that he will come.

Je ne sortirai pas qu'il ne vienne, I shall not go before, *or* unless, he comes, etc.

9. Ne, *not*, without pas, is used with the subjunctive limiting negatively an antecedent clause which is itself negative, or implies a negative (or *exclusive* idea, see 4) ; as :

Il n'y a personne qui ne croie cela, there is nobody who does not believe that.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne croie cela ? is there any one ? etc.

Il est peu d'hommes qui ne soient flatteurs—few men who are not flatterers.

Je ne fais jamais cela que je ne le regrette, I never do that, that I do not regret it, etc.

10. Generally, after verbs expressing *subjective* actions or states ; such as *wish, expectation, joy, sorrow, surprise*, etc. : or implying *contingency* ; such as *request, permission, concession, purpose*, etc. ; as :

Je veux qu'il vienne, I wish him *to* come.

Attendez qu'il vienne, wait *for* him *to* come.

Je regrette qu'il soit venu, I regret that he has come.

Permettez—ordonnez—qu'il vienne, permit—order—him to come.

J'écris pour que vous veniez, I write in order that you may come, etc.

**General Remark.**—As already stated, and as indicated by the foregoing examples, the subjunctive is variously translated into English—in many cases by idioms which give no indication of *contingency*, etc. For this reason great care must be used in its study and in its translation. The foregoing rules—and the following exercises—indicate only the most general uses : others will be found in the more complete grammars or in reading. The student of Latin will be much assisted by his knowledge of the Latin subjunctive, on which the French idiom is founded.

### Reading Lesson 36.\*

I.—1. Que la foudre m'écrase si je mens (*lie*). 2. Venez, que je vous dise (*let me tell*) la vérité. 3. Plût à Dieu qu'Athalie oubliât un enfant innocent. 4. Fût-il (*were he*) le Dieu des combats, il ne

---

\* In the following exercises, irregular forms occur from the following verbs : craindre, croire, dire, écrire, faire, lire, plaie, prendre, recevoir, venir, voir, vouloir. See list of irregular verbs, at end of Part II.



me desobéira pas. 5. Quelle que soit votre confiance en lui, il vous trompera. 6. Dans quelque haut rang que vous soyez placé, n'oubliez jamais que vous êtes homme. 7. Il fallait que cette révolution arrivât. 8. Il importe que vous gardiez ce secret. 9. Il est juste qu'un meurtrier périsse. 10. Il semble que ce mal soit sans remède. 11. Il suffit que vous me commandiez; j'obéirai sans hésiter. 12. C'est assez qu'on ait fait un tel sacrifice pour vous; ne demandez pas plus. 13. C'est dommage que le temps ne soit pas beau. 14. Il n'est rien qui rafraîchisse le sang comme une bonne action. 15. Il est peu d'écrivains pour qui on n'ait eu à rougir. 16. Il n'est aucun de ses sujets qui ne hasardât (*would not*) sa vie pour un tel souverain. 17. Néron était le premier empereur qui ait persécuté les chrétiens. 18. L. était le plus méchant citoyen qui fût dans la république. 19. Je ne dis pas que vous ayez tort, mais je ne crois pas non plus que vous ayez raison. 20. J'ignore que cela soit vrai. 21. Quelques-uns nient qu'il y ait des peines après la mort. 22. Est-il vrai que nos lettres ne soient pas arrivées? 23. Ne craignez-vous pas que ces murs en tombant ne vous écrasent? 24. Je tremble qu'on ne vous voie ici. 25. La pluie empêcha qu'on ne s'allât promener. 26. Je crains qu'il ne soit arrivé quelque grand malheur. 27. Prenez garde (*take care*) qu'on ne vous trahisse. 28. En lisant votre lettre, je crains que vous ne soyez pas heureux. 29. Ne craignez pas que je me livre trop à mes douleurs. 30. Craignez-vous que je vous abandonne?

II.—1. Je désire que vous acceptiez son offre. 2. Je doute que vous gardiez cette place. 3. Nous sommes bien aises que vous vous portiez si bien. 4. Obéissez si vous désirez qu'on vous obéisse. 5. Je regrette que cela soit ainsi. 6. Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rende ce service. 7. Ils attendaient que je fusse prêt. 8. Dites-lui qu'il attende un peu. 9. Je suis étonné que ton ami ne soit pas encore parti. 10. Votre mère s'afflige que vous lui écriviez si rarement. 11. Ne lisez que des livres qui vous soient utiles. 12. Attendez jusqu'à ce que je finisse mon thème. 13. Qu'il vienne ou non, cela ne changera rien. 14. Je ne vous aiderai pas, que vous ne confessiez vos fautes. 15. Il est impossible que vous finissiez votre thème avant que nous partions. 16. Vous ne sortirez pas, à moins que vous ne finissiez votre thème avant trois heures. 17. Elle a faim, quoi qu'elle ait déjà déjeuné. 18. Travaillez afin que vous soyez libre. 19. Il travaillait quoiqu'il fût bien malade. 20. Cachez-vous de peur que le maître ne vous trouve ici. 21. Pourvu que vous arriviez avant lui, tout sera bien. 22. Sparte (*Sparta*) était



sobre avant que Socrate eût loué la sobriété. 23. Vous ne jouerez pas sans que je vous le permette. 24. Parlez-lui pour qu'il y arrive à temps. 25. Quoi qu'il ait tort, il ne faut pas pour cela qu'il soit puni. 26. Elle partit sans que je lui parlasse. 27. Loin que le maître lui fit (*faire*) des reproches, il le loua devant tout le monde. 28. Si vous avez besoin d'argent, et que vous m'en demandiez, je vous en prêterai volontiers. 29. Finissons, afin que l'on ne nous punisse. 30. Je vous prêterai mon livre à condition que vous me le rendiez demain.

### Theme 36.

I.—1. Let the guilty (*pl.*) be punished. 2. May our enemies not triumph over (*de*) us. 3. Were he here, I should tell him what I think. 4. Had he been wise, he would not have acted thus. 5. Heaven preserve me from such a fate! 6. Should I (*dussé-je*) lose all my property, I will never betray a friend. 7. Whoever has said that, it (*ce*) is not true. 8. Whatever you may think of it, I shall continue in my course. 9. However great men may be, they are not superior to the laws. 10. Napoleon, however great he was, was not a true hero. 11. With (*de*) whatever excuse you may flatter yourself, his conduct is shameful. 12. The guilty must be (*faut*) punished for their crimes. 13. It is important that you answer this letter to-day. 14. It was impossible that the letter should arrive in time. 15. It seems that they have heard nothing of it. 16. It is not enough that one should know (*sache*) what is just; one must practise it too. 17. Is it just that we should be punished for their crimes? 18. Is there any one that believes that he is not faithful to me? 19. Virtue is the only good that cannot be (*on ne puisse*) taken-from us. 20. She is the dearest friend (that) I have ever had. 21. The present is the only time of which man is the master. 22. This is the last letter I ever received from him. 23. There are few writers that have been more eloquent than he. 24. Is it true that the war has already begun? 25. Do you doubt that he is my friend? 26. I do not deny that he is your friend, but I doubt that his advice is good. 27. Does any one believe that the soul of man is not immortal? 28. Do not fear that that will happen; it (*ce*) is impossible. 29. Do you not fear that your letters have been lost? 30. I do not fear that they have been lost; but I fear they will not arrive in time. 31. The army will prevent the enemy from approaching the city. 32. Take care lest the rain surprise you (*surprenne*).

II.—1. The teacher desires us to be more attentive. 2. He desired that we should finish our exercises before he left. 3. I beg that you will accompany me to the town. 4. I regret that it is impossible for me (*que*) to go with you. 5. I am glad that your exercise has been so well written. 6. I am astonished that you have not yet received my letter. 7. The king ordered that all the generals should be rewarded. 8. I pray that God may bless you always. 9. What do you command me (*que*) to do—what did you command me to do? 10. The thief deserves to be (*qu'on*) punished—deserved to be punished. 11. Speak louder, that I may hear you. 12. I wish every one to understand that I am master here. 13. Let no one speak, unless (*que—ne*) I have spoken to him. 14. The generals sent ambassadors to (*qui*) consult the oracle. 15. I seek some friend who will give me (a) good advice. 16. Seek a wife who shall render you happy—not a coquette who shall amuse you. 17. Choose words which shall express clearly your thoughts, whatever they may be. 18. Ask JOHN to wait till I have finished my exercise. 19. It is impossible for him to (*que*) wait longer; he must go at once. 20. Whether he wait-for me or not, I ask that he will return my books. 21. I was still impatient, although I had received your letter. 22. Although you wrote so cheerfully, I still feared you were not happy. 23. Unless we arrive (*ne*) too late, we shall find him at home. 24. Order him to depart in order that we may be quiet. 25. Do not speak again until I give you (the) permission. 26. I ordered that he should not speak again until I gave him permission. 27. So far from (*loin que*) obeying me, he pretended that he had not heard me. 28. I will write to you again before I start. 29. He hid the book, for fear the teacher would find it. 30. He lent me the money without my asking it. 31. If the weather is good to-morrow, and *if* (*que*) my father does not forbid it, I will accompany you. 32. I sent him a message, in order that he might be present. 33. In case you do not receive your book by the post, I will lend you mine, in order that you may study your lesson, provided you will return it promptly. 34. This exercise is too long for (*pour que*) one to finish (it) in an hour, unless one (*ne*) works very rapidly.

## LESSON XLIV.

## THE NUMERALS.

The French numerals present some peculiarities of form and use which require particular attention. They have been reserved until this time in order that they may be more thoroughly learned.

1. The numerals to 12 were given L. XVI. Then follow :

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| treize, 13.   | dix-sept, 17. |
| quatorze, 14. | dix-huit, 18. |
| quinze, 15.   | dix-neuf, 19. |
| seize, 16.    | vingt, 20.    |

**Note.**—Dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf are compounds.

2. The units are added after the tens, with hyphen, thus :

|                       |
|-----------------------|
| vingt-un, 21.         |
| vingt-deux, 22.       |
| vingt-trois, 23, etc. |

**Note.**—Before un, *et* is sometimes inserted ; as, vingt-et-un, 21, etc.

3. The other multiples of 10 are simple up to 60 ; but 70, 80, 90, are compound :

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| trente, 30.    | soixante-dix, 70 (sixty-ten).           |
| quarante, 40.  | quatre-vingts, 80 (four-twenties).      |
| cinquante, 50. | quatre-vingt-dix, 90 (four-twenty-ten). |
| soixante, 60.  |   |

**Note.**—Quatre-vingts (80) loses its *s* before an added number.

4. Except to 70 and 90, the units are added as to vingt ; thus, trente-(et)-un, 31, quatre-vingt-un, 81, etc. But from 60 to 80, and from 80 to 100, the units are added up to 19 (the count being by *scores* of 20), thus :

|                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| soixante-dix, 70.      | quatre-vingt-dix, 90.      |
| soixante-onze, 71.     | quatre-vingt-onze, 91.     |
| soixante-douze, 72.    | quatre-vingt-douze, 92.    |
| soixante-treize, 73.   | quatre-vingt-treize, 93.   |
| etc. etc. etc.         | etc. etc. etc.             |
| soixante-dix-neuf, 79. | quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, 99. |

(The forms being obviously compounds, as 99 = four-twenty-nine-teen, etc.)

### 5. From 100, as follows :

cent, *a* hundred (without *un*).

cent un, 101.

cent deux, 102.

deux cents, 200.

trois cents, 300.

etc.

But cents loses *s* before an added number; as, deux cent vingt-cinq = 225.

**Note.**—Only *tens* and *units* are joined by the hyphen.

### 6. From 1,000 :

mille, *a* thousand (without *un*).

deux mille, 2,000 (without *s*), etc.

dix mille, 10,000, etc.

*Mil* is used in *dates*; as, l'an mil sept cent cinquante-huit, the year 1758.

7. Un million, deux millions, etc., are nouns, and take *de* before a noun; as, deux millions d'hommes, 2,000,000 men.

8. The ordinals, except premier and second (L. XVI.), are formed from the cardinals by adding -ième, final *e* being dropped. In compounds the ending is added only to the last member; and the plurals vingts, cents, drop *s*; as, le, la troisième, treizième, vingt-deuxième, quatre-vingtième, deux centième, etc., the 3d, 13th, 22d, 80th, 200th, etc.

Cinq forms cinquième, and neuf, neuvième.

**Note.**—The ordinals are thus abbreviated: 1<sup>er</sup> (premier), 1<sup>ère</sup> (première), 2<sup>me</sup> (deuxième), 3<sup>me</sup> (troisième), etc.

9. The ordinals, above quatrième, are used as *partitives* or *fractionals*; as, le cinquième, the fifth (part), etc.

A *fourth* (a quarter) is un quart; a *third*, un tiers; as, le tiers de cette somme, a third of this sum; un quart d'heure, a quarter of an hour.

*Half* is demi, which is written unchanged (with hyphen) before a noun, but agrees in gender after a noun; as, une demi-heure, a half hour; but deux heures et demie, two hours and a half. La moitié, the half, is a noun.

10. Repetition or multiplication is expressed by une fois, once; deux fois, twice; trois fois, thrice, three times, etc.; as, deux fois six font onze, twice six is (make) twelve, etc.

11. Collectives are the nouns dixaine, douzaine, vingtaine, centaine, etc.; as, une douzaine—deux douzaines—d'œufs, one dozen—two dozen—eggs. They are often used



*approximately*, in place of the cardinals; as, *une vingtaine d'années*, about 20 years etc.,

12. Numeral adverbs are regularly formed from the ordinals; as, *premièrement*, firstly; *deuxièmement*, secondly, etc.

**Remark.**—In addition to the following exercises, the student should be required to express numbers in various combinations, and to read numerical figures into French words. These exercises should be repeated until numbers can be freely read or written from figures, at sight. For reference and review a connected table of numerals is added in an appendix. (p. 228).

### Reading Lesson 37.

1. Il n'y a qu'une centaine de soldats dans la forteresse; jamais ils ne se défendront contre une armée de cinq mille cinq cents hommes d'infanterie, huit cent quatre-vingts de cavalerie, avec vingt et une pièces de canons et une douzaine de mortiers. 2. Trois fois trente-trois font quatre-vingt-dix-neuf. 3. Nous avons quatre-vingts vaisseaux de guerre prêts à faire voile, nous en aurons bientôt deux cents. 4. La moitié de quinze est sept et demi. 5. Les demi-mesures n'ont plus d'utilité. 6. Ils m'ont promené d'une rue à l'autre pendant deux heures et demie. 7. Les premiers arrivés seront les premiers servis. 8. La seconde rue à droite est la rue Vivienne. 9. C'est la dixième fois au moins que je vous répète cette règle. 10. Quelques personnes superstitieuses pensent qu'il est de mauvais augure d'être treize à table. 11. La semaine a sept jours, le mois a trente jours, et l'an a 365 jours. 12. Le peuple Juif était composé de douze tribus, dont dix ont disparu (*disappeared*) pendant la captivité sans laisser de (*any*) traces. 13. L'Académie Française est composée de quarante membres. 14. Le mètre représente la dix millionième partie du quart du méridien. 15. Frappez à la huitième porte du premier corridor. 16. Douze fois onze font cent trente-deux. 17. La livre sterling contient vingt schellings, le schelling douze deniers et le denier quatre liards. 18. Une lieue de France est égale à trois milles d'Angleterre. 19. Les milles d'Allemagne sont de quinze au degré. 20. Des centaines de personnes furent tuées par cet accident. 21. Prêtez-moi quatre-vingt-un dollars; je vous en rendrai le double dans quinze jours. 22. Huit et trois font onze. 23. Cent moins deux font quatre-vingt-dix-huit. 24. Quatre fois neuf font trente-six. 25. Six fois trente font cent quatre-vingts. 26. Donnez à cette pauvre femme une demi-bouteille de vin, quatre livres de pain, et quatre livres et quart de



viande. 27. Nous parlerons premièrement de vos affaires; deuxièmement des nôtres, et troisièmement de celles d'autrui. 28. Vous trouverez ces mots au commencement du 10<sup>me</sup> chapitre du 3<sup>me</sup> tome, page 347.

### Theme 37.

1. There were on this table  $9\frac{1}{2}$  florins in (*en*) 12 coins, and now I find only 7 florins in ten coins; where is the rest of the money? 2. Twice 8 is (*font*) 16, and four times 8 is 32. 3. You ask for this book three times its just price; I will not buy it. 4. Is it true that you have lost at (*aux*) cards several *hundreds* of francs? 5. No, sir, I lost only about 10 dollars. 6. We have received to-day about 12 letters. 7. What is the half of sixty? 8. I have gained 100 francs and my friend 50 sovereigns. 9. In a bee-hive there are generally 50,000 cells. 10. The first voyage round the world was made in 1580. 11. A leap-year has 366 days, a common year has 365. 12. The national library in Paris has a million and a half (*of*) volumes, and the royal library in Dresden has five hundred and thirty thousand volumes. 13. I have walked 20 miles to-day. 14. The Russian empire has at least 70,930,000 inhabitants and 99,200 square miles. 15. At the beginning of the 14th century the number of streets in Paris was only three hundred. 16. In (*en*) 1800 Napoleon was victor in the battle of Marengo; in 1805 he beat the Austrians and Russians in the battle of Austerlitz; he then beat the Prussians in 1806 at the battle of Jena. 17. You will find this passage in *Phèdre*, (*a*) tragedy by Racine, 4th act, 2d scene. 18. What place have you in your class? 19. I am the eighteenth, and my brother is the eleventh in the class. 20. 16 and 27 make 43. 21. Twice 97 is 194. 22. The fourth part of 200 is 50. 23.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  is  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 10. 24. The half of these apples are not ripe. 25. He remained two hours and a half. 26. Let us consider, firstly, the causes, and lastly the consequences, of this conduct. 27. In 1876 was celebrated the 100th anniversary of (the) American independence. 28. We have finished the 37th exercise. (Write all numbers *in words*.)

---

## LESSON XLV.

### USE OF THE NUMERALS—DATES, ETC.

1. Of the cardinals only *un*, *une*, varies for gender, and only *quatre-vingts* (80) and the multiples of cent (*deux cents*,

200, etc.) take the plural ending *s*, when not followed by another number. The *s* is dropped in these cases also when the numbers express *date* or *succession*, not actual *count*; as, l'an mil sept cent, the year 1700. Numéro deux cent quatre-vingt, No. 280.

2. The ordinals are commonly used with the definite article; only premier and second indicate gender.

**Note.**—Unième is used only in the compounds vingt-unième, etc. Deuxième is always used in the compounds; as, vingt-deuxième; and sometimes also singly, in place of second (generally when a series follows beyond the second).

3. The numerical titles of *sovereigns* are expressed by the cardinal numbers (except *the first* and sometimes *the second*) without article; as, Louis premier, Louis second or deux, Louis trois, quatre, etc.

Special titles are *Charles Quint*, and *Sixte Quint*, for the Emperor Charles V., and the Pope Sixtus V.

Other numerical titles may be cardinal or ordinal; as, tome trois, or troisième, volume three, or third. But, with the article, le troisième tome, the third volume, etc. (not as *title*). See L. XVIII. 2.

4. The date of the *year* is given by the cardinal number, preceded by l'an, en l'an, or simply en; as, en mil huit cent (or dix-huit cent) soixante-dix-sept, in 1877, etc.

5. The day of the *month* is given by the cardinal number (except *the first*) without any preposition; as, le premier mai, le deux mai, le onze mai, etc. Il mourut le dix mai, he died (on) the tenth (of) May.

**Note.**—In this case, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix sound their final letter fully, even before consonants. See \*, †, p. 49.

6. The day of the *week* is also given without preposition; as, il écrivit lundi—lundi dernier, he wrote (on) Monday—(on) last Monday, etc. Le lundi means *on a Monday—every Monday*, or *Mondays*.

7. The names of the months and of the days are written without capitals. They are:

|           |            |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| janvier,  | January ;  | juillet,   | July.      |
| février,  | February ; | août,      | August.    |
| mars,     | March ;    | septembre, | September. |
| avril,    | April ;    | octobre,   | October.   |
| mai,      | May ;      | novembre,  | November.  |
| juin,     | June ;     | décembre,  | December.  |
| dimanche, |            | Sunday.    |            |
| lundi,    |            | Monday.    |            |
| mardi,    |            | Tuesday.   |            |
| mercredi, |            | Wednesday. |            |
| jeudi,    |            | Thursday.  |            |
| vendredi, |            | Friday.    |            |
| samedi,   |            | Saturday.  |            |

**Note.**—The final consonants in *mars*, *avril* are sounded; and *a* is silent in *août*.

8. Note the idioms : huit jours (8 days), for, a week ; quinze jours (15 days), for, a fortnight ; d'aujourd'hui en huit, or en quinze, to-day week—or fortnight ; tous les jours, every day ; tous les deux—trois—jours, every two—three days (or every *other* day, every *third* day, etc.) ; une fois—deux fois—par jour, par semaine, etc., once—twice, *a* day, or *a* week, etc.

**Note.**—But for measures other than of time, the definite article is used, without preposition ; as, six francs *a* pound, six francs *la* livre, etc.

9. The hour of the day is expressed by giving the number of the hours ; as, une heure, one o'clock ; deux heures, two o'clock, etc.

Note the following idioms :

Quelle heure est-il ? what time is it ?

Il est deux heures et demie, it is half past two.

“ deux heures et (un) quart, it is a quarter past two.

“ deux heures moins (un) quart, it is a quarter before two.

“ deux heures (et) vingt (minutes), 20 minutes past two.

A midi, at 12 (noon) ; à minuit, at 12 (midnight), etc., etc.

10. Numerals expressing *age* or *dimension* are preceded by *de* (except after *avoir*, 11) ; as, une fille âgée de dix ans, a girl ten years old ; une table longue de dix pieds, or de dix pieds de longueur, a table 10 feet long, or 10 feet in length.

**Note.**—By expressing *excess* is *de* ; expressing *dimension* is *sur* ; as, il

est plus âgé que moi de dix mois, he is older than I by 10 months; une table de dix pieds sur six, a table 10 feet by 6.

### 11. Note the use of *avoir* in the following idioms:

Quel âge avez-vous? J'ai dix ans; how old are you? I am ten years (old)—dix ans passés—ten years *and over*.

Quel jour (du mois) avons-nous? }  
Quel quantième (du mois) avons-nous? } What day of the month is it?

Nous avons le vingt—it is the 20th.

Also before *nouns* of dimension:

Cette table a dix pieds de long, or de longueur—de haut, or de hauteur, etc., this table is 10 feet long—or high, etc.

For *il y a, ago*, see L. XXXVII. 8.

12. *Than*, before a numeral, is expressed by *de*, not *que*; as, plus de dix francs, more than 10 francs; plus de cent, more than a hundred, etc.

**Note.**—In this case the numeral *one* and the indefinite article will be distinguished by the use of *de* or *que*; as, j'ai plus d'un fils, I have more than one son; but, j'ai plus qu'un fils, j'ai une fille aussi, I have more than a son, I have a daughter also. Ordinarily the numeral is distinguished only by emphasis, or by the context.

13. A numeral will be limited, partitively, by *de* before an adjective; and by *en*, if the noun is omitted (L. XXVII. 4); as, il y eut deux hommes de tués, there were two men killed. Combien de poires avez-vous? J'en ai six de mûres, six (of) ripe (ones). But *de* is not used in phrases like *there were six of us* (nous étions six), the sense not being partitive.

**Note.**—But *en* may not limit the *subject* of the sentence, or a noun governed by a preposition (see L. XXIX. 6); as, j'avais trois fils; deux (d'entre eux) sont morts (not deux *en*, etc.).

**Remark.**—As in French the numeral *un* and the indefinite article, so in English must be distinguished the numeral *one*; the indefinite *one* (on); and the pronoun, *one, ones*, after an adjective (good *ones*, etc.), which are all differently expressed in French (L. XXXIII. 2). For *un* as plural, in the pronoun forms *quelques-uns, les uns*, etc., see also L. XXXIII.

### Reading Lesson 38.

1. Nos troupes firent deux mille prisonniers. 2. Envoyez-moi une vingtaine de pêches. 3. Votre lettre du quinze janvier a été reçue le deux février. 4. Je suis arrivé le second à l'école. 5. Louis seize,



Louis dix-huit et Charles dix étaient frères. 6. Quelques oiseaux pondent trois fois par an. 7. Charles cinq, roi de France, fut surnommé le Sage. 8. Le pape Sixte Quint était contemporain de Philippe deux, fils de l'empereur Charles Quint. 9. Napoléon mourut en mil huit cent vingt-un. 10. L'empereur d'Allemagne a soixante-dix-huit ans. 11. Quel âge avez-vous ? Je n'ai pas encore vingt ans. 12. A quelle heure dînerez-vous ? 13. Aujourd'hui nous ne dînerons qu'à trois heures, mais nous dînons ordinairement à une heure. 14. Quelle heure est-il ? Il est huit heures, ou plutôt huit heures moins dix. 15. La bataille commença à sept heures du matin, et dura jusqu'à sept heures du soir. 16. Nos vacances commenceront dans quinze jours et dureront deux mois et demi. 17. Je verrai (*shall see*) votre frère d'aujourd'hui en huit. 18. Il y a plus de huit ans que je suis en Amérique. 19. Vous travaillerez cinq heures par jour. 20. Cette colonne semble être haute de cinquante pieds. 21. Les bancs de notre école ont neuf pieds de long sur deux pieds de large et trois pieds de haut. 22. Le lac de Genève a plus de neuf cents pieds de profondeur. 23. Une chambre de vingt pieds de longueur sur seize pieds de largeur et dix de hauteur. 24. Ce drap se vend cinq francs l'aune. 25. Le quatre juillet est un jour de fête aux États-Unis. 26. Le Noël est le vingt-cinq décembre. 27. Donnez-moi les deux premières douzaines. 28. Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf moutons et un Champenois font cent bêtes : proverbe français. 29. Prêtez-moi le deuxième et le cinquième volumes de cet ouvrage. 30. Chapitre douze, ligne vingt-six. 31. Nashville, Tennessee, mardi, le vingt novembre, mil huit cent soixante-dix-sept. 32. Ce vieillard a quatre-vingts ans passés. 33. La Revue des Deux-mondes paraît tous les quinze jours. 34. Trois cents Lacédémoniens périrent aux Thermopyles. 35. Louis seize monta sur le trône en mil sept cent soixante-quatorze. 36. Les jours croissent jusqu'au vingt et un juin. 37. Je suis le cinquième. 38. Nous sommes six dans la classe. 39. Il y en a trois de plus âgés que moi, et deux de plus jeunes. 40. Bossuet est plus qu'un prêtre ; c'est un père de l'église.

### Theme 38.

1. Napoleon was named First Consul on the 13th of December, 1799.
2. On the 5th of May, 1789, Louis XVI. opened the States-General.
3. I shall pay you a visit (*visiter*) on Monday, the 4th of June.
4. What place have you ? I have the third, and my friend has the ninth.
5. What day of the month is it ? It is the 15th or the 16th.



6. France has thirty-eight millions of inhabitants. 7. This bridge was begun in 1869 and finished in 1874. 8. Francis I., King of France, was taken (*pris*) prisoner by Charles V., King of Spain and Emperor of Germany, at the battle of Pavia, on the 24th of February, 1525. 9. The Amazon is at its mouth more than twenty miles broad. 10. In order to protect their port against the Roman fleet, the Carthaginians, in the third Punic war, built a dike (of) 500 feet long and 122 feet broad. 11. This silk is a yard and a half in breadth. 12. This wall is  $15\frac{1}{2}$  feet thick. 13. I have been (am) here ten months. 14. They arrived on the 12th of January. 15. My sister will be back in a fortnight. 16. It was twenty minutes to twelve. 17. The bell rings at twelve o'clock and at three o'clock. 18. He came back at  $12\frac{1}{2}$  o'clock in the night. 19. I shall be here a quarter of an hour or half an hour. 20. Charles XII. died (*mourut*) in 1718, aged 36 years. 21. His first daughter is only fifteen years of age. 22. Many boys leave school at the age of fifteen. 23. You will receive 380 francs to-morrow. 24. Athens was founded 1582 years before Christ. 25. The Bastille was taken by the people July 14th, 1789. 26. This rule is on the hundred and eightieth page. 27. Francis II. succeeded (*à*) Henry II. upon the throne of France. 28. Send two or three dozen eggs. 29. Louis XIII. was the founder of the French Academy. 30. Christopher Columbus landed in America in 1492. 31. I was the last (one) of a score of pupils. 32. There were two hundred men killed, and more than five hundred wounded in the last battle. 33. There are only twenty of us in the class; two have left the school. 34. He had three sons—he has lost two (of them). 35. Of all these apples, there were only about 20 ripe (ones). 36. It is more than an offense; it is an outrage.

---

## LESSON XLVI.

### COMPOUNDS: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

#### SPECIAL FORMS IN NUMBER AND GENDER.

The plural of compound nouns, which depends upon their composition, could not be explained (L. VII.) until the parts of speech had been learned. The following is the rule:

1. Only a *principal noun*, and an adjective, or noun used

as an adjective, agreeing with it grammatically, can be inflected in a compound noun. Other members remain unchanged. Hence :

1. Both members may change in the plural, as :

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| beau-frère, brother-in-law ;  | <i>pl.</i> beaux-frères (adj. and noun). |
| petit-maitre, coxcomb ;       | " petits-maitres " " "                   |
| chou-fleur, cauliflower ;     | " choux-fleurs (two nouns).              |
| oiseau-mouche, humming-bird ; | " oiseaux-mouches "                      |

2. The principal noun alone will change, as :

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| avant-coureur, forerunner ;        | <i>pl.</i> avant-coureurs. |
| arc-en-ciel, rainbow ;             | " arcs-en-ciel.            |
| chef-d'œuvre, master-piece ;       | " chefs-d'œuvre.           |
| serpent-à-sonnettes, rattlesnake ; | " serpents-à-sonnettes.    |

**Note.**—In some cases the governing preposition will be understood, as, Hôtel-Dieu (Hôtel-de-Dieu) ; *pl.* Hôtels-Dieu.  
timbre-poste (*i. e.*, pour la poste) ; " timbres-poste, etc.

The relation of the noun, grammatically, to the leading idea must therefore be considered.

3. Neither member will change, as :

|                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| après-midi, afternoon ;      | <i>pl.</i> après-midi. |
| casse-tête, tomahawk ;       | " casse-tête.          |
| gagne-petit, knife-grinder ; | " gagne-petit.         |
| passe-partout, pass-key ;    | " passe-partout, etc., |

in which the principal member is not a noun.

2. Many compound nouns, however, form their plural like simple nouns, contrary to the foregoing rules, as :

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| passe-port, passport ;       | <i>pl.</i> passe-ports. |
| porte-monnaie, pocket-book ; | " porte-monnaies.       |
| garde-robe, wardrobe ;       | " garde-robes, etc.     |

Such nouns should properly be written without hyphen. Usage, however, varies.

**Note.**—In the feminine words grand'mère, grand'tante, grand'rue, grand'chose, grand'peine, the adjective receives no change in the plural ; as, des grand'mères, grandmothers, etc. See L. V. 2, note.

3. The prepositions *de* and *à* form a great many noun-phrases, which, though not written as compound nouns, are

of the same character, and are often translated by compounds in English—as :

|                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| jour de fête, holiday;       | <i>pl.</i> jours de fête. |
| mal de tête, headache;       | “ maux de tête.           |
| ver à soie, silk-worm;       | “ vers à soie.            |
| salle à manger, dining-room; | “ salles à manger.        |
| etc.                         | etc.                      |

The meaning of such phrases will be various. Usually de expresses the *material*, or *kind*, or *contents*; à, the *object*, or *characteristic quality*. See L. XL. 2.

**Note.**—In some idiomatic phrases, à will take the article; as, café au lait, coffee with milk; marché aux chevaux, horse-market, etc.

4. Compound adjectives usually inflect the last component only; as, des enfants nouveau-nés, new-born children; des peuples demi-sauvages, half-savage peoples, etc. But adjectives expressing compound *colors* remain unchanged; as, des yeux jaune-pâle, eyes (of a) pale-yellow; des cheveux brun-clair, hair (*pl.*) (of a) light-brown.

**Note.**—Expressions like nu-pieds, nu-tête, barefooted, bareheaded, etc., are not properly adjectives, and undergo no change.

5. Proper names do not take a plural when used literally as such; as, les deux Jean, the two Johns; les deux Corneille, the two Corneilles, etc. But when used typically as representative names, or to designate *families* or *works*, they may take a plural; as, les Annibals, the Hannibals (of war); les Césars, les Bourbons, les Stuarts, etc.; les Raphaels, the paintings of Raphael, etc.

6. Foreign nouns, used technically as such, do not take a plural; as, des errata, des alibi, des Te-Deum, etc. Others have become naturalized, and take a plural; as, des zéros, des opéras, etc.

7. Some nouns have different meanings in the singular and in the plural; as :

|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| ciseau, chisel;     | <i>pl.</i> ciseaux, scissors. |
| fer, iron;          | “ fers, chains.               |
| gage, pledge,       | “ gages, wages.               |
| lunette, telescope; | “ lunettes, spectacles.       |
| etc.                | etc.                          |

Aïeul has *pl.* aïeux, ancestors; and aïeuls, grandfathers. Ciel, *pl.* ciels, heavens; and œil, *pl.* yeux, eyes; have ciels and œils in some technical senses; as, ciels de lit, œils de bœuf, etc. See L. VII. 9.

Further details and irregularities will be found in the larger grammars.

## II. GENDER OF NOUNS.

8. Rules for the gender of nouns have been intentionally omitted. They require so much detail of statement, and are liable to so many exceptions, as to be practically useless for the beginner. The gender is always indicated in the dictionaries, and is most conveniently expressed and remembered by associating the article with the noun (L. VI.). Only the following general notes will now be given:

1. Feminine are, generally: the names of *females*; the names of most *fruits* and *flowers*; the names of most *countries*; most *abstract* nouns; as, la beauté, beauty; la foi, faith, etc.; and (though with many exceptions) most nouns ending in *-e*, *-té*, *-ion*, or *-eur*. Other nouns *generally* masculine (with many exceptions).

**Note.**—Where the Latin gender is known, it is the safest guide. The gender will usually be the same in French, masculine answering to both masculine and neuter in Latin. The chief exceptions are nouns in *-eur*, *fem.*, from *-or*, *masc.*, in Latin; as, couleur, from Lat. color, etc.

2. Some nouns may be of either gender in the same form (*common gender*); as, un pupille, une pupille; un enfant, une enfant, etc.

3. Others have masculine and feminine forms according to the rules for the feminine of adjectives (L. XVII.); as, un époux, une épouse; un baron, une baronne; un jumeau, une jumelle; un danseur, une danseuse, etc.

4. Others have special feminine forms; as, un acteur, une actrice; un comte, une comtesse; un vengeur, une vengeresse; un empereur, une impératrice; un chanteur, une cantatrice; un loup, une louve, etc. These may be considered as separate words, and not as grammatical forms. As such, both forms are usually given in the dictionaries.

5. Some nouns are of different signification in the two genders; as:

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| un mousse, a sailor-boy;    | la mousse, moss.              |
| un page, a page (servant);  | une page, a page (of a book). |
| le vase, the vase (vessel); | la vase, mud.                 |
| etc.                        | etc.                          |

Other nouns have different genders in different idiomatic uses—such are aigle, amour, gens, hymne, orgue, etc. For such details reference is made to the dictionaries, or to the larger grammars.

6. Compound nouns will be masculine, unless the *principal* component (1) is a feminine noun: as, un chou-fleur; un oiseau-mouche; un porte-feuille, the principal elements being chou, oiseau, porte (as *verb*); but la



chauve-souris; la fête-Dieu; the principal elements being souris, fête, etc. But there are some exceptions.

### Reading Lesson 39.

1. Les choux-fleurs et les choux-raves appartiennent (*belong*) à la même famille. 2. Ces deux hommes sont beaux-frères; ils sont tous deux des petits-maîtres. 3. Les moulins à vent sont rares aux États-Unis, mais on y rencontre souvent des moulins à vapeur et des moulins à eau. 4. Tous les Te-Deum qu'on chante après une victoire ne consolent pas les mères de la perte de leurs fils. 5. Le cardinal Mazarin introduisit (*introduced*) les premiers opéras en France. 6. Ce violoniste a exécuté plusieurs solos dans ce concert. 7. Les Cicérons et les Virgiles seront toujours rares. 8. La famille des Stuarts et celle des Médicis s'alliaient souvent aux Bourbons. 9. Les deux Corneille sont nés (*born*) à Rouen. 10. La France a eu ses Césars et ses Pompées. 11. Les auto-da-fé n'étaient pas rares en Espagne il y a cent ans. 12. Les alibi ne lui serviront à rien. 13. Ne faites (*make*) pas trop usage des post-scriptum. 14. Cet élève a eu plusieurs pensums aujourd'hui. 15. Les Titienis du palais des Doges à Venise sont fameux dans toute l'Europe. 16. Je connais (*know*) ses deux grands-pères. 17. Il y a en France quatre-vingt-deux chefs-lieux de département. 18. Les arcs-en-ciel sont formés par la réflexion des rayons solaires dans les gouttes de pluie. 19. Les chefs-d'œuvre de Rubens sont pour la plupart en Belgique. 20. Les sauvages étaient armés de casse-tête. 21. Dans les pays chauds on élève des vers-à-soie. 22. Les Hôtels-Dieu de Paris et de Lyon sont les plus grands de la France. 23. Les hirondelles, ces avant-coureurs du printemps, sont arrivées. 24. Les serpents-à-sonnettes sont indigènes de l'Amérique septentrionale. 25. Je suis occupé toutes les après-midi. 26. En Italie il y avait presque autant de jours de fête que de jours de travail. 27. Il avait dans son panier quatre bouteilles de vin blanc et deux pâtés de foie gras. 28. Le voleur entra à l'aide d'un ciseau à froid. 29. Le fer est le plus utile des métaux. 30. La lunette fut inventée dans les Pays-Bas. 31. Les lunettes étaient connues (*known*) des Chinois il y a plusieurs siècles. 32. Mes deux aïeux vivent encore. 33. Les ciels de ces tableaux sont trop bleus. 34. Christophe Colomb fut jeté dans les fers. 35. Ce fut une belle jeune fille, court-vêtue, aux cheveux châtain-brun.

### Theme 39.

1. Spain is proud of having produced Lucan (*Lucaïn*), Martial, and the two Senecas (*Sénèque*). 2. The first of the four Williams



came from Normandy. 3. The solos in those operas are very fine. 4. After the battle, they sang Te-Deums in all the churches. 5. Where shall we find now Catos and Ciceros? 6. She adds postscripts to all her letters. 7. There are many pretty country towns in England. 8. Cauliflowers are a favorite vegetable. 9. The masterpieces of the Raphaels, the Michael Angelos, the Titians, the Peruginis, have made of Italy the dream-land of artists. 10. The largest rainbows are early in the morning or late in the afternoon. 11. Corneilles and Miltons are rare. 12. Humming-birds of the most brilliant colors are found in the forests of Brazil. 13. These are the forerunners of happier times. 14. Mothers-in-law have not the most enviable reputation. 15. Windmills, in the Netherlands, are used to pump water. 16. Rattlesnakes are common in the Blue Ridge (*montagnes bleues*). 17. Postage stamps were used in England towards the end of the last century. 18. In Paris, many people spend (*passent*) their afternoons in cafés. 19. The Indians were armed with tomahawks, bows and arrows. 20. Knife-grinders in France are mostly Italians. 21. His two grandmothers were Scotch (women). 22. The best silk-worms come from Japan. 23. Dining-rooms in England are mostly wainscoted (*boisées*). 24. Bring me two bottles of different kinds of wine. 25. The heavens declare the glory of God. 26. The glory of our ancestors does not make ours. 27. Both my grandfathers were killed in that battle. 28. These round windows (*œils de bœuf*) are not graceful. 29. Scissors were used by the Greeks and Romans. 30. That murderer was put in chains by the officer. 31. The pledge of battle was ordinarily a glove. 32. Spectacles for (the) aged persons are generally bi-convex (*bi-convexe*). 33. The tester of this bed is too low. 34. There are many Raphaels and Corregios at the Louvre. 35. The Borgias were originally from Spain. 36. This bird has a long and pointed beak, and grey-brown feet (*the beak long, etc.*).

---

## LESSON XLVII.

SYNTAX: IDIOM: ORDER OF WORDS: EMPHASIS.

### I. SYNTAX.

1. The plan of this book does not embrace the special treatment of the syntax. The general principles, which are for the most part common to French and English, have been either

assumed as known, or have been already indicated in the development of the parts of speech. So much besides as was necessary to understand the forms of words and their functions, has been added from time to time. Other peculiarities should be noted, as they occur, in reading.

The fuller treatment of the general subject of syntax is left for further study in grammar. For those who do not pursue such study, a good lexicon will generally indicate what most needs to be known.

## II. IDIOM.

2. Outside of the regular rules of syntax lies the consideration of *idiom*, whether with regard to special and exceptional forms of syntax, or to those word-combinations and phrases to which the term *idiom* is more specially applied. This subject can hardly be included in systematic grammar, though in a language so idiomatic as the French, it embraces much that is most characteristic and valuable. The same is true, to a great extent, of English. Hence, in reading, great care should be given to the observation and analysis of the comparative idiomatic forms in the two languages.

The direction, already often given, is here finally repeated : that in translation none but strictly *idiomatic forms* should be allowed. Mere paraphrase is not translation ; and by obscuring differences, it prevents the most characteristic and expressive forms in either language from being properly understood. It is *the idiom* that makes the language ; and hence the idiomatic forms should be most carefully regarded. A few of them are given, as examples, under the Irregular Verbs in Part II. Many others will be met with in reading, and will be usually found explained, under the leading words, in the lexicons.\*

## III. ORDER OF WORDS.

3. Under the general subject of idiom, the order of words in the sentence is of prominent importance. Details cannot be here given ; but the most important points of difference, as between French and English, may admit of brief and general summary. Most of them have been already mentioned.

---

\* Gasc's Dictionary is especially recommended for its richness in idiomatic forms.

*General Rule.*—The order of words is generally the same as in English. The following are the principal exceptions :

1. The attributive adjective frequently follows the noun. (L. XVIII.)
2. The conjunctive negative *ne*, and the conjunctive pronoun objects precede the verb (L. XIII., XXVII.). For exception, L. XXVII. 2. For the relative position of different pronoun objects, L. XXVIII.
3. The noun, as interrogative subject, will usually precede the verb, and be repeated by the pronoun after it (L. X.). For exceptions, see L. XVI., XXXI.
4. The noun subject of a relative clause may follow the verb, when no ambiguity can arise (L. XXXII. 10). This will be the case, especially, if the noun have dependent words, or a clause, connected with it; as, *les conseils que me donna mon père bien-aimé—mon père que j'aimai tant*, etc.
5. The subject will follow the verb (nearly as in English) in some elliptical uses of the subjunctive (L. XLIII.); as, *vive le roi; plutôt à Dieu; dussé-je mourir*, etc.; and in elliptical conditions (without *si*); as, *était-il—or fût-il ici, were he here*, etc.; and (also as in English) in phrases indicating quotation; as, *dit-il, demanda-t-il, répondit mon père*, etc.
6. Of two noun objects, direct and indirect, that one will generally precede which, with its adjuncts, is the *shorter*; otherwise generally the direct object; as, *le roi rendra la justice à ses sujets; le maître donna à l'écolier un prix d'une grande valeur*, etc.

**Note.**—The indirect object, whether noun or pronoun, has the same form whether preceding or following the direct. In English the preposition is omitted if the direct object precedes. (L. VI., XXVIII.)

7. The adverb stands after the verb, in a simple tense; or else before the subject; but not between the subject and the verb. In a compound tense, sometimes, as in English, before the participle (L. XXXVIII.). The negative adverbs, *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, *plus* (L. XXXIX.); also *rien*, *tout* (L. XXXIII.), will precede the participle, and (generally) an infinitive.

**Note.**—Adverbial phrases of *time* will generally precede the noun objects; those of *place* or *manner*, and generally those in the form of a prepositional phrase, will follow them; as, *le maître donnait tous les jours une leçon à ses écoliers sous l'ombre d'un arbre*.

8. The preposition must stand immediately before its object. (L. XXXI. 9.)

9. The arrangement of conjunctions, and of clauses, is generally the same as in English. For the relative clause, see L. XXXII., at end. For the infinitive object, see L. LXI. 2.

The foregoing cases have been already illustrated in examples and exercises.

#### IV. EMPHASIS.

4. The arrangement of words, as well as of clauses, depends—within logical limits—largely upon *emphasis*. The

consideration of this subject belongs rather to rhetoric than to grammar ; but a few points may be here briefly noted :

*General Rule.*—Any *unusual position* generally indicates emphasis. This is especially the case in the leading place, or beginning, of the sentence. Thus :

1. When emphatic, an adverb or adverbial phrase will stand first ; as, *ici on parle français*—là mourut ce grand homme—ainsi parla le roi—tous les jours le maître donnait un prix aux écoliers, etc.

2. After the adverbs and conjunctions,

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| à peine, hardly,      | encore, still,      |
| aussi, accordingly,   | en vain, in vain,   |
| au-moins, } at least, | peut-être, perhaps, |
| du moins, }           |                     |

standing emphatically at the head of a clause, the *interrogative position* of the subject-noun or pronoun is usually employed ; as, *à peine fut-il sorti*—à peine mon père fut-il sorti, etc. *Peut-être nos amis reviendront-ils demain*, perhaps our friends will return to-morrow, etc. (L. XXXVIII. 12, note.)

3. A direct or indirect object, when emphatic, may begin the sentence ; but the *direct* will then usually be repeated by the proper pronoun object with the verb ; as, *ce bon garçon je l'ai vu hier*—tes vœux je les remplirai, your wishes I will fulfil, etc. *A ma lettre il a répondu fièrement*, my letter he answered proudly, etc. Likewise a noun subject is made emphatic by repeating it in the form of a pronoun ; as, *la France, elle m'est chère*, etc.

**Note.**—For the emphatic use of the *disjunctive pronouns*, as subject or object, see L. XXVI.

4. A clause beginning with *c'est* is often used to give emphasis to its predicate ; as :

*c'est mon père qui me l'a dit*, it was my father that told me so.

*c'est votre mère que j'ai vue*, it was your mother that I saw.

*c'est votre mère à qui il a dit cela*, it was your mother to whom, etc., or

*c'est à votre mère qu'il a dit cela*, it was to your mother *that*, etc.

*c'est en France qu'on trouve*, etc., it is in France that we find, etc.

*c'est hier qu'il a été ici*, it was yesterday that he was here.

**Note.**—Likewise the form *est-ce que*, instead of the simple interrogative, is usually emphatic (when not *required* by the form of the verb, L. XXIV.) ; as, *est-ce qu'il a été ici ?* is it (true) that he has been here ? etc.

5. Sometimes the last place also, if unusual, is emphatic ; as, *je les ai vus tous*, I saw them *all*.

Further details should be noted in reading.

### Reading Lesson 40.

1. Ici l'on danse. 2. Là se dressent ces fameuses pyramides d'Égypte. 3. Ainsi mourut Bayard, le chevalier sans peur et sans



reproche. 4. Toutes les fois qu'il vous ennuiera, punissez-le. 5. Ainsi tomba la ville de Carthage. 6. Ici tout est splendeur, réjouissances et festins; là, dans le camp de Guillaume, les Normands se préparent à la bataille du lendemain par le jeûne et la prière. 7. Toujours la mère se dévouera pour son enfant. 8. Jamais vous ne me ferez (*will make*) penser comme vous. 9. A peine eut-il parlé que le peuple l'acclama. 10. Peut-être avons-nous eu tort de parler de la (*that*) sorte. 11. Au moins l'aidez-vous dans son embarras. 12. En vain avons-nous essayé de lui faire comprendre qu'il devait nous suivre. 13. Ton frère, il se porte bien. 14. Ma tante, elle arrivera demain. 15. Nos désirs, il ne les a pas plus écoutés que nos reproches. 16. Les montagnes, ne les voyez-vous pas dans le lointain? 17. A mes reproches il répondit en haussant les épaules. 18. L'argent, il sera ici quand vous le désirerez. 19. C'est à moi que vous vous adresserez à l'avenir. 20. C'est sa sœur qui s'est trompée; lui, il a raison. 21. C'est en France qu'on trouve les meilleurs vins, et dans la plus grande abondance. 22. C'est hier qu'il me fit (*make*) venir pour me parler. 23. Est-ce que vous voulez le tuer? 24. C'est lui qui m'envoya cette invitation. 25. Je les ai invités tous. 26. Est-ce que vous pensez que je sois un fou? 27. Est-ce qu'il a écrit son thème hier? 28. Demain vous apprendrez à me respecter. 29. Rome, la capitale du monde, ne fut-elle pas brûlée et pillée plusieurs fois? 30. Là vint mourir l'illustre romain. 31. A peine eut-il donné ses ordres qu'il tomba blessé. 32. Aussi faut-il avouer qu'il a beaucoup de chance. 33. Ton souvenir, il me sera toujours cher. 34. Ses lettres, je les lui donnerai demain. 35. Donner à cet homme ce qui m'est le plus cher, jamais! 36. Prendre le bien d'autrui, quel crime abominable! 37. Du moins, se repent-il.

#### Theme 40.

1. Here German is spoken. 2. Here were the lords in robes of ermine, and there the commons dressed in black. 3. Here rests an honest man. 4. Thus spoke the ambassador. 5. Every year he remains here for two weeks. 6. Hardly had I uttered these words when I repented. 7. Accordingly, the prince gave him a pension. 8. At least you will do me the pleasure of accepting a present. 9. Perhaps I was wrong, but he was wrong also. 10. In vain do you ask me to do this for you, my duty forbids me to listen to you. 11. Perhaps you will confess that you helped him. 12. This poor boy, will he be punished? 13. That great empire, it was divided into many kingdoms. 14. Still, he is not a thief. 15. My friend,



he left yesterday for New York. 16. It was his cousin who came (*vint*) to help us. 17. It is a shame to act in that manner. 18. It was your mother to whom we gave the letter. 19. It is in France that the best grapes are found. 20. It was yesterday that I saw your brother. 21. Is it (true) that he related that story to you? 22. Hardly had we departed when the carriage arrived. 23. At least you will do me the favor of respecting his prejudices. 24. It was he who sent me here. 25. There, annoyed by his enemies, he ended a stormy existence. 26. Here are seen (*on voit*) together the treasures of the East and the civilization of the West. 27. Is it (true) that he brought you news from your mother? 28. Never will he give his consent. 29. Thus died in the flower of his youth this young hero. 30. Money is loaned here. 31. To my demand he answered abruptly. 32. I have heard them all and I shall reject them all. 33. His instructions, he followed them to the letter. 34. His fame, it never was greater. 35. In vain will you ask him (for) a favor. 36. These mountains, they are the Rocky Mountains (*montagnes rocheuses*). 37. To her I will never speak again; too cruelly has she outraged me (*f.*); and he! he has left me in my grief—all alone!

## PART II.

---

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS: INTRODUCTION.

1. IRREGULAR verbs are all verbs which depart from the regular conjugations. See Lesson XXIII.

**Note.**—The number of irregular verbs may be reduced by increasing the number of the so-called regular conjugations, but without advantage to the learner. Some grammars count four—others five or more—regular conjugations.

2. The irregularities consist sometimes in the employment of different roots—or stems—in the formation of the parts; sometimes in the inflection—or declension—of the parts themselves; or in both of these.

**Note.**—Most of the irregularities can be explained by reference to the original Latin forms, or to earlier forms in French. Such explanations must, however, be left for more advanced study, or for the special work of the teacher, with pupils who know Latin. Only such explanations will here be offered as will be practically useful for the beginner.

3. The only parts which exhibit irregularity in *inflection*, or declension within themselves, are the *present indicative*, the *imperative*, and the *present subjunctive*. All other tenses, once formed, are regular in their declension.

4. The present indicative being thus sometimes irregular within itself, its inflection must be specially learned in every case. This inflection will often exhibit different *stems*:

1. The singular will often show a contracted stem.

2. The plural—as in regular verbs—will show the stem of the present participle. But,

3. Sometimes the third person plural will show a different stem.

5. In this last case, the present subjunctive will also (generally) be irregular in its inflection: the singular and the third person plural will be formed from the stem of the third plural present, while the first and second persons plural will still show the stem of

the present participle. In other cases, the present subjunctive will be regular in its declension.

6. The irregularities of the present indicative will be repeated in the corresponding forms of the imperative.

7. Hence the following practical rules:

1. The declension of the *present indicative* must always be learned in full. This will include the declension of the *imperative*.

2. If the third person plural of the present indicative is irregular (as above), the declension of the *present subjunctive* must also be learned.

For example: In the verb *conduire*, the present indicative is *conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent*. The third plural has here the same stem as the first and second plural. Hence the present subjunctive will be regularly inflected, and its inflection need not be fully given. But in the verb *mourir*, the present indicative is *meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent*. Here the third plural has a different stem from the first and second. Hence the subjunctive present will be irregular in declension; *meure, meures, meure, mourions, mourier, meurent*. The imperative is like the present: *meurs, mourons, mourez*.

8. The other parts will be indicated by the synopsis of leading forms (see L. XXIII., Part I., at end), under the usual rules of formation (L. XXIII.). But in the synopsis of irregular verbs, the future, which is sometimes irregular, will be added, and the full synopsis will be thus:

*Infinitive. Present Part. Past Part.*

*Indicative Present*—declined in full.

*Preterit.*

*Future.*

*Subjunctive Present*—declined, when required by 7.

9. The parts omitted are here indicated as follows: the imperfect by the present participle; the conditional by the future; the imperative by the present indicative; the past subjunctive by the preterit indicative. The tenses not declined in the synopsis are declined regularly.

All the verbs should be learned by this uniform synopsis.\* Special irregularities in particular verbs will be given as they occur. These will also be indicated by the type.

---

\* All verbs will not, of course, show the same irregularities; but the uniformity of the synopsis will simplify the analysis and assist the memory. Let the synopsis be first recited through the leading parts, and the tense-declension be given afterwards.

10. Compound verbs—unless specially excepted, are conjugated like their primitives.

An alphabetical list of Model Irregular Verbs will be added, for reference, at the end of the book.

## LESSON XLIX.

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. In the first conjugation, only *aller*, *to go*, *envoyer*, *to send*, and its compound *renvoyer*, *to send back*, are irregular.

2.—1. *Aller*, *to go*. (Auxiliary *être*.)

|                             | <i>Infinitive.</i>                                     | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                             | <i>aller.</i>  | <i>allant.</i>       | <i>allé.</i>      |
| <i>Indicative Present.</i>  | <i>vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont.</i>             |                      |                   |
| <i>Preterit.</i>            | <i>allai.</i>  |                      |                   |
| <i>Future.</i>              | <i>irai.</i>   |                      |                   |
| <i>Subjunctive Present.</i> | <i>aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.</i> |                      |                   |
| <i>Imperative.</i>          | <i>va, allons, allez; (vas-y, L. XXVII. 7.)</i>        |                      |                   |

*Aller* is made up of wholly different roots, and hence violates the usual rules of formation. It has special irregularities in the present, in the future (and conditional), in the present subjunctive, and in the imperative.

**Note.**—With *vont*, compare *ont*, *sont* and (hereafter) *font*, from *faire*.

2. Like *aller* is conjugated the reflexive (with *en*) *s'en aller*, *to go away*; thus:

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>Indicative Present.</i>  | <i>je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va, nous nous en allons, etc.</i> |
| <i>Preterit.</i>            | <i>je m'en allai, tu t'en allas, il s'en alla, etc.</i>                 |
| <i>Future.</i>              | <i>je m'en irai, tu t'en iras, il s'en ira, etc.</i>                    |
| <i>Subjunctive Present.</i> | <i>je m'en aille, tu t'en ailles, il s'en aille, etc.</i>               |
| <i>Imperative.</i>          | <i>va-t'en (L. XXVIII. 3), allons-nous-en, etc.</i>                     |

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

|                          |                                 |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Compound Present.</i> | <i>je m'en suis allé, etc.</i>  |
| " <i>Preterit.</i>       | <i>je m'en fus allé, etc.</i>   |
| " <i>Future.</i>         | <i>je m'en serai allé, etc.</i> |
| " <i>Subjunctive.</i>    | <i>je m'en sois allé, etc.</i>  |

**Idioms.**—*Aller* (sometimes *s'en aller*) is often used in present or imperfect before an infinitive, in sense of a future; like English, *I am going*

—*was going, to, etc.*; as, *je vais chanter, I am going to sing*; *il allait partir, he was going (was about) to set out, etc.* The infinitive following *aller* is sometimes expressed in English with the conjunction *and*; as, *allez le voir, go and see him.* Special idiomatic phrases with *aller* are numerous; as, *aller à pied, à cheval, en voiture, etc., to go on foot (walk), to ride (on horseback), to ride or drive (in a carriage), etc.*; *aller chercher, to go for*; *aller bien, mal, to go (get on) well, badly, etc.* The imperative, *allons*, is often used as exclamation, *come! well! etc.*

**Remark.**—Under the irregular verbs only such idioms will be given as are of most frequent occurrence. Others, met with in reading, are explained in the dictionaries. See L. XLVII.

3. *Envoyer, to send*, is irregular only in the future (and conditional), thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>envoyer.</i>    | <i>envoyant.</i>     | <i>envoyé.</i>    |

*Indic. Pres.* *envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient.*

*Pret.* *envoyai.*

*Fut.* *enverrai.*

*Subj. Pres.* *envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient.*

Like *envoyer, renvoyer, to send back.*

**Note.**—The change of *y* to *i* before *e* mute is not irregular (L. XXV. 5). For the irregular future (and conditional) *enverrai, renverrai, etc.*, see *voir*, L. LIX.

**Idioms.**—*Envoyer chercher, to send for (lit. to seek)*; as, *envoyez chercher le médecin, send for the doctor.* *Envoyez dire, to send word*; as, *envoyez dire au médecin de venir vite, send word to the doctor to come quickly.*

**Exercises.**—As the pupil is presumed to be now reading French, reading lessons will not be given hereafter. In the earlier parts of the Reader accompanying this book, the irregular verbs are indicated in the notes.

### Theme 41.

1. Shall you go to school to-day? 2. No, I shall not go; I am going (*fut.*) to see the play. 3. My mother has gone to the city; we shall send the carriage there this evening. 4. Why do you not go *and* see him? 5. I shall not go; I shall send for him. 6. How goes that affair of which you spoke to me yesterday? 7. It goes<sup>2</sup> badly<sup>1</sup> enough; I have received some very bad news. 8. Why do you go away so soon (*si tôt*)? 9. I must go away: I must send for a physician. 10. I should go for him myself, if I (*en*) had (the) time. 11. How will you go? will you ride on horseback or drive? 12. I must go on foot; I have neither horse nor carriage. 13. Our friends went to Mr. H.'s (the) last week. 14. They went away at 10½ o'clock



this morning. 15. I should have gone with them, if they had not gone so soon. 16. I should go to the ball, if I had been invited. 17. Let us go home; I am going to tell you a pretty story. 18. My father sends you this letter, and thanks you for (*de*) your goodness toward me. 19. Go (*sing.*) away; do not annoy me. 20. Let us finish our exercises; it is about to strike 3 (hours). 21. We have finished them; send word to the teacher that we are ready to (*à*) go away. 22. They (*on*) will send us our horses to-day; we shall ride home on horseback.

## LESSON L.

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

I.—Verbs which present, in part, the endings of the *third* conjugation.

#### 1. The verbs

dormir, *to sleep*;

mentir, *to lie*;

partir, *to depart*;

se repentir, *to repent*;

sentir, *to feel, smell*;

servir, *to serve*;

sortir, *to go out*;

and their compounds,

take the endings of the *third* conjugation in the present participle and present indicative (and their derivative forms\*). In the singular of the present indicative (and of the imperative)\* the final consonant of the root (*m, t, v,*) is dropped before the consonant endings, -s, -s, -t (L. XXII. 4), but it is resumed before the vowel endings of the plural. Otherwise regular, like *finir*, thus:

*Infinitive. Pres. Part. Past. Part.*

dormir, dormant, dormi.

*Indicative Present.* dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment.

*Preterit.* dormis.

*Future.* dormirai.

*Subjunctive Present.* dorme, etc. (regularly declined).

Similarly, *endormir*, *s'endormir*, *se rendormir*.

The like synopsis applies to all these verbs, with only the difference of the root ending; thus:

---

\* Hereafter, when leading forms are mentioned, their derivatives are included. See the rules of derivation, L. XXIII.

| <i>Infin.</i> | <i>Pres. Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Singular.</i> |       |       | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-------|-------|----------------|
| mentir,       | mentant,           | menti,            | mens,                  | mens, | ment, | mentons, etc.  |
| partir,       | partant,           | parti,            | pars,                  | pars, | part, | partons, etc.  |
| servir,       | servant,           | servi,            | sers,                  | sers, | sert, | servons, etc.  |
| etc.          | etc.               | etc.              | etc.                   | etc.  | etc.  | etc.           |

Similarly, like partir, repartir, to start again (*aux. être*).

“ like mentir, démentir, to belie.

“ like sentir, consentir, pressentir, ressentir, etc.

“ like servir, desservir, etc.

“ like sortir, ressortir, to go out again (*aux. être*).

**Note.**—But the compounds, répartir, to distribute; ressortir, to resort; assortir, to assort; asservir, to subject, are regular.

2. Fuir, to flee, follows the *third* conjugation only in the present participle and its derivatives; and changes *i* to *y* before vowel endings, except *e* mute\* (L. XXV. 5), thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>          | <i>Present Part.</i>                        | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| fuir,                       | fuyant,                                     | fui.              |
| <i>Indicative Present.</i>  | fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.    |                   |
| <i>Preterit.</i>            | fuis.                                       |                   |
| <i>Future.</i>              | fuirai.                                     |                   |
| <i>Subjunctive Present.</i> | fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient. |                   |

Similarly, s'enfuir, to flee away, escape.

3. Bouillir, to boil, follows the *third* conjugation in the present participle and present indicative; and drops the liquid root-ending -ill, before the endings -s, -s, -t, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>       | <i>Present Part.</i>                              | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------|
| bouillir,                | bouillant,  | bouilli.          |
| <i>Indicative Pres.</i>  | bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent. |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>             | bouillis.   |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>              | bouillirai.                                       |                   |
| <i>Subjunctive Pres.</i> | bouille, etc.                                     |                   |

**Idiom :** faire bouillir, to boil (*water, etc.*), transitive; see faire.

4. Faillir, to fail, miss, follows the same rule, but is defective, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| faillir,           | faillant,            | failli.           |
| <i>Preterit.</i>   | faillis, etc.        |                   |

---

\* The stem is properly fui-; see Remark below.

**Idioms.**—Il faillit être tué; he *just missed* being killed. J'ai failli oublier cela, I *almost forgot* that (just missed forgetting it.)

**Note.**—The present impersonal *faut* (see *falloir*, L. LVIII. 3) is also used in the sense of *faillir*, in some idioms; as, il s'en faut (de) beaucoup (*it lacks much of it*) *far from it*; peu s'en faut, *but little lacks*, etc.; as, peu s'en faut que le nombre soit complet, the number lacks, but little of being complete, etc.

Both *faillir* and *falloir* are from Latin *fallere*: that which is *lacking*, hence *necessary*, etc.

5. *Vêtir*, *to clothe*, besides the present participle and present indicative, forms also its past participle like the *third* conjugation (-u). It is regular therefore only in the infinitive and preterit (and their derivatives), thus:

|                             | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past. Part.</i>     |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|                             | vêtir,             | vêtant,              | vêtu.                  |
| <i>Indicative Present.</i>  | vêts, vêts,        | vêt, vêts,           | vêtons, vêtez, vêtent. |
| <i>Preterit.</i>            | vêtis.             |                      |                        |
| <i>Future.</i>              | vêtirai.           |                      |                        |
| <i>Subjunctive Present.</i> | vête.              |                      |                        |

Similarly, *dévêtir*, to divest; *revêtir*, to invest, clothe (with).

6. *Courir*, *to run*, follows the second conjugation only in the *infinitive*. The preterit ends in -us; all other parts follow the *third* conjugation, thus:

|                             | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|                             | courir,            | courant,             | couru.            |
| <i>Indicative Present.</i>  | cours, cours,      | court, courons,      | courez, courent.  |
| <i>Preterit.</i>            | courus.            |                      |                   |
| <i>Future.</i>              | courrai.           |                      |                   |
| <i>Subjunctive Present.</i> | course.            |                      |                   |

Similarly, *accourir*, to run up; *concourir*, to concur; *parcourir*, to traverse; *secourir*, to succor, etc.

**Remark.**—The infinitive being the basis on which the conjugations are divided, irregularities must be counted *from the infinitive*. But the infinitive may itself be irregular, whence other parts are made to *seem* irregular. Thus, *courir* (Lat. *curre*), if regularly formed, would be *courre* (like *vendre* from *vendere*, etc.) of the *third* conjugation; but the infinitive is itself, irregularly, of the second. All other parts (except the preterit) are regular, as if from *courre*. Like explanations may be made in other cases, to pupils who know Latin (as *fuir*; properly *fui-re*, Lat. *fugere*, *third* conjugation; and other verbs, hereafter).

7. Examples and Idioms under some of the preceding verbs (1).

Il dort, he is asleep (sleeps). Il s'endort—s'est endormi—he is

going to sleep—has gone to sleep. Ils sont partis ce matin, they started this morning. Elle s'en est repentie, she has repented of it. Ces fleurs sentent bon, these flowers smell good. J'y consens, I consent to it. Il lui servit de père, he served him *as* (a) father—was a father to him. Cela ne sert à rien, that serves for nothing—is of no use. A quoi sert-il de parler ainsi? of what use is it to talk so? Je me servirai de vos livres, I will make use of your books—servez-vous-en, make use of-them (*or* it). Je m'en suis servi, *or* servie, I have made use of them (*or* it). Elles sont sorties, they have gone out, etc.

### Theme 42.

1. The child sleeps—the children sleep (are asleep). 2. No, they are not yet asleep; they are going-to-sleep. 3. We slept profoundly all (*the*) night; we should be-asleep still, if you had not awakened (*éveiller*) us. 4. If you have told-a-lie, repent of it, and lie no more. 5. The good soldier serves faithfully his country, and obeys (*à*) its laws. 6. If you repent sincerely of your fault, I consent to pardon you. 7. I will not lie; I feel that I have been (*en*) wrong. 8. Our friends must start to-morrow; let us go *and* see them this evening. 9. Of what use are these vain thoughts? you will repent of them soon. 10. They are of no use; I have repented of them already. 11. Such an example serves as (a) model to (the) youth. 12. Have you made use of the books which I have sent you? 13. I have not made use of them; I will send them back to you. 14. Will you consent to accompany me? 15. I consent to it; we will go out together. 16. Let us not go out yet; I do not go out before 8 o'clock. 17. Never consent (*sing.*) to a bad action. 18. Never make-use (*sing.*) of un<sup>2</sup>just<sup>1</sup> means. 19. Does your sister start to-day or to-morrow? 20. She has already started; she did not consent to wait. 21. I would go out with you, if my child were asleep. 22. He will go-to-sleep soon; wait a little. 23. We will start now; our dog will serve as a companion to us (*serve us as*, etc.). 24. Do you not repent of having said such a thing? 25. I should have repented of it, if it had been I (me?). 26. This bread smells bad: it smells-of (the) oil; I will not eat (any) of it. 27. Get up; it is a bad habit to (*de*) sleep too much. 28. They were asleep when we started. 29. They will have to (*faudra*) repent of their idleness.

## 8. Examples and Idioms, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

Fuis les vices, flee (from) vices. Le temps s'enfuit, time flies (flees away). Il s'est enfui, he has escaped. L'eau bout, the water is boiling. Faire bouillir la viande, to boil the meat. Elle était vêtue de noir—à l'anglaise, etc., she was dressed in black—in English fashion, etc. Il se revêt d'une peau de lion, he clothes himself with—puts on—a lion's skin, etc. Il courut—accourut—à moi; he ran—ran up—to me (*with preposition*). Courez lui parler, run *and* speak to him, etc. (see aller).

## Theme 43.

1. The thieves fled at our approach. 2. The soldiers ran up too late; the prisoners had already escaped (*s'enfuir*). 3. Why do you shun us? we do not shun you. 4. The whole army fled (was fleeing) before the enemy (*pl.*). 5. One must shun (*subj.*) the example of the bad. 6. These children are clothed too lightly. 7. Those ladies are well dressed. 8. A little girl, clothed in white, ran up to us. 9. The queen was dressed in the French fashion. 10. Let us not flee; let us all run to his aid. 11. The water is boiling; the eggs will boil soon. 12. Where are you running (to)? 13. I am running for (*chercher*) the doctor. 14. The children of the poor are often ill clad. 15. The wolf clothed himself in a sheep's skin, and ran towards the flock. 16. You have run too fast; rest yourself. 17. The good will succor the unfortunate. 18. I have traversed in vain the whole city. 19. The general has been invested with (*de*) a new dignity. 20. Send word to the cook to boil that meat an hour and a half. 21. Run quick—your birds have all escaped. 22. Bring some boiling water. 23. I will run and tell him (*it*). 24. Many causes concurred to destroy that man. 25. It (*ce*) was in vain that he fled from his destiny. 26. I beg that you will (*subj.*) run quickly. 27. He came near falling—he was running so fast. 28. This exercise is far from being correct (*il s'en faut beaucoup, etc.*). 29. He was near running (*il faillit*) against a tree. 30. I had almost forgotten (*je faillis*) what you told me.



## LESSON LI.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION:  
CONTINUED.

II.—Verbs which change their root-vowel in conjugation (sometimes called *strong verbs*), and which also follow, in part, the *third* conjugation; viz.:

acquérir, *to acquire.* tenir, *to hold.*  
mourir, *to die.* venir, *to come.*

1. In acquérir, *to acquire*, the root-vowel *e* becomes *ie* in the singular and third plural of the present indicative,\* and *i* in the past participle and the preterit.\* The past participle ends in *-s*. All other endings are like the *third* conjugation; † thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| acquérir.          | acquérant.           | acquis.           |

*Inaïc. Pres.* acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.

*Pret.* acquis.

*Fut.* acquerrai.

*Subj. Pres.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

Similarly, conquérir, requérir, etc.

**Note.**—The variation of *é, e, è*, is according to the general rule of orthography. (L. II. 3, etc.)

2. In mourir, *to die*, the root *ou* becomes *eu* in the singular and third plural of the present indicative,\* and *o* in the past participle—mort (Lat. *mort-uus*). It makes its preterit (like courir) in *-us*. All other endings are like the *third* conjugation; † thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| mourir.            | mourant.             | mort.             |

*Indic. Pres.* meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.

*Pret.* mourus.

*Fut.* mourrai.

*Subj. Pres.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

Similarly, se mourir, *to be dying*, or *about to die*.

**Idiom.**—Mourir has être as auxiliary. With reference to the *recent past*, the compound present is usual; as, mon ami F. est mort hier, died yesterday, etc.; but in historical statements, generally the preterit; as, Napoléon mourut à St. Hélène. (See *naître*, L. LV.)

\* And derivatives.

† See Remark at end of Lesson L.

3. In *tenir*, *to hold*, *venir*, *to come*, the root-vowel *e* becomes *ie* in the singular and third plural of the present indicative,\* and in the future:\* and *i* in the preterit,\* which has only *consonant endings* (without *i*). All other endings follow the *third conjugation*.† In the future,\* *d* is inserted between *n* and *r*; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>          | <i>Present Part.</i>    | <i>Past Part.</i>        |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
|                     | <i>tenir.</i>               | <i>tenant.</i>          | <i>tenu.</i>             |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>tiens, tiens, tient,</i> | <i>tenons, tenez,</i>   | <i>tiennent.</i>         |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>tins, tins, tint,</i>    | <i>tinmes, tîntes,</i>  | <i>tinrent.</i>          |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>tiendrai.</i>            |                         |                          |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | <i>tienne, tiennes,</i>     | <i>tienne, tenions,</i> | <i>teniez, tiennent.</i> |

Similarly, *abstenir*, *contenir*, *retenir*, etc.; *venir*, *convenir*, *revenir*, *survenir*, and many other compounds.

**Idioms.**—*Tenir* and *venir* have many idiomatic uses, as:

1. *Tenir de*, *to belong to*, *partake of*—

*Cela tient du prodige*, that is something wonderful.

*Tenir à*, *to depend upon*:

*Cela tient à vous*, that depends on you.

*A quoi tient-il qu'il ne soit venu*, *why* has he not come? etc.

**IMPERATIVE.** *Tiens*; hold! stop! see here! etc.

2. *Venir*, with infinitive, without preposition:

“ “ *venez me voir*, come and (or to) see me.

“ “ with *de*—to come from, to have just—

“ “ *je viens de dîner*, I have just dined.

“ “ with *à*—to happen—

*s'il venait à mourir*—if he should happen to die.

*D'où vient que*—whence comes it?—why is it?—that, etc.

4. *Gésir*, *to lie*, changes its root *e* to *i*. It is used only in the following:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Pres. Part.</i>                 |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
|                     | <i>gésir.</i>      | <i>gisant.</i>                     |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | — — —              | <i>gît, gisons, gisez, gisent.</i> |

**Idiom.**—*Ci-gît*, here lies; *ci-gisent*, here lie,—in epitaphs.

III.—Verbs which present, in part, the endings of the *first conjugation* (*liquid roots*, *-l* or *-r*).

5. The verbs *cueillir*, *to gather*, *saillir*, *to jut out*, take the endings of the *first conjugation* (*donner*) in the *present participle*, the *present indicative*, and also in the *future*.\* Thus:

\* And derivatives, see note \*, p. 187.

† See Remark at end of Lesson L.

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>   | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | cueillir.  | cueillant.           | cueilli.          |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | cueille,* cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent. |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | cueillis.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | cueillerai.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | cueille.   |                      |                   |

Similarly accueillir, recueillir, etc.

**Note.**—Saillir, meaning *to gush out*, is regular like finir.

6. The compounds assaillir, *to assail*, tressaillir, *to tremble*, are regular in the future; † otherwise like 1; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>             | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | assaillir.                     | assaillant.          | assailli.         |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | assaille, etc. (like cueille). |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | assaillis.                     |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | assaillirai.                   |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | assaille.                      |                      |                   |

7. The verbs ouvrir, *to open*, offrir, *to offer*, couvrir, *to cover*, souffrir, *to suffer*, follow the *first* conjugation in the present participle and present indicative, † and have in the past participle a special ending *-ert*; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                               | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | ouvrir.  | ouvrant.             | ouvert.           |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | ouvre,* ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent. |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | ouvris.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | ouvrirai.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | ouvre.   |                      |                   |

Similarly, découvrir, recouvrir, rouvrir, etc.

#### IV.—SPECIAL FORMS.

8.—1. Bénir, *to bless*, besides the regular past participle béni, has also bénit, in an adjective sense; as, de l'eau bénite, etc.

2. Fleurir, *to bloom*, has present participle florissant; imperfect florissais, etc., in the figurative sense, *to flourish*.

3. Issir, *to issue*, has only the past participle issu.

4. For haïr, see L. XXII. 4.

**Remark.**—All the irregular verbs of the Second Conjugation are marked by the absence of the syllable *-iss-* (L. XXIII.), in the present participle and its derived tenses. This syllable is derived from the Latin *-esc-*, used in forming *inchoative* or *inceptive* verbs, as *floreo*, *florescere*,

\* For the interrogative forms, cueillé-je, ouvré-je, see L. XXIV. 2. † See \*, p. 193.

etc. It is therefore not an original or radical element in the verbs of this conjugation, the verbs without *-iss-* following more closely the original Latin form. But as the verbs with *-iss-* are so much the more numerous, they are counted in French as the regular form.

Most of the irregular verbs in this conjugation are derived from verbs also irregular in Latin.

### Theme 44 (1, 2, 3, 4).

1. Washington died in 1799. 2. He had acquired a great reputation as (a) warrior and as (a) statesman. 3. The poor child is dead—is dying. 4. The dead come back no more. 5. No one honestly acquires a great fortune without industry. 6. Paris contains more than 1,000,000 (of) inhabitants. 7. Restrain your tears; you have not (the) time to (*de*) weep. 8. Our friends came to see us yesterday. 9. We had just dined when they arrived (*pret.*). 10. I have just read a very interesting book. 11. Come and see us to-morrow. 12. I pray that you will come (*subj.*). 13. The stories of (the) African travellers partake of the marvellous. 14. That depends only on you. 15. It depends only on him to (*de*) do that. 16. It shall not depend upon us—(we will not be to blame—*tenir à*) that you are (*subj.*) not happy. 17. Whence come so many accidents on the railroads? 18. If you go to France, when will you come back? 19. Napoleon became First Consul in 1799, and died in 1821. 20. Past hours never come back. 21. The Romans conquered Britain, but they did not hold it long. 22. These books belong to my brother; why do you retain them? 23. One remembers past joys with a pleasure mingled with (*de*) regret. 24. One acquires knowledge only by diligence. 25. I am coming from your house (*chez-vous*); why did you not come to see me? 26. What has become of (*what is become*) my French Grammar? 27. I have just found one; perhaps it is yours. 28. Here lie those who died for their country. 29. While I was holding her by the hand, he happened (*vint*) to arrive. 30. Stop; we have just finished all. (*Tenir* and *venir* in particular have many important compounds, as well as idiomatic forms, not here included).

### Theme 45 (5, 6, 7, 8).

1. The girls are gathering roses. 2. We will welcome them with pleasure. 3. Columbus discovered America in the year 1492. 4. Open your (*art.*) mouth, and speak loud. 5. The enemy (*pl.*) will assail the bridge with all their force. 6. The cavalry will cover the retreat of our men (*of ours*). 7. The plot has been discovered! You will tremble with (*de*) horror on reading the news. 8. The let-

ters of the conspirators have been opened; they will all suffer death. 9. Suffer tears to me alone. 10. He has offered us his assistance. 11. The general ordered that the spy should suffer (*subj.*) death. 12. Do you demand that we shall suffer (*subj.*) that outrage? 13. I tremble with fear that he will be (*subj.*) destroyed. 14. Our friends were welcomed with joy; their secret was not discovered. 15. Gather me those flowers there, if you please. 16. I would gather you some if I dared (*it*). 17. All misfortunes assail me; no one offers me any help. 18. She trembled with fear, in offering him the flowers. 19. You have suffered much: I offer you the assurance of my sympathy. 20. He has offered me 200 francs for my watch. 21. Who has opened all these windows? 22. One gathers no roses without thorns. 23. In some countries, the merchants open their shops every day of the week. 24. We discover new beauties every day, if we open our (*art.*) eyes upon the works of nature. 25. The earth covers itself with (*de*) verdure in (*à*) the spring. 26. The soldiers have covered themselves with glory. 27. He suffers proudly all misfortunes. 28. The gates of the city opened (*reflex.*) before the conqueror. 29. He listened to me (with) his mouth and (his) eyes open.

---

## LESSON LII.

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. The irregular verbs of the third conjugation are very numerous—much more numerous than the verbs which regularly follow *vendre* (L. XXII.). The principal departures from this form consist in:

1. Modifications of the root (of the infinitive) before vowel or consonant endings, or both; as, *craindre*, *craignant*, *crains*, etc.
2. Different forms of the past participle; as, *suivi*, *mis*, *écrit*, etc.
3. The ending of the preterit in *-us* instead of *-is*; as, *crus*, etc.

2. But no one of these features will furnish a basis for a satisfactory classification. They can only be noted and remembered as they occur, separately or in groups. For the convenience of the learner, the verbs are here arranged according to the form of the infinitive.\* The resemblances as well as the differences of verbs of

---

\* This does not, of course, claim to be a classification, but only an arrangement for the convenience of the learner. It is here adopted for want of any convenient classification-suitable for beginners.



like infinitives are thus brought together, and special irregularities will be learned by contrast with the more usual forms. Only such further explanations will be given as may be thought necessary to assist the learner.

**Note.**—As already remarked, students who know Latin may be further aided by their knowledge of the Latin conjugations, with occasional hints from the teacher. But such explanations cannot be generally introduced in a book intended for beginners.

3. For convenience of memory, the verbs will be given in the following order: 1st. Those in which the final *-re* of the infinitive is preceded by a vowel or diphthong; 2d. Those in which it is preceded by a consonant. Special references and comparisons, between different classes, will be made when required.

I.—Verbs in *-aire*—*plaire, taire, faire, traire, braire*.

4. *Plaire, to please*, and *taire, to keep silent* (active), have *s* in the present participle, etc., and *u* in the past participle and preterit; thus:

|    |                     |  |                   |
|----|---------------------|--|-------------------|
| 1. | <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Part.</i>                               | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|    | <i>taire.</i>       | <i>taisant.</i>                                    | <i>tu.</i>        |
|    | <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>tais, tais, tait, taisons, taisez, taisent.</i> |                   |
|    | <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>tus.</i>  |                   |
|    | <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>tairai.</i>                                     |                   |
|    | <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | <i>taise.</i>                                      |                   |

Similarly, *se taire, to be silent*; as, *tais-toi, taisez-vous, hush*.

2. *Plaire* has in the singular present *plaît*, with circumflex. Similarly its compounds, *complaître, déplaire*, etc.

**Idioms.**—*Plaire* takes indirect object—as: *il plut au roi*, it pleased the king; *s'il vous plaît*, if you please, impersonal; *plaise à Dieu*, please God; *plût-il à Dieu*, would God, etc.

5. *Faire, to do, make*, also has *s* in the present participle, etc., but makes its past participle in *-t* (Lat. *factum*), and has other special irregularities; thus:

|  |                     |   |                   |
|--|---------------------|---|-------------------|
|  | <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Part.</i>                            | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|  | <i>faire.</i>       | <i>faisant.</i>                                 | <i>fait.</i>      |
|  | <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.</i> |                   |
|  | <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>fis.</i>                                     |                   |
|  | <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>ferai.</i>                                   |                   |

*Subj. Pres. fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.*

Similarly *défaire, refaire, satisfaire*, etc.

**Note.**—Faire is *especially* irregular :

1. In the second person plural present, *faites*. Compare *êtes*, and, hereafter, *dites*.

2. In the third person plural present, *font*. Compare *ont*, *sont*, *vont*.

3. In the shortened stem of the future, *ferai*. Other dissyllabic parts also sound *ai* as if written *e* ; as, *faisant*, *faisons*, etc. (as if *fesant*, *fesons*).

4. In the stem of the present subjunctive, and of the preterit.

It thus appears that faire belongs to the class of *strong* verbs, L. LI.

**Idioms.**—Faire is used in many idiomatic senses. Before an infinitive, without preposition, it has the sense of *to cause to do*, *to have done* ; or gives transitive sense to intransitive verb ; as, *faire relier un livre*, to have a book bound ; *faire voir*, to make see, to show ; *faire bouillir*, to boil (*transitive*), etc. The two verbs will stand together, and the pronoun object, or objects, will precede both. If the governed verb have a direct object, the personal (*causative*) object will be *indirect* ; otherwise it will be *direct* ; as,

je le ferai venir, I will send for him.

je lui ferai voir quelque chose, I will show him something.

je le lui ferai voir, I will show it to him.

Dieu le fit attendre aux Juifs, God made the Jews expect him, etc. (L. XLI. 3.)

6. Traire, *to milk*, changes *i* to *y* before vowels (except *e*), and has its past participle in *-t* (Lat. *tractum*). It has no preterit ; thus :

*Infinitive.*    *Present Part.*    *Past Part.*

traire.            trayant.            trait.

*Indic. Pres.* traie, traies, traie, trayons, trayez, traient.

*Pret.* —

*Fut.* trairai.

*Subj. Pres.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

Similarly distraire, extraire, soustraire, etc.

7. The verb braire, *to bray*, is conjugated like traire, but is used only in a few forms ;

il brait, ils braient (present).

il braira, future, etc.

### Theme 46.

1. Your conduct does not please your father. 2. Please God that he may come-back (*subj.*) soon ! 3. Would to God that he had never come here ! 4. What are you doing there ? 5. I am doing only my duty ; if that does not please you, I must displease you (*subj.*). 6. Your noise distracts me ; hush. 7. Have you done your exercises ? 8. No, we are doing them now. 9. Be silent, if you please. 10. What will you do with (*de*) so much money ?

11. Cicero made four orations against Catiline. 12. (The) careless scholars make many mistakes even in the easiest exercises. 13. What kind of weather will it be (*make*) to-morrow? 14. It has *been* cold to-day. 15. I hope (that) it will *be* warmer to-morrow. 16. The treaty did not please the emperor. 17. Napoleon made (the) war several times against (*à*) the English. 18. Let him do his duty, whether (*soit que*) it pleases him or not. 19. Have you had your grammar bound? 20. No, I will have it bound to-morrow; I had not had time (*de*) to have it bound to-day. 21. I will show you a great wonder, if you are silent a few minutes. 22. I have already shown it to your brother; it pleased him very much. 23. I shall have a pair of shoes made next week. 24. I must have my old boots repaired also. 25. I made him do it; punish me for it (*en*). 26. These beautiful young ladies make themselves loved by (*de*) all. 27. Let God's will be done, whatever it may make us suffer. 28. Make him understand that his conduct has displeased me very much. 29. I will make him know it, if he shows himself here. 30. I have extracted this passage in order to show it to you. 31. What pleases once does not please always. 32. I will do all that you please (shall please you). 33. You would do better, if you were silent. 34. As soon as I (shall) have done my exercise, I will be silent. 35. What have you had done (what is it that, etc.)? Why do you do such (*de*) things? 36. What is done, is done. 37. By whom have you had this coat made (*reflex.*)? 38. I (have) had it made by a French tailor (*reflex.*). 39. The general marched (*faire*) the army all (the) night.

---

## LESSON LIII.

II.—Verbs in *-oire*, boire, croire.

1. Boire, *to drink*, changes its stem to *buv-* in the present participle, and to *boiv-* in the third plural present; and has *u* in the past participle and preterit; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                              | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | boire.  | buvant.              | bu.               |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.       |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | bus.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | boirai.   |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent. |                      |                   |

**Note.**—The stem is properly *boiv*, or *buv*, *v* being omitted before consonants or *u*.

2. Croire, *to believe*, changes *i* to *y* before vowels (except *e*), and also has *u* in past participle and preterit, thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>         | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | croire.                    | croyant.             | cru.              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | crois, crois,              | croit, croyons,      | croyez, croient.  |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | crus.                      |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | croirai.                   |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | croie (regular— <i>pl.</i> | croyions, etc.).     |                   |

Similarly accroire.

**Note.**—Compare hereafter croître, *to grow*. (L. LV. 3.)

**Idioms.**—Croire may govern infinitive, without preposition, with same subject (L. XLII. 6); as, *je crois le voir*, I think I see him. A dependent verb with *que* will be indicative, if croire is affirmative; but generally subjunctive, if croire is negative or interrogative (L. XLIII. 7); as, *je crois que cela est vrai*, or *n'est pas vrai*. But *je ne crois pas que cela soit vrai*; *croyez-vous que cela soit vrai?* etc.

**Remark.**—The change of *i* to *y* is regular as heretofore (*fuir*, *traire*, etc.), and the only irregularity is in the preterit *us*. As already remarked (L. LII. 1, 3) this form is common to a large number of verbs; as heretofore, *courus*, *mourus* (Conj. II.), *plus*, *tus*, *bus*; and in many verbs hereafter.

III.—Verbs in *-uire*, conduire, luire.  
construire, nuire.  
cuire, etc. etc.

3. The verbs conduire, *to conduct*, construire, *to construct*, cuire, *to cook*, *bake*, etc., have *s* in the present participle. The past participle ends in *-t*, the preterit in *-is*, thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>      |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|                     | conduire.          | conduisant.          | conduit.               |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | conduis, conduis,  | conduit, conduisons, | conduisez, conduisent. |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | conduisis.         |                      |                        |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | conduirai.         |                      |                        |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | conduise.          |                      |                        |

Like conduire, déduire, induire, introduire, produire, réduire, séduire, traduire (and other compounds from Latin *duco*, *duxi*, *ductum*).

Like construire, détruire, instruire, etc. (Lat. *struo*, *struxi*, *structum*).

Like cuire, cuire (Lat. *coquo*, *coxi*, *coctum*).

4. But luire, *to shine*, nuire, *to hurt*, have past participle in *i*; otherwise like the preceding, thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                           | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | luire.                                       | luisant.             | lui.              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | luis, luis, luit, luisons, luissez, luisent. |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | [luisis] <i>not in use.</i>                  |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | luirai.                                      |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | luisse.                                      |                      |                   |

Like *luire*, *reluire* (these are not used in the preterit).

**Idiom.**—*Nuire* (Lat. *nocere*), takes indirect object; as, *nuire à la santé*, to injure the health. Preterit, *nuisis*, etc.

5. *Bruire*, to *roar*, has only *bruyant*, *il bruit*, *il bruyait*. (Compare *braire*, L. LII. 7.)

**Remark.**—The student of Latin may observe that the *strong* or consonant participles in Latin give French past participles in *-t*; as, *conduit* (*conductum*), *cuit* (*coctum*), *fait* (*factum*), *trait* (*tractum*), etc.; while the *weak* or vowel forms in Latin give *vowel endings* in French; as, *plu* (*placitum*), *tu* (*tacitum*), *cru* (*creditum*), *nui* (*nocitum*), etc.; and like cases hereafter. Exceptions should be noted, as they occur.

### Theme 47 (1, 2).

1. What are you drinking? 2. I am drinking red wine. 3. Drink some water; I have already drunk some. 4. Let us drink a cup of this good coffee. 5. I do not drink coffee; I will drink a cup of tea. 6. Do you believe what he says? I do not believe it. 7. I should not believe it, if he repeated it a hundred times. 8. It is impossible to believe such a thing; is it not? 9. All Christians believe in (à) the immortality of the soul. 10. If I believed all that you believe, I should be very unhappy. 11. In France they drink more wine than beer. 12. The ancients drank (*impf.*) several sorts of wine. 13. They have not paid-for the beer which they have drunk. 14. The Mohammedans drink no wine. 15. I do not believe that he believes (*subj.*) that. 16. I believe I see (*infin.*) him behind that tree. 17. Some men believe that they are always right. 18. Do you believe that he is right in saying that? 19. I thought he had written to you; but now I believe that I was mistaken. 20. It is dishonorable to profess what one does not believe. 21. When one has drunk too much wine, one will believe everything. 22. Believing himself lost, he drank the fatal poison. 23. Do not drink that; it is not good to (à) drink.

### Theme 48 (3, 4).

1. The city of Carthage was destroyed by the Romans. 2. Hear this sentence; I have translated it into (*en*) French. 3. He has not



conducted himself well. 4. This bread is not well baked; bake it longer. 5. Temptations often seduce men to (*à*) forget their duty. 6. Many poets have translated the Iliad of Homer. 7. Who will conduct us to (*art.*) peace? 8. This house was constructed in the year 1874. 9. The troubles of the mind often produce maladies of the body. 10. He introduced me with much kindness. 11. His bad conduct has injured his reputation. 12. Don't you see something shining (that shines) there? 13. The sun shines brightest at midday. 14. All the stars were shining in a clear sky. 15. He injured his health by his excesses. 16. Do not injure your friends by your imprudence. 17. No one injures himself willingly. 18. Instruct your children, that (*pour que*) they may be obedient and grateful. 19. That great age produced many great men. 20. The world has produced only one Shakespeare — only one Homer. 21. The most celebrated German writers have been translated into English. 22. The first steam engines were constructed in England. 23. Do you ask me to (*subj.*) translate this exercise? 24. No, I asked that he should translate it. 25. I had constructed a machine, but the wind has destroyed it. 26. Do not translate that sentence so freely; translate it more exactly. 27. Those who build houses on the sand, will see (*verront*) them destroyed (*infin.*). 28. Aristotle instructed Alexander the Great. 29. All roads lead to Rome. 30. The Romans destroyed the city, and reconstructed it afterwards.

## LESSON LIV.

IV.—Verbs in *-ire*, confire, dire.  
suffire, lire, écrire.  
circoncire, rire, frire.

1. Confire, *to preserve* (*pickle*), suffire, *to suffice*, circoncire, *to circumcise*, have *s* in the present participle; but differ in the past participle.

1. Confire has past participle in *-t* (Lat. *confectum*), thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>    |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|                     | confire.           | confisant.           | confit.              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | confis, confis,    | confit, confisons,   | confisez, confisent. |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | confis.            |                      |                      |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | confirai.          |                      |                      |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | confise,           |                      |                      |

2. Suffire has the past participle in *-i*, *suffi*.

3. Circoncire has the past participle in *-s*, *circoncis* (Lat. *circumscissum*).

2. Dire, *to say*, has *s* in present participle, and past participle in *-t* (Lat. *dictum*), and is specially irregular in second plural present; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i>  | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | dire.              | disant.               | dit.              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | dis, dis,          | dit, disons,          | dites, disent.    |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | dis.               |                       |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | dirai.             |                       |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | dise               | (regularly declined). |                   |

**Note.**—The present (and imperative) *dites* differs from the preterit *dites* only in accent. With *dites*, compare the like forms *êtes*, *faites*.

#### COMPOUNDS OF DIRE.

Redire, *to say again*, is conjugated like *dire*. Other compounds are exceptions:

1. Other compounds of *dire* (except *maudire*), as, *contredire*, *médire*, *prédire*, etc., have the usual ending in the second plural present; as, *contredisez*, *médisez*, *prédisez*, etc.; but in other respects are like *dire*.

2. *Maudiré*, *to curse*, takes *ss* instead of *s* in the present participle and its derivatives; as, *maudissant*, *maudissons*, *maudissez*; present subjunctive, *maudisse*, etc.

**Idiom.**—In consequence of the resemblance of the present and preterit of *dire*, its imperfect is often used, idiomatically, in the sense of the preterit. *Dire* is used in many idiomatic phrases; as, *c'est à dire*, that is to say; *pour ainsi dire*, so to speak, etc.

3. Lire, *to read*, has *s* in the present participle, and *u* in the past participle and preterit; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | lire.              | lisant.              | lu.               |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | lis, lis,          | lit, lisons,         | lisez, lisent.    |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | lus.               |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | lirai.             |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | lise.              |                      |                   |

Similarly, *élire*, *relire*, etc.

**Note.**—The past participle *lu* (Lat. *lectum*) is an exception from the rule stated, L. LIII. Rem.

4. Rire, *to laugh*, makes no change in the root, and is irregular only in the past participle, *ri*; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                              | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | rire.   | riant.               | ri.               |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | ris, ris,                                       | rit, rions,          | riez, rient.      |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | ris.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | rirai.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | rie (regular, <i>pl.</i> riions, riiez, rient). |                      |                   |

Similarly, *sourire*, to smile (Lat. *ridere*, *subridere*; p. p. *risum*).

**Idioms.**—Rire de—se rire de, to laugh at. Il disait en riant—He laughed and said—(said laughing). C'est pour rire—It is a joke, etc. Rire à, to smile upon.

5. Écrire, *to write*, has *v* in the present participle, and *-t* in the past participle—(Lat. *scriptum*); in the preterit *-vis*; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>                   |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
|                     | écrire.            | écrivant.            | écrit.                              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | écris, écris       | écris                | écris, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent. |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | écrivis.           |                      |                                     |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | écrirai.           |                      |                                     |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | écrive.            |                      |                                     |

**Note.**—The stem is properly *écriv-re*, *v* being omitted before consonants. See *boire*, etc.

Similarly, derivatives (from Lat. *scribere*) in *-crire*, and *-scrire*, as *décrire*, to describe, *inscrire*, to inscribe, *prescrire*, *proscrire*, *souscrire*, etc.

6. Frire, *to fry*, has only past participle *frit*, pres. sing. *fris*, etc., and future and conditional, *frirai*, *frirais*, etc.

V.—Verbs in *-ore*, *clore*,  
éclore.

7.—1. Clore, *to close*, has past participle *clos* (Lat. *clusum*), and third person present, *il clôt*, with circumflex. It is used only as follows:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | ———       | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------------|
|                     | clore.             |           | clos.             |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | clos, clos,        | clôt, ——— |                   |
|                     | ———                | ———       |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | clorai.            |           |                   |
|                     | ———                | ———       |                   |

2. Éclore, *to open*, has present participle *éclosant*, and circum-

flex also in future and conditional, *éclôrai*, etc. Otherwise like *clore*—as *il éclôt*, etc.

VI.—Verbs in *-ure*, *conclure*, etc.

8. *Conclure*, to *conclude*, keeps its root unchanged, and is irregular only in the preterit, *conclus*; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>conclure.</i>   | <i>concluant.</i>    | <i>conclu.</i>    |

*Indic. Pres.* *conclus*, *conclus*, *conclut*, *concluons*, *concluez*, *concluent*.

*Pret.* *conclus.*

*Fut.* *conclurai.*

*Subj. Pres.* *conclue* (regular—*pl. concluions*, *concluez*, *concluent*).

Similarly, *exclure*, to *exclude* (Lat. *concludo*, *excludo*).

*Inclure*, to *include*, *enclose*, has past participle *inclus*, in adjective sense; as, *la lettre ci-incluse*—herewith enclosed.

**Note.**—With *conclure*, compare *rire*. The root vowel in each remains unchanged throughout.

Theme 49 (1, 2).

1. We are preserving some cherries; we (have) preserved some last year. 2. It suffices that he has (*subj.*) written once; let him write no more. 3. It is sufficient to (*de*) tell him what I have said to you. 4. The least thing suffices to (*pour*) annoy him. 5. That will not suffice; tell him exactly what I have written. 6. You say that you have written to him; you contradict yourself. 7. Yesterday you told me that you would write no more. 8. Do you predict that it will be good weather? 9. What will our friends say of it? 10. Do not tell me anything of it; I shall believe nothing. 11. Are you writing your translation? 12. No, I have written it; I am now writing my exercise. 13. The Jews circumcised their male children (on) the eighth day. 14. It will suffice that you write him what I was saying. 15. Say it, and resay it, if you please; I will not contradict you. 16. Do not say that again. 17. I have often said to myself: why do men write so many books? 18. It is right that one should always tell the truth. 19. Do not speak ill of anybody. 20. Do not curse your enemies. 21. I begged that I might be written to (on). 22. Prescribe to me my duty; that will suffice. 23. The Iliad was written by Homer. 24. He described to me the beauties of that country.

## Theme 50 (3-8).

1. What are you reading there? 2. I am reading *Athalie*, (a) tragedy by Racine. 3. Have you read the works of V. Hugo? 4. No, I have not read them; I shall read some of them next year. 5. I beg that you read me this letter. 6. Louis Napoleon was elected President of the French Republic. 7. Formerly the nobles elected the king. 8. He read the letter in a loud tone, and re-read it, without saying a word. 9. One learns to write well by reading good authors. 10. You read too fast; read more slowly. 11. Why do you laugh? I am not laughing. 12. Then, I was laughing at what he was saying. 13. What is it that made him laugh (*faire rire*) so? 14. He was laughing at a man who was reading in a ridiculous tone. 15. He said to me, laughing: I am not laughing at you. 16. Fortune smiles upon the brave. 17. People often smile upon flatterers. 18. Who laughs (the) last, laughs (the) best (*adv.*). 19. I shall punish all (those) who (shall) laugh. 20. They laughed at it (*en*) very much. 21. I pray that you will not (*subj.*) laugh at me. 22. He saluted me smiling. 23. I found the doors closed. 24. These roses are full (*tout*) blown. 25. The king concluded a treaty of peace with his rebellious subjects. 26. This man ought to be excluded from our society. 27. Read the letter here enclosed, and write me what you (shall) conclude to (*à*) do. 28. I beg that you (will) conclude that affair without delay. 29. This sentence concludes the fiftieth exercise.

## LESSON LV.

VII.—Verbs in *-aître, -ôître, connaître, naître*,  
paraître, croître,  
paître.

1. The verbs *connaître*, to know, *paraître*, to appear, *paître*, to feed, have *ss* in the present participle, and *u* in the past participle and preterit. The vowel *i* when preceding *t* is circumflex; thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| connaître.         | connaissant.         | connu.            |

*Indic. Pres.* connais, connais, connaît, -aissons, -aissez, -aissent.

*Pret.* connus.

*Fut.* connaîtrai.

*Subj. Pres.* connaisse.



Like connaître, méconnaître, reconnaître.

Like paraître, apparaître, comparaître, disparaître, réparaître.

Like paître, repaître.

**Note.**—Paître is not used in the past participle and preterit, but repaître has repu, repus, etc. (Pu, pus, etc., would be like pouvoir, L. LVIII.)

2. Naître, *to be born*, differs from the preceding in the past participle, né (like first conjugation, Lat. *natum*), and in the irregular preterit, naquis; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>  |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
|                     | naître.            | naissant.            | né.                |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | nais, nais,        | naît, naissons,      | naissez, naissent. |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | naquis.            |                      |                    |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | naîtrai.           |                      |                    |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | naisse.            |                      |                    |

**Idiom.**—Naître has for its auxiliary être. In speaking of living persons, the compound present is usual; of the dead, the preterit; as,

La reine d'Angleterre est née en 1819; but, Thiers naquit en 1797.

Faire naître is frequent in the sense of *to give rise to, to produce*. The form née, as in Madame Dufour née Latouche, is used in English.

3. Croître, *to grow* (like connaître, etc.), has *ss* in the present participle and *u* in the past participle and preterit. It also adds *circumflex* to every form which would otherwise be the same as like forms of croire, *to believe* (L. LIII. 2)—thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>    |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|                     | croître.           | croissant.           | crû.                 |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | croïs, croïs,      | croît, croissons,    | croissez, croissent. |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | crûs.              |                      |                      |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | croîtrai.          |                      |                      |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | croisse.           |                      |                      |

Like croître, accroître, décroître, recroître.

**Remark.**—The *ss* in these verbs represents Latin *sc* (*cognosco, paresco, nascor, cresco*), and the *circumflex* arises from contraction. See Remark, L. LI. Likewise connaître, etc., **1**, were once written with *oi*, connoître, connois, etc.; as in *reconnaissance*.

VIII.—Verbs in *-indre*, craindre, etc.

peindre, etc.

joindre, etc.

4. Verbs in *-indre* have *gn* in the present participle, and before all vowel endings; but simply *n* before consonant endings, -s, -s, -t. The past participle ends in -t, the preterit in -is.

This class is numerous, but in all the conjugation is the same, the only difference being in the root, thus:

1. Craindre, *to fear*.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| craindre.          | craignant.           | craint.           |

*Indic. Pres.* crains, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent.

*Pret.* craignis.

*Fut.* craindrai.

*Subj. Pres.* craigne.

Like craindre, other verbs in *-aindre*; plaindre, *to pity*, se plaindre, *to complain*, contraindre, *to constrain*, etc.

**Idioms.**—For the construction of craindre with subjunctive, see L. XLIII.

2. Similarly, peindre, *to paint*, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| peindre.           | peignant.            | peint.            |

*Indic. Pres.* peins, peins, peint, peignons, peignez, peignent.

*Pret.* peignis.

*Fut.* peindrai.

*Subj. Pres.* peigne.

Like peindre, other verbs in *-eindre*, atteindre, *to reach*, enfreindre, *to break*, feindre, *to feign*, restreindre, *to restrict*, teindre, etc.

3. Similarly, joindre, *to join*, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| joindre.           | joignant.            | joint.            |

*Indic. Pres.* joins, joins, joint, joignons, joignez, joignent.

*Pret.* joignis.

*Fut.* joindrai.

*Subj. Pres.* joigne.

Like joindre, other verbs in *-oindre*, oindre, *to anoint*, rejoindre, etc.

**Remark.**—Verbs of this class are from Latin verbs in *-ng-*; as feindre, from *ingere*; joindre, from *ungere*, etc. The stem in French is properly *gn* (liquid), with *g* omitted before consonants, and *d* inserted before *r* (as in tiendrai, etc.).

### Theme 51 (1, 2, 3).

1. I formerly knew a man who had twelve fingers—six on each hand. 2. Do you not recognize me? I knew you in France. 3. I should not have recognized you; you appear to be much older than you (*ne*) were. 4. Athalie appeared in 1691; it was the last work of

its author. 5. Its great merit was at first ignored (*méconnaître*), but was afterwards recognized by (*de*) all. 6. The sun appeared on (*à*) the horizon, and the stars disappeared before it. 7. She is the only French woman that I have (*subj.*) ever known. 8. Do you know this man's writing? I should recognize it easily. 9. Napoleon was born in 1759; he and Wellington were born the same year. 10. Where were you born, and when? 11. I was born in England in 1841 [let this question be answered variously by pupils]. 12. Everything revives under the light of the sun. 13. Entire cities have disappeared beneath the shocks of an earthquake. 14. The officer discovered two new-born children. 15. My oldest daughter was born in the month of February, and died in the month of June. 16. The power of Rome grew (*impf.*) during many centuries, and then decreased. 17. God makes the flowers spring (*naître*) and grow. 18. Confidence arises from kindness. 19. She made herself known to the king, who recognized her immediately. 20. The sun reappears, and all revives. 21. The days increase in (*en*) length in (*au*) spring, and decrease in autumn. 22. The light of the sun makes the plants grow. 23. I believe that his courage grows with (*art.*) danger. 24. Do you believe that plants grow in the night? 25. Some persons do not believe that they grow as rapidly in the night as in the day.

### Theme 52 (4, 1, 2, 3).

1. This great writer admirably depicts the events of the war. 2. Pity me, I am old and poor, said she. 3. Of what do you complain? You are always complaining of one thing or (*an*) other. 4. The wife complained bitterly of her husband's cruelty. 5. The true hero fears God, and knows no other fear. 6. He feigned to (*de*) be sick. 7. Let not the guilty complain of his punishment. 8. We fear our poor friend is very ill. 9. I feared he was complaining without reason. 10. Fear nothing, there is no danger. 11. Fear him who fears not to (*de*) do wrong. 12. After several hours, the sailors extinguished the fire. 13. We are constrained to (*de*) complain of you. 14. Put out the light, and let's go to bed. 15. He who infringes the laws of his country ought to fear punishment. 16. Fearing to interrupt him, I feigned (*impf.*) to be asleep. 17. Do you fear that the fire will reach the roof, before it is (*subj.*) extinguished? 18. They rejoined each other (*se, comp. pres.*) at the end of the journey. 19. That man joins insolence to audacity. 20. Do you not fear that you are mistaken? 21. That scene is depicted

with a marvellous eloquence. 22. Some savage races anoint their whole bodies with (*de*) oil. 23. The king was anointed with the sacred oil. 24. Do not fear; we will extinguish the fire before (*avant de*) going-to-bed. 25. The head of the victim was bound (*ceindre*) with flowers before the sacrifice. 26. Soon or late, punishment will overtake the wicked. 27. I should fear his resentment, if pity did not constrain him. 28. Our friends have joined (*reflex.*, *à*) us, and now we shall fear nothing.

## LESSON LVI.

IX.—Verbs in *-oudre*, *coudre*, *résoudre*.  
*moudre*, *absoudre*.

1. *Coudre*, to sew (Lat. *consuere*), has *s* before all vowel endings; otherwise regular; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                                   | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | <i>coudre.</i>                                       | <i>cousant.</i>      | <i>cousu.</i>     |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.</i> |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>cousis.</i>                                       |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>coudrai.</i>                                      |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | <i>couse.</i>  |                      |                   |

Like *coudre*, *découdre*, *recoudre*.

2. *Moudre*, to grind (Lat. *molere*), has *l* before all vowel endings, and *-us* in the preterit; otherwise regular; thus:

|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i>                                   | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | <i>moudre.</i>                                       | <i>moulant.</i>      | <i>moulu.</i>     |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent.</i> |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>moulus.</i>                                       |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>moudrai.</i>                                      |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | <i>moule.</i>  |                      |                   |

Like *moudre*, *émoudre*, *remoudre*, *remoudre*.

3. *Résoudre*, to resolve (Lat. *resolvere*), has the stem *résolv-* before vowel endings; but *v* is dropped before *u* in the past participle and preterit; *d* is also dropped in the present singular (L. XXII. 4), thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| résoudre.          | résolvant.           | résolu.           |

*Indic. Pres.* résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent.

*Pres.* résolu.

*Fut.* résoudrai.

*Subj. Pres.* résolve.

**Note.**—The past participle is résous, *f.* résoute, in the sense of *dissolved, decomposed.*

**Idioms.**—*Reflexive*, se résoudre à, to resolve upon; je m'y suis résolu, I have resolved upon it; rarely, *transitive*, to determine (persuade) any one.

4. Absoudre, to *absolve*, has past participle absous, *f.* absoute; similarly, dissoudre, to *dissolve*, past participle dissous, dissoute; otherwise like résoudre.

**Remark.**—In these verbs *d* is inserted before *r*, as in craindre, etc. L. I.V. at end.

X.—Verbs in *-vre*, suivre.  
vivre.

5. Suivre, to *follow*, has past participle in *i*, and drops *v* in the present indicative singular (L. XXII. 4); otherwise regular, thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| suivre.            | suivant.             | suivi.            |

*Indic. Pres.* suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent.

*Pres.* suivis.

*Fut.* suivrai.

*Subj. Pres.* suive.

Similarly poursuivre, s'ensuivre.

**Note.**—Je suis, I *follow*, is identical with je suis, I *am*.

6. Vivre, to *live*, also drops *s* in the present singular, and is specially irregular in the past participle and preterit, thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| vivre.             | vivant.              | vécu.             |

*Indic. Pres.* vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.

*Pres.* vécus.

*Fut.* vivrai.

*Subj. Pres.* vive.

Similarly revivre, survivre (Lat. *vivere*—*victum*).

**Note.**—Vivre is in some of its parts identical with voir, to see. (L. LIX. 4.)



**Idiom.**—Vive le roi—vive la république, (long) live—I etc. Qui vive? who goes there?

XI.—The verbs *prendre*, *mettre*, *vaincre*.

7. *Prendre*, to *take*, drops *d* before vowel endings, and doubles *n* before *e* mute. The past participle and preterit are *pris*; thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| <i>prendre.</i>    | <i>prenant.</i>      | <i>pris.</i>      |

*Indic. Pres.* prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent.

*Pret.* pris.

*Fut.* prendrai.

*Subj. Pres.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

Like *prendre*, *apprendre*, *comprendre*, *entreprendre*, *se méprendre*, *repandre*, *surprendre*, etc. (Lat. *prehendere*, *prehensum*.)

**Idioms.**—*Prendre*, *se prendre*, are used in many idioms; also *s'en prendre*, *s'y prendre*; as, *je m'en prends à vous*, I blame you for it; *je m'y prendrai*, I will set about it, etc.

8. *Mettre*, to *put*, has *mis* in past participle and preterit, and (like *battre*, L. XXII. 5) drops one *t* in the present singular; thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| <i>mettre.</i>     | <i>mettant.</i>      | <i>mis.</i>       |

*Indic. Pres.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent.

*Pret.* mis.

*Fut.* mettrai.

*Subj. Pres.* mette.

Like *mettre*, *admettre*, *commettre*, *omettre*, *promettre*, *soumettre*, *transmettre*, etc. (Lat. *mittere*, *missum*.)

**Idioms.**—*Mettre*, *se mettre*, are used in many idioms: as, *se mettre à*, to begin, etc.; *les enfants se mirent à pleurer*; *se mettre bien—mal*, to dress well—or badly, etc.

**Remark.**—The forms *pris*, *mis*, compare with *acquis*, *circoncis*. In every case the past participle *s* represents Latin *s* (*acquisitum*, etc.).

9. *Vaincre*, to *conquer*, changes *c* to *qu* before vowel endings, except *u*; otherwise regular, thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| <i>vaincre.</i>    | <i>vainquant.</i>    | <i>vaincu.</i>    |

*Indic. Pres.* vains, vains, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent.

*Pret.* vainquis.

*Fut.* vaincrai.

*Subj. Pres.* vainque.

Similarly, *convaincre*, to convince.

10. For rompre, il rompt, see L. XXII. 4; for battre, L. XXII. 5. Similarly, corrompre, interrompre; abattre, débattre, combattre, etc.

### Theme 53 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6).

1. These poor girls sew all day for two francs. 2. These shirts are badly sewn—unstitch them and sew them again more carefully. 3. I beg that you will stitch (sew) my handkerchiefs as carefully as possible. 4. What are you sewing there? I am sewing a collar for my brother. 5. I sent the shirts back (*renvoyer*) to the seamstress, in order that she might (*subj.*) sew them again. 6. People (*on*) sew now principally with sewing machines. 7. With one of these, a person sews now more in a day than several persons (*ne*) sewed formerly. 8. We always buy ground coffee; the merchant grinds it for us. 9. The mills of the gods grind slowly, but they grind well. 10. The miller will grind our wheat to-morrow; he is not grinding at all (*point*) to-day. 11. He would have ground it yesterday, if we had sent it to him. 12. They grind in Holland principally with wind-mills. 13. This flour is badly ground; let the miller grind me another sack (of it). 14. We have solved all these questions; have you also solved them? 15. Water dissolves sugar and salt. 16. The prisoner has been acquitted of the crime of which (*dont*) he was accused. 17. The sun has dissolved the clouds into (*en*) vapor. 18. I have resolved to do my duty. 19. The queen has dissolved the parliament. 20. They have resolved to accept these conditions. 21. Justice would often absolve those whom the law condemns. 22. He determined his father to (*à*) leave the council. 23. We are resolved upon it; we will no longer suffer them to (*subj.*) insult us without reason. 24. I beg that you will solve me this problem. 25. No; let the teacher solve it; I am solving another (of them). 26. I have resolved (*reflex.*) to follow your advice. 27. Follow (*sing.*) me. 28. Let us follow the examples of the wise and (of the) good. 29. (He) who loves me will follow me. 30. Our (men) pursued the enemy all (the) night. 31. You have heard his counsel, follow it. 32. It follows (results) that there will be no war. 33. We shall pursue the same course to (*jusqu'à*) the end. 34. A great battle followed. 35. The patriarchs lived (*impf.*) much longer than we (*ne*) live. 36. Few (*peu de*) persons now live more than 100 years (*centaine*). 37. Parr lived more than 150 years. 38. My oldest brother is living still. 39. Love lives on (*de*) hope. 40. It is sad to survive (*à*) all one's friends.

41. Louis XIV. survived *both* his son *and* his grandson. 42. He has lived only for his country. 43. These flowers will not live long; they will revive no more. 44. (Long) live (*art.*) Queen Victoria.

### Theme 54 (7, 8, 9, 10).

1. Our soldiers took—lost—and retook the bridge in less than two hours. 2. Take (a) good counsel; my counsel is taken. 3. We have been learning (*pres.*) French for (*depuis*) six months. 4. We did not understand what he taught us. 5. We often blame others for the faults which we have committed. 6. We will not admit him into our society. 7. You mistake (*méprendre*); you have not understood me. 8. What have you learned, with so much trouble? 9. I was surprised to (*de*) hear him speak thus. 10. I have omitted nothing; I shall omit nothing. 11. He began to write as soon as he had (*comp. pret.*) learned that news. 12. When Columbus undertook his first voyage, he had only three small ships. 13. Why do you blame me for it? 14. She promised to write to me, but she has omitted to do it. 15. He committed a great crime, and has suffered its (*en*) punishment. 16. The Romans subjected almost all Europe. 17. One does not learn without studying (*infin.*). 18. Who has permitted you to do that? 19. The teacher promises to teach us French in one year. 20. The army put to flight (*en fuite*) the troops of the enemy. 21. Why do you not put on your gloves? I never put on gloves. 22. I am surprised that you do not (*subj.*) put them on; we put them on always in winter. 23. Promise me (it) faithfully; do not omit what I have told you to (*de*) write. 24. After three long wars, the Carthaginians submitted (*reflex.*) to the Romans. 25. Napoleon conquered the armies of Germany. 26. Many of the kings whom he had conquered survived him. 27. The vanquished (*past part.*) submitted to the conquerors. 28. He has convinced me; I now understand that I was wrong. 29. (The) truth does not always convince the unjust. 30. We will conquer or (we will) die. 31. Flattery corrupts and conquers those who listen to it. 32. He is not allowed to go out, unless (*à moins que*) he promises to return soon. 33. They all began laughing (*infin.*). 34. Why is he beating his dog; what has the dog done (*qu'est-ce que*)? 35. The smith strikes the iron while it is hot. 36. Combat (the) difficulties, and you (*sing.*) will conquer them. 37. The child interrupts me; let him be silent. 38. The boys are fighting; tell them not to (*de*) fight. 39. The poor bird struggles (*reflex.*) in vain in his cage. 40. Let us conquer or (let us) die (*imper.*).

## LESSON LVII.

## VERBS IN -OIR.

1. Verbs in -oir are, in many French grammars, counted as a distinct conjugation, forming the Third Conjugation of regular verbs (L. XLVIII., Note 1). Those, however, which follow a common form are very few in number, and most of the others are very irregular. It is therefore more convenient to treat them all as irregular verbs, as is now done in many of the best grammars.

2.—1. With few exceptions verbs in -oir have the consonant endings, -s, -s, -t, in the present singular, and -u, -us, in the past participle and the preterit.

2. Before the present endings, -s, -s, -t, the final consonant of the root is generally omitted, and the root vowel is often modified.

3. Verbs in -*eoir*, *devoir*,  
recevoir, etc.

1. In recevoir, *to receive*, -*ev*- is changed to -*oiv*- in the present (singular and third plural),\* and is omitted in the past participle and preterit. In the present singular *v* is omitted; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| recevoir.          | recevant.            | reçu.             |

*Indic. Pres.* reçois, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent.

*Pret.* reçus.

*Fut.* recevrai.

*Subj. Pres.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

**Note.**—The cedilla is necessary to preserve the pronunciation. Like recevoir, apercevoir, concevoir, décevoir, percevoir (all derivatives of Lat. *capere*). Compare boire, L. LIII.

**Idiom.**—Apercevoir, *to perceive*, is often reflexive; as il s'en aperçut, he perceived it, (in an *intellectual* sense).

2. Devoir, *to owe*, has circumflex in the past participle, dû, by way of distinction from the preposition and article, du; but the accent is not retained in the feminine or plural, being there unnecessary. Otherwise like recevoir; thus:

---

\* See L. XLVIII. 4.



|                     |                    |                      |                           |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>         |
|                     | devoir.            | devant.              | dû, <i>f.</i> due.        |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | dois, dois,        | doit,                | devons, devez, doivent.   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | du.                |                      |                           |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | devrai.            |                      |                           |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | doive, doives,     | doive,               | devions, deviez, doivent. |

Like *devoir*, *redevoir*.

These seven verbs constituted the entire (third) conjugation, above referred to.

**Idioms.**—*Devoir* (Lat. *debere*) is used, before infinitive, in many idioms corresponding to various auxiliary or idiomatic forms in English, as *must*, *shall*, *should*, *ought to*, *have to*, *am to*, etc.; as:

Je dois écrire, I must—have to write.

J'ai dû écrire, I had to write.

Je devrai écrire, I shall have to write.

Il a dû beaucoup souffrir, he has had to suffer much, or, he *must have* suffered much.

Il devait partir hier, he had to leave yesterday.

Il avait dû partir hier, he was to *have left* yesterday.

Vous ne devriez pas faire cela, you ought not to do that.

Vous n'auriez pas dû faire cela, you ought not *to have done* that.

Dussé-je mourir, though I should die. (See L. XXIV. 2.)

And reflexively, *cela ne se doit pas*, that must not be, etc. In many such idioms, *devoir* is nearly equivalent to the impersonal  *falloir*, L. XXXVII.; but is of different construction.

**Remark.**—In the translation of such forms the *defectiveness* of some of the English auxiliaries must be borne in mind. This gives rise to a change in the form of the following infinitive (as *should go*, *should have gone*, etc.), which in French will be expressed simply by the inflection of *devoir*, as in the above examples.

4. *Plevoir*, *to rain* (impersonal), omits *v* in the present, and has *u* in past participle and preterit, thus:

|                     |                    |                      |                   |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|                     | plevoir.           | pleuvant.            | plu.              |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | il pleut.          |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | il plut.           |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | il pleuvra.        |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | il pleuve.         |                      |                   |

5. *Mouvoir*, *to move*, changes the stem to *meuv-* in the present (singular and third plural), and omits *v* in the singular; past participle and preterit, also in *u*; thus:

|                     |                    |                      |                             |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
|                     | <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i>           |
|                     | mouvoir.           | mouvant.             | mu.                         |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | meus, meus,        | meut,                | mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | mus,               |                      |                             |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | mouvrai.           |                      |                             |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | meuve, meuves,     | meuve,               | mouvions, mouviez, meuvent. |



Similarly *émouvoir*, *promouvoir* (Lat. *movere*, etc.).

**Note.**—The past participle of *mouvoir* is sometimes written *mû*. For the change of *ou* to *eu*, compare *mourir*, L. LI.; also *pouvoir*, *vouloir*, L. LVIII.

**Idiom.**—*Mouvoir*, *se mouvoir*, are used in physical sense; *émouvoir*, *s'émouvoir* in moral sense, of *emotion*.

### Theme 55.

1. We receive letters every day. 2. I received your letter the 6th of the month, and I answered it (*y*) the same day. 3. That answer I have never received (*it*). 4. Have you ever received any money from your uncle? 5. No; I have never received any (*en*) from him. 6. I shall believe him no more; he has deceived me once. 7. Too much (*Le trop de*) confidence often deceives itself. 8. Do you perceive that tree there? I do not perceive it all. 9. What news have you received from your brother? 10. Receive the assurance of my most respectful regard. 11. He does not conceive how she loves him. 12. Her love for him is not to-be-conceived (*se conçoit*). 13. He is deceiving her; she does not perceive it (*reflex.*). 14. Our offer was badly received. 15. That discovery is due to the Chinese. 16. I have to write a letter immediately. 17. You ought (*cond.*) to be ashamed to (*de*) say that. 18. I owe this happiness to you. 19. I shall have to leave to-morrow; I ought to have left yesterday. 20. You ought not to have done that. 21. I had to do it; and I shall have to do it more than once. 22. This news must have been very agreeable to you. 23. One ought always to reflect before (*de*) speaking (*infin.*). 24. You must have said that without thinking. 25. Though I should die for it (*en*), I must answer. 26. You are right: I ought to have done it. 27. How much do you owe him? 28. If you owed him anything, you should have paid him (*it*) before. 29. This must have happened during the night. 30. You ought (*cond.*) not to love him: I must (*it*). 31. That must not (be) (*reflex.*). 32. I think I ought to do what you ask; you ought (*so, le*). 33. It was raining all night; I think it will rain again to-day. 34. Let it rain; we shall be at home. 35. In some countries, it seldom rains (*ne-guère*). 36. This little key moves the whole machine. 37. What is it that moves you thus? 38. Do you perceive that that object moves (*reflex., subj.*)? 39. The king promoted him on the battle-field. 40. The earth moves (*reflex.*) around the sun. 41. All Europe was moved at this news. 42. Let no one move these books until my return.

43. All these things do not move him (*point*). 44. Everything moves, in nature and in history. 45. Not to move at all, is (*c'est*) to be dead.

## LESSON LVIII.

Specially irregular are the verbs pouvoir, vouloir.  
valoir, savoir.  
falloir.

1. Pouvoir, *to be able*, like *mouvoir*, changes *ou* to *eu* in the present, omitting *v* in the singular. In the singular present, however, it has *-x* instead of *-s*; also, in the first person, a second form, *je puis*. From this is derived the present subjunctive *puisse*. In the future *v* changes to *r*; past participle and preterit also in *u*; thus:

*Infinitive. Present Part. Past Part.*

pouvoir. pouvant. pu.

*Ind. Pres.* peux, *peux*, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent.

or *puis*.

*Preter.* pus.

*Fut.* pourrai.

*Subj. Pres.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.

**Note.**—*Je puis* is more frequent than *je peux*. In the negative, *puis* is used without *pas*; *peux* usually with *pas*. (L. XXIX. 7.) See also 4, note.

**Idioms.**—*Pouvoir* answers to the idiomatic uses of the English auxiliaries *can, could*; *may, might*; and is used (like *devoir*) before the infinitive, in corresponding auxiliary idioms. (See Remark under *devoir*.) Thus:

*Vous pouvez aller*, you can go.

*Vous pourrez aller*, you will be able to go.

*Je n'ai pu aller*, I could not go (*past*).

*Je ne pourrais aller*, I could not go (*now*).

*Je n'aurais pu aller*, I could not have gone.

*Il peut avoir dix ans*, he may be 10 years old.

*Il pourrait avoir dix ans*, he might be 10 years old.

*Il pouvait avoir dix ans*, he might have been 10 years old.

Also reflexive, *cela se peut*—*se pourrait*—*se pouvait*—that *may be, might be, might have been*, etc.; and elliptically, *puissé-je*, may I (L. XXIV. 2); *puissiez-vous*, may you, etc.

**Remark.**—The English past, *could (was able)*, must be distinguished from the conditional, *could (should or would be able)*, as in the above examples. The auxiliary forms in English are often equivalent.

Also the verb form *peut être* must be distinguished from *peut-être*, *perhaps (may be)*.

2. Valoir, *to be worth*, also has *x* instead of *s* in the present singular. The stem *val-* changes to *vau-* before consonants, and to *vail-* in the present subjunctive. In the future *d* is inserted before *r*; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>   | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--|----------------------|-------------------|
| valoir.  | valant.              | valu.             |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> vaux, vau <i>x</i> , vaut, valons, valez, valent.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i> valu <i>s</i> .   |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i> vaudrai.   |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i> vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent. |                      |                   |

Like *valoir*, *équivaloir*, *prévaloir*; but the latter has present subjunctive *prévaille*.

**Idioms.**—*Valoir bien*, *to be well worth*; as, *cela vaut bien la peine*, that is well worth the trouble; *valoir mieux*, *to be better*. The second infinitive takes *de*; as, *il vaut mieux mourir que de fuir*, it is better to die than to flee. *Cela ne vaut rien*, that is worth nothing. *Proverb*, *Le jeu ne vaut pas la chandelle*.

3. *Falloir*, *to be necessary* (impersonal), corresponds exactly with the third person singular of *valoir*, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>            | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| falloir.                      | fallant.             | fallu.            |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> il faut.  |                      |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i> il fallut.       |                      |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i> il faudra.        |                      |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i> il faille. |                      |                   |

**Idioms.**—*Falloir* is followed by the infinitive, or by *que* and the subjunctive. (See L. XXXVII. 10; L. XLIII. 6.) It corresponds to the English auxiliary *must*, or to the forms *have to*, *be obliged to*, etc. With respect to idiomatic tense-forms see note on *devoir* (L. LVII.); as:

Il lui faut écrire, he must write; or, il faut qu'il écrive.

Il lui fallait écrire, he had to write; or, il fallait qu'il écrivit.

Il lui faudra écrire, he will have to write; or, il faudra qu'il écrive.

Il lui aurait fallu écrire, he would have had to write, etc.; or, il aurait fallu qu'il écrivit, etc.

**Note.**—With regard to the sequence of tenses in subjunctive, see L. XLIII. 2.

Other idiomatic phrases are: *que vous faut-il?* what do you want? *Il me faut de l'argent*; *combien vous faut-il?* etc. *Il le faut*, it must be—is necessary; *ce qu'il faut*; *comme il faut*, etc. For *peu s'en faut*, etc., see *faillir*. (L. L. 4).

4. *Vouloir*, *to wish*, also has *x* instead of *s* in the present singular; *voul-* becomes *veul-* in the present indicative, and *veuill-* in the pres-

ent subjunctive; *l* is dropped before consonant endings, and in the future *d* is inserted; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| vouloir.           | voulant.             | voulu.            |

*Indic. Pres.* veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.

*Pret.* voulus.

*Fut.* voudrai.

*Subj. Pres.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, *veuillent*.

The imperative is *veuille, veuillez*, 'please' (with infinitive).

**Idioms.**—Vouloir answers to the English *will, would*, in the sense of *volition* or *purpose*, but not as simple future or conditional auxiliary. (For auxiliary forms compare 1, Remark.) It is used also in many idiomatic phrases; as, *que voulez-vous?* what do you mean? *Que veut dire cela?* what does that mean? *Je le veux bien*, I am willing. *Vouloir du bien, or du mal à*, to wish well, or ill, to. *En vouloir à*, to blame—be angry with; as, *je vous en veux*; *ne leur en veuillez pas*, etc.; *veuille Dieu*, would God; *Dieu le veuille*, God grant it, etc.

Vouloir may be followed by the infinitive, or by *que* with subjunctive; as, *que voulez-vous faire—que voulez-vous que je fasse?* (L. XLI. 1).

**Remark.**—The foregoing verbs present many irregularities, which, however, are not without analogies. For the change of *ou* to *eu*, in *pouvoir, vouloir*, compare *mouvoir*: for that of *al* to *au* in *valoir, falloir*, compare the article *au* (for *al*), the plurals *aux, maux* (for *als, mals*), the adjective *beau* (for *bel*), etc. For the future *pourrai*, compare *courrai, mourrai*; for *d*, in *vaudrai, faudra, voudrai*, compare *tiendrai, viendrai*; and the subjunctive *aille* (*l mouillée*) with *aille, faille, veuille*. The ending *x* in the present does not extend beyond these forms, *peux, vaux, veux*. (The Latin primitives *possum, posse* (*pouvoir*), and *volo, velle* (*vouloir*), are also very irregular).

5. *Savoir, to know*, changes *v* to *u* in the future; and is specially irregular in the present participle, present subjunctive and imperative; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| savoir.            | sachant.             | su.               |

*Indic. Pres.* sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent.

*Pret.* sus.

*Fut.* saurai.

*Subj. Pres.* sache, saches, sache, sachiez, sachiez, sachent.

*Imperative.* sache, sachez.

The imperfect is regular, *savais*, etc.

**Note.**—*Savoir* and *avoir* are the only verbs in which the present participle presents a different stem from the imperfect (*ayant, avais*). In both, the subjunctive present and the imperative follow the irregular present participle (*aie, ayons*, etc.). Compare also their futures, *aurai, saura*.



**Idioms.**—Savoir (like pouvoir) may also be used negatively without *pas*; as, *je ne sais quoi*, I do not know what; *je ne sais que dire*, I do not know what to say, etc. The conditional, *saurais*, is used (with *ne*) in the auxiliary sense of *cannot*; as, *je ne saurais faire cela*, etc. In some idiomatic phrases, the subjunctive is used for the indicative; as, *autant que je sache*, so far as I know, etc.

Savoir must not be confounded in sense with *connaître*. (See *Lexicon*.)

**Remark.**—The verbs included in this lesson, besides special irregularities, are also specially idiomatic. Only a few of the idiomatic forms are here indicated—for others see *Lexicon*.

### Theme 56.

1. I cannot do it; I would (it) if I could (it). 2. We are not able to start to-day; will you wait for us till to-morrow? 3. I cannot (it); I must start to-day. 4. We could not go yesterday, though we wished it (*subj. past*). 5. I seek some one who may (*subj.*) teach me what I wish to know. 6. I have not been able to do what you asked me. 7. I would (*cond.*) I could (do) it. 8. May you soon return. 9. That cannot (be)—I could not believe it. 10. May you never forget this lesson. 11. All these motives cannot prevail over me. 12. What do you wish? how can (*fut.*) I aid you? 13. I should not like (wish) to do it; but I cannot refuse you. 14. It is better to laugh than to (*de*) weep. 15. That is not worth so much trouble. 16. He is good for nothing; I will (*veux*) not listen to him. 17. How much is your horse worth? 18. These two horses are well worth 400 dollars. 19. Would you like to learn to (*à*) dance? 20. I should like it well; but I do not believe that it is (*subj.*) worth so much trouble. 21. These things are worth nothing; I could not take them. 22. We did not wish to come, but we have had to (*falloir*). 23. I know nothing of it; I wish (*cond.*) I could tell you something. 24. Religion commands (*veut*) that we (*on*) obey our parents. 25. When he knew this, he would not believe it. 26. That is not possible (*se peut*); I cannot do it. 27. The Queen must know what the Parliament wishes. 28. Please read this letter; it is well worth the trouble. 29. Why are you angry with (*vouloir*) me? I could not help (*empêcher*) it. 30. What does that mean? do you know what you say? 31. God grant that he may soon come. 32. Knowing what you had written, I could not reply. 33. I neither can nor (*ni ne*) will do what he asks. 34. To-morrow you shall know all. 35. What does he mean? 36. He wants little of being a fool. 37. I do not believe that this letter is (*subj.*) worth the trouble of reading it. 38. What do you wish me to say? I cannot deny what I know. 39. I cannot (*saurais*)



tell you what he wants. 40. How many languages do you know (how) to speak? 41. As soon as he knew that his friend had arrived, he went to see him. 42. Know that the king wills it. 43. I know nothing (of) more precious than time. 44. He does not yet know (how) to read. 45. To *know* a man, and to *know* a thing are not the same in French. 46. I could not tell you all that I have heard. 47. I will maintain my right, come (*subj.*) who will (*fut.*). 48. I have never known such a man; he does not know what to say. 49. He did not know that his father was dead. 50. Who wills what he can, can (*fut.*) what he will (*fut.*). 51. I could not have gone with you, though I had (*subj.*) wished it.

## LESSON LIX.

The verbs choir,

voir,

seoir, and their compounds.

1. Choir, *to fall*, past participle échu (aux. être), has no other forms.
2. Déchoir, *to decay, fall down*, has no present participle, and is irregular in the future; thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| déchoir.           | [déchoyant].         | déchu.            |

*Indic. Pres.* déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient.

*Pret.* déchus.

*Fut.* décherrai.

*Subj. Pres.* déchoie.

3. Échoir, *to fall to, fall due*, has present participle échéant, and is in some parts defective; otherwise like déchoir.
4. Voir, *to see*, has irregular future, like déchoir, but forms its preterit in -is; thus:

|                    |                      |                   |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
| voir.              | voyant.              | vu.               |

*Indic. Pres.* vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.

*Pret.* vis.

*Fut.* verrai.

*Subj. Pres.* voie.

Similarly entrevoir, revoir.

**Note.**—With the futures, *décherrai*, *verrai*, compare *enverrai*, *acquerrai*. The preterit singular of *voir* has the same forms as the present singular of *vivre*. (L. LVI. 6.)

**Idioms.**—In *je le vis percer* (L. XLI. 3), the infin. expresses the *act*; *percé*, p. part., would express the *state*. *Je le vois venir*—or *qui vient*, I see him coming. *Voyons*, let's see! *Vu que*, inasmuch as. (For *faire voir*, to show, see *faire*, L. LII.; for *voici*, *voilà*, L. XXVII., Note 1.)

5. *Prévoir*, to *foresee*, is like *voir*, except in the future, *prévoirai*.

6. *Pourvoir*, to *provide*, has also, in the future, *pourvoirai*, and in the preterit, *pourvus*, etc.; otherwise like *voir*.

7. *Seoir*, to *sit*, has only the participles *séant*, *sis*. It is used, in this sense, only in the technical language of the law.

8. *Seoir*, to *fit*, has *d* in the present singular (Lat. *sedere*) and present participle *seyant*. It is used only in third person, and is otherwise, also, defective; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Part.</i>                    | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---|-------------------|
| <i>seoir.</i>       | <i>seyant.</i>                          | <i>sis.</i>       |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>il sied, ils seient (or siéent).</i> |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>il siéra, ils siéront.</i>           |                   |

*Imperfect*, *il seyait*; *conditional*, *il siérait*; other forms not in use.

9. *Asseoir*, to *seat* (reflexive, *s'asseoir*, to *sit down*), has also *d* in the present singular, and the past participle and preterit in *-is*; and is otherwise irregular; thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Part.</i>   | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|
| <i>asseoir.</i>     | <i>asseyant.</i>   | <i>assis.</i>     |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseient.</i>  |                   |
| <i>Pret.</i>        | <i>assis.</i>  |                   |
| <i>Fut.</i>         | <i>assiérai.</i>   |                   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>  | <i>asseie, asseies, asseie, asseyions, asseyiez, asseient.</i> |                   |

**Note.**—There is much diversity in the forms of this verb. Before *e* mute, *y* is sometimes retained, as *asseyent*, *asseye*, etc. The future and conditional are also written *asseyerai*, *asseyerai*, etc. Also forms with *oi* are used (as in *surseoir* following):

10. *Surseoir*, to *suspend* (in legal phrase), is much more regular, thus:

| <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>Present Part.</i>  | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|---------------------|---|-------------------|
| <i>surseoir.</i>    | <i>sursoyant.</i>   | <i>sursis.</i>    |
| <i>Indic. Pres.</i> | <i>surseois, surseois, surseoit, sursoyons, sursoyez, surseoient.</i> |                   |

*Indic. Pret.* sursis.

*Fut.* surseoirai.

*Subj. Pres.* surseoie, etc. (Also, sursois, sursoie, etc., without *e*.)

**Note.** — With the past participles *sis*, *assis*, *sursis*, compare *acquis*, *concis*, (mis,) *pris*. (L. LVI. 8, Remark.) *Seoir* and its compounds are the only verbs in *-oir* which do not have their past participle in *-u*; and with *voir* and its compounds, the only ones which do not have their preterit in *-us*. (L. LVII. 2.)

### Theme 57.

1. A great prize has fallen to us. 2. The kingdom fell to his two brothers. 3. Everything decays with (*art.*) time. 4. The leaves are fallen. 5. This debt falls-due on the 10th; the first half has already fallen-due. 6. These authors will soon decline; we shall see them quite forgotten (*part.*). 7. I will see what will be the end of it. 8. Do you see that man there? he is quite blind; he does not see at all (*point*). 9. As soon as he saw his friend, he ran to embrace him. 10. If you go to Paris, you will see many beautiful things, which cannot be described. 11. There they are; do you not see them running (*infin.*)? 12. I saw him killed (*infin.*) before (*à*) my eyes. 13. I have never seen anything more beautiful in (*de*) my life. 14. He foresaw the danger, and provided the means of defense. 15. We will provide for (*à*) all your wants. 16. Nature provided him with (*de*) the greatest talents, but we have seen them destroyed. 17. One does not always see what one (the) most wishes to see. 18. They did not see me; I was seated behind the door. 19. When shall we see you again? 20. When shall we see each other (*reflex.*) again? 21. The wise (man) will foresee dangers, and will provide himself against them. 22. Come and see me to-morrow; I will show you some things that you have never seen. 23. One must provide in youth against the ills of old age. 24. How does this coat fit me? it fits you well. 25. This hat will not suit you; it does not fit you at all. 26. Such things are not seen (*reflex.*) every day. 27. The tribunal has adjourned. 28. Why do you not sit down? 29. She was seated on a wooden bench (*of wood*). 30. I pray that you will be seated. 31. I thank you; I sit too much; I do not wish to sit now. 32. I will sit on this stone, whence (*d'où*) I shall see the whole city. 33. We offered him a chair, but he did not sit down. 34. Provided you will soon return, I will go with you. 35. Although she took a seat near me, I did not see her. 36. Seeing that he did not wish to sit, I did not take a seat myself. 37. Inasmuch as this affair is ended, the tri-

bunal will adjourn. 38. What exercise is this ? It is the 57th and last. 39. Shall we never see the end of it ? 40. Yes—at last here is (*see*) the end of it; let us sit down and rest.

An alphabetical list of Model Irregular Verbs is appended for reference.

**Remark.**—In the first study of the Irregular Verbs, teachers may well select such only as are deemed most important, omitting details. In their review, the related forms should be grouped or contrasted, as indicated in the text. Such exercises will be found very useful in fixing the forms in their memory; and with advanced students—especially those who know Latin—may be usefully pursued further than has been suggested in the text. It is of course impossible to adapt the treatment of the verbs exactly to all classes of pupils. The effort has been made here to give what might be useful to all, without being too much for any. The references to Latin are intended of course only for students of Latin: other points of explanation may be insisted on, or not, as each teacher may deem best.

It may not be improper, however, to remark in conclusion that, after all explanation, the *verbs must be learned by heart to be known*. This is the main object, and all explanation is valuable only as an aid to this. It may therefore be sometimes important, especially with younger pupils, to guard against giving *too much* explanation. On this question, however, every teacher can best judge for himself. The materials here presented may be used either in full, or by selection, as may be deemed proper.

# ALPHABETICAL LIST OF MODEL IRREGULAR VERBS.

In the following list, besides the model verbs explained in the text, some of the most important, of like conjugation, are indicated by references. Obvious compounds are not included, unless specially irregular.

|             |               |           |               |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| Absoudre,   | LESS. LVI. 4. | cueillir, | LESS. LI. 1.  |
| acquérir,   | " LI. 4.      | cuire,    | " LIII. 3.    |
| aller,      | " XLIX. 2.    | déchoir,  | " LIX. 2.     |
| assaillir,  | " LI. 2.      | détruire, | " LIII. 3.    |
| asseoir,    | " LIX. 9.     | devoir,   | " LVII. 3, 2. |
| avoir,      | " X.          | dire,*    | " LIV. 2.     |
| battre,     | " XXII. 5.    | dormir,   | " L. 1.       |
| bénir,      | " LI. 8.      | échoir,   | " LIX. 3.     |
| boire,      | " LIII. 1.    | éclore,   | " LIV. 7, 2.  |
| bouillir,   | " L. 3.       | écrire,†  | " LIV. 5.     |
| braire,     | " LII. 7.     | envoyer,  | " XLIX. 3.    |
| bruire,     | " LIII. 5.    | être,     | " XII.        |
| ceindre,    | " LV. 4.      | faillir,  | " L. 4.       |
| choir,      | " LIX. 1.     | faire,    | " LII. 5.     |
| circoncire, | " LIV. 1, 3.  | falloir,  | " LVIII. 3.   |
| clore,      | " LIV. 7.     | feindre,  | " LV. 4.      |
| conclure,   | " LIV. 8.     | fleurir,  | " LI. 8.      |
| conduire,   | " LIII. 3.    | frire,    | " LIV. 6.     |
| confire,    | " LIV. 1.     | fuir,     | " L. 2.       |
| connaître,  | " LV. 1.      | gésir,    | " LI. 7.      |
| construire, | " LIII. 3.    | haïr,     | " XXII. 4.    |
| coudre,     | " LVI. 1.     | issir,    | " LI. 8.      |
| courir,     | " L. 6.       | joindre,  | " LV. 4.      |
| couvrir,    | " LI. 3.      | lire,     | " LIV. 3.     |
| craindre,   | " LV. 4.      | luire,    | " LIII. 4.    |
| croire,     | " LIII. 2.    | maudire,  | " LIV. 2, 2.  |
| croître,    | " LV. 3.      | mentir,   | " L. 1.       |

\* For compounds of dire, L. LIV. 2, Note 1.

† Also compounds in -crire and -scrire.



|            |               |              |               |
|------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| mettre,    | LESS. LVI. 8. | rire,        | LESS. LIV. 4. |
| moudre,    | " LVI. 2.     | rompre,      | " XXII. 4.    |
| mourir,    | " LI. 5.      | saillir,     | " LI. 1.      |
| mouvoir,   | " LVII. 5.    | savoir,      | " LVIII. 5.   |
| naître,    | " LV. 2.      | sentir,      | " L. 1.       |
| nuire,     | " LIII. 4.    | seoir,       | " LIX. 7, 8.  |
| offrir,    | " LI. 3.      | servir,      | " L. 1.       |
| oindre,    | " LV. 4.      | sortir,      | " L. 1.       |
| ouvrir,    | " LI. 3.      | souffrir,    | " LI. 3.      |
| paître,    | " LV. 1.      | suffire,     | " LIV. 1, 2.  |
| paraître,  | " LV. 1.      | suivre,      | " LVI. 5.     |
| partir,    | " L. 1.       | surseoir,    | " LIX. 10.    |
| peindre,   | " LV. 4.      | taire,       | " LII. 4.     |
| plaindre,  | " LV. 4.      | teindre,     | " LV. 4.      |
| plaire,    | " LII. 4, 2.  | tenir,       | " LI. 6.      |
| pleuvoir,  | " LVII. 4.    | traire,      | " LII. 6.     |
| poindre,   | " LV. 4.      | tressaillir, | " LI. 2.      |
| pourvoir,  | " LIX. 6.     | vaincre,     | " LVI. 9.     |
| pouvoir,   | " LVIII. 1.   | valoir,      | " LVIII. 2.   |
| prendre,   | " LVI. 7.     | venir,       | " LI. 6.      |
| prévaloir, | " LVIII. 2.   | vêtir,       | " L. 5.       |
| prévoir,   | " LIX. 5.     | vivre,       | " LVI. 6.     |
| recevoir,  | " LVII. 3.    | voir,        | " LIX. 4.     |
| repentir,  | " L. 1.       | vouloir,     | " LVIII. 4.   |
| résoudre,  | " LVI. 3.     |              |               |

For orthographical changes in Conjugation I, see Lesson XXV.

# TABLE OF NUMERALS.

## CARDINALS.

|                    |     |                      |            |
|--------------------|-----|----------------------|------------|
| un, une,           | 1.  | quarante,            | 40.        |
| deux,              | 2.  | cinquante,           | 50.        |
| trois,             | 3.  | soixante,            | 60.        |
| quatre,            | 4.  | soixante-dix,        | 70.        |
| cinq,              | 5.  | soixante-onze,       | 71.        |
| six,               | 6.  | soixante-douze,      | 72.        |
| sept,              | 7.  | soixante-treize,     | 73.        |
| huit,              | 8.  | soixante-quatorze,   | 74.        |
| neuf,              | 9.  | soixante-quinze,     | 75.        |
| dix,               | 10. | soixante-seize,      | 76.        |
| onze,              | 11. | soixante-dix-sept,   | 77.        |
| douze,             | 12. | soixante-dix-huit,   | 78.        |
| treize,            | 13. | soixante-dix-neuf,   | 79.        |
| quatorze,          | 14. | quatre-vingts,       | 80.        |
| quinze,            | 15. | quatre-vingt-un,     | 81.        |
| seize,             | 16. | quatre-vingt-deux,   | 82.        |
| dix-sept,          | 17. | quatre-vingt-dix,    | 90.        |
| dix-huit,          | 18. | quatre-vingt-onze,   | 91.        |
| dix-neuf,          | 19. | quatre-vingt-douze,  | 92.        |
| vingt,             | 20. | quatre-vingt-treize, | 93.        |
| vingt et un, }     | 21. | cent,                | 100.       |
| vingt-un (une), }  |     | cent et un, }        | 101.       |
| vingt-deux,        | 22. | cent un, (une), }    |            |
| vingt-trois,       | 23. | cent deux,           | 102.       |
| vingt-quatre,      | 24. | cent trois,          | 103.       |
| vingt-cinq,        | 25. | deux cents,          | 200.       |
| vingt-six,         | 26. | trois cents,         | 300.       |
| vingt-sept,        | 27. | quinze cents,        | 500.       |
| vingt-huit,        | 28. | mille,               | 1,000.     |
| vingt-neuf,        | 29. | deux mille,          | 2,000.     |
| trente,            | 30. | un million (de),     | 1,000,000. |
| trente et un, }    | 31. | deux millions (de),  | 2,000,000. |
| trente-un (une), } |     | un million cent,     | 1,000,100. |
| trente-deux,       | 32. | etc.                 |            |

## ORDINALS.

|                 |       |                        |              |
|-----------------|-------|------------------------|--------------|
| premier, {      | 1st.  | vingt-troisième,       | 23d.         |
| première, }     |       | vingt-quatrième,       | 24th.        |
| second, {       |       | trentième,             | 30th.        |
| seconde, }      | 2d.   | quarantième,           | 40th.        |
| deuxième, }     |       | cinquantième,          | 50th.        |
| troisième,      | 3d.   | soixantième,           | 60th.        |
| quatrième,      | 4th.  | soixante-dixième,      | 70th.        |
| cinquième,      | 5th.  | soixante-onzième,      | 71st.        |
| sixième,        | 6th.  | soixante-douzième,     | 72d.         |
| septième,       | 7th.  | quatre-vingtième,      | 80th.        |
| huitième,       | 8th.  | quatre-vingt-unième,   | 81st.        |
| neuvième,       | 9th.  | quatre-vingt-deuxième, | 82d.         |
| dixième,        | 10th. | quatre-vingt-dixième,  | 90th.        |
| onzième,        | 11th. | quatre-vingt-onzième,  | 91st.        |
| douzième,       | 12th. | centième,              | 100th.       |
| treizième,      | 13th. | cent unième,           | 101st.       |
| quatorzième,    | 14th. | cent deuxième,         | 102d.        |
| quinzième,      | 15th. | cent vingtième,        | 120th.       |
| seizième,       | 16th. | deux centième,         | 200th.       |
| dix-septième,   | 17th. | six cent soixantième,  | 660th.       |
| dix-huitième,   | 18th. | millième,              | 1,000th.     |
| dix-neuvième,   | 19th. | deux millièmè,         | 2,000th.     |
| vingtième,      | 20th. | deux mille centième,   | 2,100th.     |
| vingt-unième,   | 21st. | millionième,           | 1,000,000th. |
| vingt-deuxième, | 22d.  | deux millionième,      | 2,000,000th. |
| etc.            |       | etc.                   |              |

Other numerals, cardinal or ordinal, may be easily formed, by analogy, from these examples. See L. XLIV., XLV.

# VOCABULARY.

BASED ON GASC'S FRENCH DICTIONARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>adj.</i> , adjective.        | <i>m.</i> , masculine.          |
| <i>adv.</i> , adverb.           | <i>n.</i> , noun.               |
| <i>art.</i> , article.          | <i>p.</i> , past.               |
| <i>comp.</i> , compound.        | <i>part.</i> , participle.      |
| <i>conj.</i> , conjunction.     | <i>pers.</i> , person.          |
| <i>contr.</i> , contracted.     | <i>pl.</i> , plural.            |
| <i>def.</i> , definite.         | <i>poss.</i> , possessive.      |
| <i>dem.</i> , demonstrative.    | <i>prep.</i> , preposition.     |
| <i>f.</i> , feminine.           | <i>pres.</i> , present.         |
| <i>imp.</i> , imperative.       | <i>pret.</i> , preterit.        |
| <i>impers.</i> , impersonal.    | <i>pron.</i> , pronoun.         |
| <i>imperf.</i> , imperfect.     | <i>reflex.</i> , reflexive.     |
| <i>indecl.</i> , indeclinable.  | <i>rel.</i> , relative.         |
| <i>indef.</i> , indefinite.     | <i>sing.</i> , singular.        |
| <i>infin.</i> , infinitive.     | <i>subj.</i> , subjunctive.     |
| <i>interr.</i> , interrogative. | — denotes the repetition of the |
| <i>irr.</i> , irregular.        | title-word.                     |

Irregular verbs in ( ) refer to the list of Model Verbs.

## I. FRENCH-ENGLISH.

### A.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| à, at, to, in, on, with, for, according to, belonging to, etc., in various senses : local, indirect object, possessive, before infinitive, in compound nouns, etc. | accourir, <i>irr.</i> , to run up (courir).                      |
| abandonner, to abandon.  | accuser, to accuse.  |
| abeille, <i>f.</i> , bee.  | acheter, to buy.   |
| abominable, abominable.  | actif, <i>f.</i> ve, active.                                     |
| abondance, <i>f.</i> , abundance.  | action, <i>f.</i> , action, act.                                 |
| absent, absent.  | adieu, adieu, farewell.  |
| absolument, absolutely.  | admirer, to admire.  |
| absoudre, <i>irr.</i> , to absolve.  | adorer, to adore.  |
| académie, <i>f.</i> , academy.   | adresser, to address ; <i>reflex.</i> , to apply, speak (à, to). |
| accepter, to accept.   | adversité, <i>f.</i> , adversity.                                |
| accident, <i>m.</i> , accident.  | affaire, <i>f.</i> , affair, business.                           |
| acclamer, to applaud.  | affliger, to afflict ; <i>reflex.</i> , to grieve.               |
| accompagner, to accompany.   | affreux, <i>f.</i> se, frightful, dreadful.                      |
| accomplir, to accomplish, fulfil.  | afin de (with <i>infin.</i> ), in order to ;                     |
| accorder, to accord, grant.  | — que (with <i>subj.</i> ), in order that.                       |

Afrique, *f.*, Africa.

âge, *m.*, age (idiom with avoir).

âgé, aged, old ; (idiom with de).

- agir**, to act.  
**agréable**, agreeable.  
**aide**, *m.*, aid, help ; à l'— de, by help of.  
**aider**, to aid, help.  
**aïeul**, *m., pl. s.*, grandfather ; *pl.*, aïeux, ancestor.  
**aimable**, amiable.  
**aimer**, to love, like (à, to).  
**ainsi**, thus, so ; pour — dire, so to speak.  
**air**, *m.*, air ; manner ; tune.  
**aise**, glad.  
**aisé**, easy.  
**alibi**, alibi (legal term).  
**Allemagne**, *f.*, Germany.  
**allemand**, German ; also noun.  
**aller**, *irr.*, to go, be going ; to walk ; to go on, be ; in various idioms ; *reflex.*, s'en aller, to go away, be going.  
**allier**, to ally ; *reflex.*, to be allied with, united to.  
**alors**, then.  
**ambitieux**, *f. se*, ambitious.  
**âme**, *f.*, soul, spirit, life.  
**améliorer**, to ameliorate, improve.  
**amer**, *f. ère*, bitter.  
**américain**, American ; also noun.  
**Amérique**, *f.*, America.  
**ami**, *m.*, friend.  
**amie**, *f.*, friend.  
**amour**, *m.*, love.  
**amusant**, *part. as adj.*, amusing.  
**amuser**, to amuse ; *reflex.*, to amuse one's self, be amused.  
**an**, *m.*, year.  
**ancien**, *f. nne*, ancient, old ; as noun, les —s, the ancients.  
**anglais**, English ; as noun, Englishman ; *f.*, Englishwoman.  
**Angleterre**, *f.*, England.  
**animal**, *m., pl. aux*, animal.  
**année**, *f.*, year.  
**apaiser**, to appease, soothe.  
**apercevoir**, *irr.*, to perceive ; also *reflex.*, s'— de, to perceive.  
**appartenir**, *irr.*, to belong (à, to) (tenir).  
**appeler**, to call ; *reflex.*, to be named.  
**appliqué**, industrious, diligent.  
**apporter**, to bring.  
**apprendre**, *irr.*, to learn, to teach (à, to) (prendre).  
**approcher**, to approach ; also *reflex.* (de).  
**approprier**, to appropriate.  
**après**, *prep.*, after ; *adv.*, afterwards.  
**après-midi**, *f.*, afternoon.  
**arbre**, *m.*, tree.  
**arc**, *m.*, arc, arch, bow ; — en-ciel, *m.*, rainbow ; *pl. arcs* —.  
**ardoise**, *f.*, slate.  
**argent**, *m.*, silver, money.  
**arme**, *m.*, arm, weapon ; —s à feu, fire-arms.  
**armée**, *f.*, army.  
**arrêter**, to stop, arrest ; *reflex.*, to stop.  
**arriver**, to arrive, happen.  
**Arve**, Arve (river).  
**Asie**, *f.*, Asia.  
**assez**, enough (de) ; very.  
**Athènes**, Athens.  
**attendre**, to wait, wait for ; *reflex.* (à), to expect.  
**attentif**, *f. ve*, attentive.  
**au** (contr. à le, *art.*), see à.  
**aucun**, any ; with ne, no, none, not one.  
**augure**, *f.*, augury ; de mauvaise —, a bad sign.  
**aujourd'hui**, to-day.  
**aune**, *f.*, ell, yard.  
**auprès**, near ; — de, near to, in comparison with.  
**aussi**, also, too, as, accordingly ; — que, as — as ; — bien que, as well as.  
**aussitôt**, immediately ; — que, as soon as.  
**autant** (de), as much, as many ; so much, so many.  
**auteur**, *m.*, author.  
**auto-da-fé**, *m. auto-da-fé* (Spanish), inquisitorial sentence ; *pl.* —.  
**automne**, *m.*, autumn.  
**autoriser**, to authorize.  
**autorité**, *f.*, authority.



autour, *adv.*, around ; — *de*, *prep.*,  
 around, about.  
 autre, other.  
 autrefois, formerly.  
 autrement, otherwise.  
 autrui, others, other people.  
 aux (contr. à les, *art.*), see à.  
 avancer, to advance.  
 avant, before (in time) ; — *de*  
 (with *infin.*), before ; — *que*,  
*conj.*, before, (*indic.* or *subj.*).  
 avant-coureur, *m.*, forerunner ;  
*pl.* —s.  
 avare, avaricious ; as *n.*, miser.  
 avarice, *m.*, avarice.  
 avec, with, among.  
 avenir, *m.*, (the) future ; à l'—, in  
 future.  
 aveugle, blind ; as *n.*, blind man,  
 or woman.  
 avocat, *m.*, lawyer.  
 avoir, *irr.*, to have ; in many  
 idioms, to be ; as, — chaud,  
 froid, to be warm, cold, etc. ;  
 qu'avez-vous ? what is the  
 matter with you ? etc. ; *im-*  
*pers.*, il y a, there is, there  
 are ; ago ; also, as auxiliary.  
 avouer, to avow, confess.  
 avril, *m.*, April.

## B.

bague, *f.*, ring.  
 baiser, to kiss.  
 bal, *m.*, *pl.* bals, ball.  
 banc, *m.*, bench.  
 baronne, *f.*, baroness.  
 bas, *f.* sse, low ; as *adv.*, low, in a  
 low voice.  
 bas, *m.*, stocking.  
 bataille, *f.*, battle.  
 bateau, *m.*, boat ; — à vapeur,  
 steamboat.  
 bâtir, to build.  
 battre, to beat ; *reflex.*, to fight.  
 beau (bel), *f.*, belle, beautiful, fine,  
 handsome.  
 beaucoup, much, very ; — *de*,  
 much, many.  
 beau-frère, *m.*, brother-in-law ;  
*pl.* —x —s.

beauté, *f.*, beauty.  
 bec, *m.*, beak.  
 bel, belle ; see beau.  
 bellement, beautifully, finely.  
 Belgique, *f.*, Belgium.  
 bénin, *f.* gne, benign, kind.  
 bénir, to bless.  
 berger, *m.*, shepherd.  
 Berlin, Berlin.  
 besoin, *m.*, need, want ; au —, in  
 case of need ; avoir — *de*, to  
 need, want.  
 bête, *f.*, beast (a fool).  
 beurre, *m.*, butter.  
 bien, *m.*, good, benefit, prop-  
 erty.  
 bien, *adv.*, well ; very ; indeed ; —  
*de* (with *art.*), much, many.  
 bienfait, *m.*, benefit, kindness.  
 bientôt, soon, very soon.  
 bière, *f.*, beer.  
 bijou, *pl.* x, jewel.  
 blâmable, blamable, culpable.  
 blâmer, to blame.  
 blanc, *f.* che, white.  
 blesser, to wound.  
 blessure, *f.*, wound.  
 bleu, *pl.* s, blue.  
 bœuf, *m.*, ox, beef.  
 boire, *irr.*, to drink.  
 bon, *f.* nne, good.  
 bonheur, *m.*, happiness.  
 bonjour, *m.*, good morning, good  
 day.  
 bonsoir, *m.*, good evening, good  
 night.  
 bonté, *f.*, goodness, kindness.  
 bord, *m.*, border, shore, bank.  
 botte, *f.*, boot.  
 bouche, *f.*, mouth.  
 Bourgogne, *f.*, Burgundy.  
 bourse, *f.*, purse.  
 bout, *m.*, end.  
 bouteille, *f.*, bottle.  
 bras, *m.*, arm (the limb).  
 brave, brave, worthy.  
 bruit, *m.*, noise ; report, ru-  
 mor.  
 brûler, to burn.  
 Bruxelles, Brussels.  
 bu, *p. part.* boire.

## C.

ça (contr. for *cela*), that.  
 cacher, to hide, conceal.  
 café, *m.*, coffee; coffee-house.  
 cahier, *m.*, copy-book.  
 camp, *m.*, camp.  
 campagne, *f.*, country (as distinct from town); maison de —, country house, villa.  
 canal, *pl. aux*, canal, channel.  
 canif, *m.*, penknife.  
 canne, *f.*, cane.  
 canon, *m.*, cannon.  
 capitale, *f.*, capital (city).  
 captif, *f. ve*, captive.  
 captivité, *f.*, captivity.  
 car, for, because.  
 cardinal, *pl. aux*, cardinal.  
 carré, square.  
 carte, *f.*, chart, map; card.  
 cas, *m.*, case; en — que (*subj.*), in case that, provided that.  
 casser, to break.  
 casse-tête, *m.*, tomahawk; *pl.*, —.  
 catholique, catholic.  
 cause, *f.*, cause, case; à — de, on account of.  
 cavalerie, *f.*, cavalry.  
 ce (cet), *f.*, *cette*; *pl.*, *ces*; *dem. adj.*, this, that.  
 ce, *indecl. dem. pron.*, this, that, it, he, she, these, those; in various idioms; also repeated, before être; before relative, — qui, — que, that (*which, what*).  
 ceci, *indecl.*, this (here).  
 cela, *indecl.*, that (there).  
 célèbre, celebrated.  
 celle, *f.* of celui.  
 celui, *f.*, *celle*; *pl.*, *ceux*; *f.*, *celles*; that, the one, he, she, etc., before de, or relat. pron.; in various idioms; — ci, this (one) here; the latter; — là, that (one) there, the former.  
 cent, a hundred.  
 centaine, *f.*, a hundred.  
 centre, *m.*, center.  
 cependant, meanwhile, nevertheless, yet.

cercle, *m.*, circle.  
 certain, certain.  
 ces, *pl.* of ce.  
 César, Cæsar.  
 cesse, *f.*, ceasing; sans —, incessantly.  
 cesser, to cease.  
 cet, *cette*, see ce.  
 ceux, *pl.* of celui.  
 chacun, each (one), every one.  
 chaîne, *f.*, chain.  
 chambre, *f.*, chamber, room.  
 chameau, *m.*, camel.  
 champ, *m.*, field; sur le —, on the spot.  
 champenois, *m.*, native of Champagne; proverb. for a greenhorn.  
 chance, *f.*, chance.  
 changer, to change.  
 chanson, *f.*, song.  
 chanter, to sing.  
 chapeau, *m.*, hat.  
 chapitre, *m.*, chapter.  
 chaque, each, every.  
 charmant, *part. adj.*, charming.  
 charmer, to charm.  
 chasser, to chase, hunt, drive away.  
 chasseur, *m.*, hunter.  
 chat, *m.*, cat.  
 châtain, chestnut (color); — brun, dark-brown.  
 château, *m.*, castle.  
 chaud, hot, warm.  
 chaud, *m.*, heat, warmth; avoir —, to be hot, or warm.  
 chef, *m.*, chief, head; — d'œuvre, *m.*, masterpiece; *pl.*, chefs —; — lieu, *m.*, chieftain; *pl.*, —s —x.  
 chemin, *m.*, way, road; — de fer, railroad.  
 cher, *f.*, ère, dear.  
 chercher, to seek, look for; aller —, to go for; envoyer —, to send for.  
 cheval, *m.*, *pl. aux*, horse.  
 chevalier, *m.*, chevalier, knight.  
 cheveu, *m.*, hair; *pl.* —x, (the) hair.

- chez, at, or to, the house of ; with,  
among, in ; (with pronouns)  
at (one's) home, home.
- chien, *m.*, dog.
- Chine, *f.*, China.
- chinois, Chinese ; also noun.
- choisir, to choose.
- chose, *f.*, thing ; quelque —, *m.*  
*indef. pron.* (de), something,  
anything.
- chou, *m.*, *pl.* x, cabbage ; — fleur,  
*m.*, cauliflower ; *pl.* — x — s ; —  
— rave, *m.*, turnip-cabbage ; *pl.*  
— x — s.
- chrétien, *f. nne*, Christian ; also  
noun.
- ci, in compounds for ici, here.
- Cicéron, Cicero.
- ciel, *m.*, *pl.* cioux, heaven ; *pl.*  
ciels, sky (of a picture) ; — de  
lit, tester (of a bed).
- cinq, five.
- cinquième, fifth.
- circonférence, *f.*, circumference.
- ciseau, *m.*, chisel ; — à froid, cold  
chisel ; *pl.* — x, scissors.
- citoyen, *m.*, citizen.
- citron, *m.*, lemon.
- clair, clear ; as *adv.*, clearly.
- clairement, clearly.
- classe, *f.*, class.
- clef, *f.*, key.
- climat, *m.*, climate.
- cœur, *m.*, heart.
- colonne, *f.*, column.
- combat, *m.*, combat, fight.
- combien, (de) how much, how  
many ; — de temps, how  
long.
- commander, to command, (with  
person, à).
- comme, as, how.
- commencement, *m.*, commence-  
ment, beginning.
- commencer, to commence, begin.
- comment, how.
- commettre, *irr.*, to commit  
(mettre).
- commis, *p. part.*, commettre.
- commun, common.
- complèt, *f.* ète, complete.
- comporter, to comport ; *reflex.*, to  
behave (one's self).
- composer, to compose.
- comprendre, *irr.*, to understand  
(prendre).
- comptant, counting ; argent —,  
ready money, cash.
- compter, to count ; to count on,  
intend (à, to).
- concert, *m.*, concert.
- condition, *f.*, condition ; à — que,  
on condition that (*subj.*).
- conduire, *irr.*, to conduct, lead.
- conduite, *f.*, conduct.
- confiance, *f.*, confidence, trust.
- congé, *m.*, leave, adieu.
- connaître, *irr.*, to know, be ac-  
quainted with.
- conscience, *f.*, conscience.
- conseil, *m.*, counsel, advice.
- consentir, *irr.*, to consent (à, to)  
(sentir).
- considérer, to consider.
- consoler, to console.
- consulter, to consult.
- contemporain, contemporary.
- contenir, *irr.*, to contain, hold  
(tenir).
- content, contented, satisfied.
- contenter, to content, satisfy.
- conter, to relate, tell.
- contraire, contrary ; au —, on the  
contrary.
- contre, against.
- corps, *m.*, body, corps.
- corridor, *m.*, corridor.
- corriger, to correct.
- côté, *m.*, side, direction.
- couché, *part. adj.*, lying down.
- coucher, to put to bed ; *reflex.*, to  
go to bed, to set (of the sun,  
etc.).
- couleur, *f.*, color.
- coupable, culpable, guilty.
- couper, to cut, cut off.
- courage, *m.*, courage.
- courir, *irr.*, to run.
- court, short ; — vêtu, in a short  
dress (vêtir).
- cousin, *m.*, cousin.
- cousine, *f.*, cousin.

coûter, to cost.  
 craindre, *irr.*, to fear.  
 crainte, *f.*, fear; de — de, for fear  
 of (*infin.*); de — que, for fear  
 that (*subj.* with ne).  
 crayon, *m.*, pencil.  
 créer, to create.  
 crime, *m.*, crime.  
 critiquer, to criticise.  
 croire, *irr.*, to believe, think.  
 croître, *irr.*, to grow.  
 cruel, *f.*, lle, cruel.  
 cuisinier, *m.*, cook.  
 cuisinière, *f.*, cook.

## D.

dame, *f.*, lady.  
 danger, *m.*, danger.  
 dangereux, *f.* se, dangerous.  
 dangereusement, dangerously.  
 dans, in, within, into.  
 danser, to dance.  
 davantage, more, longer.  
 de (d' ; with art. du, des), of, from,  
 with, in, by, etc., in various  
 senses; expresses possessive  
 case; as partitive, some, any;  
 in compound nouns, *material*,  
*kind*, etc.; before numerals,  
 than; before infinitive, to;  
 and often, idiomatically, not  
 translated.  
 décembre, *m.*, December.  
 découvrir, *irr.*, to discover (*ouv-*  
*rir*).  
 défaut, *m.*, defect, fault.  
 défendre, to defend, forbid.  
 définir, to define.  
 degré, *m.*, degree, grade, step.  
 déjà, already.  
 déjeuner, *m.*, breakfast.  
 déjeuner, to breakfast.  
 demain, to-morrow.  
 demande, *f.*, demand, request.  
 demander, to demand, ask (with  
 person, à).  
 demeurer, to dwell, live, stay.  
 demi, half.  
 demoiselle, *f.*, young lady.  
 denier, *m.*, penny.  
 département, *m.*, department.

dépendre, to depend (de, on).  
 depuis, *prep.*, since, from, after,  
 for; as *adv.*, since, afterwards;  
 — que, *conj.*, since.  
 dernier, *f.*, ère, last.  
 derrière, behind.  
 des, contr. de, with art. See de.  
 dès, since, from, after.  
 désagréable, disagreeable.  
 descendre, to descend, come  
 down.  
 désert, *m.*, desert.  
 désert, desert, deserted.  
 désir, *m.*, desire.  
 désirer, to desire (de, to).  
 dessin, *m.*, design, drawing.  
 dessous, under, below; au — de,  
*comp. prep.*, the same.  
 dessus, upon, over, above; au —  
 de, *comp. prep.*, the same.  
 détruire, *irr.*, to destroy.  
 dette, *f.*, debt.  
 deux, two.  
 deuxième, second.  
 deuxièmement, secondly.  
 devant, before, in front (of).  
 devenir, *irr.*, to become; *impers.*,  
 to become of (venir).  
 devise, *f.*, device, plan.  
 devoir, *m.*, duty.  
 devoir, *irr.*, to owe; as auxiliary,  
 ought, must, should, etc.  
 dévorer, to devour.  
 dévoué, *part. adj.*, devoted.  
 dévouer, to devote.  
 Dieu, *m.*, God; plaise à —, please  
 God; plaît-il à —, would God!  
 dieu, *pl. x*, god.  
 différent, different.  
 difficile, difficult.  
 digne, worthy.  
 diligent, diligent.  
 dîner, to dine.  
 dire, *irr.*, to say, tell.  
 dis, *pres.* or *pret.*, dire.  
 disais, *imperf.*, dire.  
 disparaître, *irr.*, to disappear  
 (paraître).  
 distrait, *part. adj.*, distracted, ab-  
 sent-minded.  
 dit, *p. part.*, dire.



dites, *imp.* or *pres. 2d pl.* dire.  
 dix, ten.  
 dixième, tenth.  
 Doge, *m.*, Doge (of Venice).  
 domestique, domestic; as noun,  
*m.*, servant.  
 dominer, to rule, control.  
 dommage, *m.*, damage, hurt; c'est  
 —, it is a pity.  
 donc, then, therefore, accordingly.  
 donner, to give.  
 dont, *relat. pron.*, whose, of  
 whom, of which, etc.—in the  
 various relations of the prep.  
 de.  
 double, double; as noun, *m.*,  
 double.  
 douleur, *f.*, pain, grief, sorrow.  
 douter, to doubt; *reflex.*, se — de,  
 to suspect.  
 doux, *f.*, ce, sweet, soft, mild.  
 douzaine, *f.*, dozen.  
 douze, twelve.  
 douzième, twelfth.  
 drap, *m.*, cloth.  
 dresser, to erect; *reflex.*, to rise,  
 stand (up).  
 droit, right, straight.  
 droite, *f.*, right (hand); à —, on, or  
 to, the right.  
 rôle, droll; as noun, *m.*, odd per-  
 son.  
 du, *contr. de* with art. le.  
 dû, *f.* due, *p. part.* devoir; as  
*adj.*, due.  
 duc, *m.*, duke.  
 dur, hard.  
 durer, to last, endure.

## E.

eau, *f.*, water.  
 échapper, to escape (à or de, from).  
 échelle, *f.*, ladder.  
 éclair, *m.*, flash, lightning.  
 école, *f.*, school.  
 écolier, *m.*, scholar.  
 écolière, *f.*, scholar.  
 écouter, to listen (to).  
 écraser, to crush.  
 écrire, *reflex.*, to cry out, exclaim.  
 écrire, *irr.*, to write.

écrit, *p. part.* écrire; as noun,  
 writing.  
 écrivain, *m.*, writer, author.  
 écrivre, *pres. 2d pl.*, écrire.  
 écrivis, *pret.*, écrire.  
 édifice, *m.*, edifice.  
 égal, *f. e, pl. aux.*, equal, even.  
 également, equally.  
 église, *f.*, church.  
 Égypte, *f.*, Egypt.  
 élève, *m. or f.*, pupil.  
 élever, to raise, elevate, educate.  
 Elise, Eliza.  
 elle, *pron. f.*, she, her, it; — même,  
 herself, itself.  
 élégance, *f.*, elegance.  
 éloquent, eloquent.  
 embarras, *m.*, embarrassment.  
 embouchure, *f.*, emptying, mouth.  
 embrasser, to embrace.  
 emmener, to take away, carry  
 off.  
 empêcher, to hinder, prevent.  
 empereur, *m.*, emperor.  
 empire, *m.*, empire.  
 emplette, *f.*, to purchase.  
 employer, to employ.  
 presser, *reflex.*, s'— de, to  
 hasten (to).  
 emprunter, to borrow (à, from).  
 en, *prep.*, in, into, to; with *pres.*  
*part.*, in, by, while, etc.  
 en, *pron. and adv.*, it or them, in  
 all the relations of the prep.  
 de; of, from, with, by, etc.;  
 as partitive, some, any; as  
*adv.*, thence, away, off; and  
 in many idioms not translated.  
 encore, again, still, yet; — un, one  
 more, another.  
 encre, *f.*, ink.  
 encrier, *m.*, inkstand.  
 endormi, *part. adj.*, asleep.  
 enfant, *m. or f.*, child.  
 enfin, at last, finally.  
 engager, to engage, induce.  
 ennemi, *m.*, enemy; *pl.* as collec-  
 tive, les —s, the enemy.  
 ennemi, *adj.*, hostile, unfriendly.  
 ennui, *m.*, weariness, ennui.  
 ennuyer, to weary, annoy.



ennuyeux, *f.* se, tiresome, annoying.  
 enrichir, to enrich; *reflex.*, to grow rich.  
 ensemble, together.  
 entendre, to hear, understand.  
 entier, *f.* ère, entire, whole.  
 entre, between, among.  
 entrer, to enter.  
 envers, towards.  
 envieux, *f.* se, envious; as noun, envious person.  
 envoyer, *irr.*, to send; — chercher, to send for; — dire, to send word.  
 épargner, to spare.  
 épaule, *f.*, shoulder.  
 épée, *f.*, sword.  
 époux, *m.*, husband; *pl.*, married pair.  
 épouse, *f.*, wife.  
 erreur, *f.*, error, mistake.  
 escalier, *m.*, staircase, stairs.  
 Espagne, *f.*, Spain.  
 espagnol, Spanish; as noun, Spaniard.  
 espérer, to hope, hope for.  
 espoir, *m.*, hope.  
 essayer, to try.  
 essuyer, to wipe.  
 estimer, to esteem.  
 et, and; — et, both—and.  
 état, *m.*, state, condition.  
 États-Unis, United States.  
 été, *m.*, summer.  
 étendre, to extend, stretch (out); also *reflex.*  
 éternité, *f.*, eternity.  
 étonné, *part. adj.*, astonished.  
 étonner, to astonish.  
 étranger, *f.* ère, strange; also as noun, *m.* and *f.*, stranger.  
 être, *irr.*, to be; — à, to belong to; *impers.*, il est, there is, there are; as auxiliary, be, *have*; and in many idiomatic phrases.  
 être, *m.*, being.  
 étudier, to study.  
 Europe, *f.*, Europe.  
 eux, *pron. m. pl.*, they, them; — mêmes, themselves.

éveiller, to wake, awake; *reflex.*, to wake up.  
 éviter, to avoid, shun.  
 excellent, excellent.  
 excepté, *part.*, as *prep.*, except.  
 exception, *f.*, exception.  
 exécuter, to execute, perform.  
 exemple, *m.*, example.  
 exister, to exist.  
 extrême, extreme.  
 extrêmement, extremely.

## F.

fabricant, *m.*, manufacturer.  
 fabriquer, to manufacture.  
 facile, easy.  
 facilement, easily.  
 faible, feeble, weak.  
 faiblesse, *f.*, weakness.  
 faim, *f.*, hunger; avoir —, to be hungry.  
 faire, *irr.*, to make, do, cause, have, get; in various idioms: — chaud, etc. (of the weather), to be hot, etc.; before *infin.*, as *causative*, variously translated; *reflex.*, to be made, become, be.  
 fait, *p. part.*, faire; also *pres. 3d sing.*  
 fait, *m.*, fact, deed.  
 falloir, *irr.* (il faut, etc.), *impers.*, to be necessary, must, with *infin.* or *subj.*; to want, need, lack; peu s'en faut, little lacks, etc.  
 fameux, *f.* se, famous.  
 famille, *f.*, family.  
 farine, *f.*, flour.  
 fatal, *pl* ls, fatal.  
 faut (il), *impers.*, see falloir.  
 faute, *f.*, fault, mistake.  
 faux, *f.* sse, false.  
 femme, *f.*, woman.  
 fenêtre, *f.*, window.  
 fer, *m.*, iron; *pl.* —s, chains.  
 fermer, to shut.  
 fertile, fertile.  
 festin, *m.*, festival.  
 fête, *f.*, feast, festival; jour de —, holiday.

feu, *pl.* x, fire.  
 feuille, *f.*, leaf, sheet (of paper).  
 février, *m.*, February.  
 fidèle, faithful.  
 fier, *f.* ère, proud.  
 fier, *reflex.*, se — à, to trust, rely on.  
 fille, *f.*, daughter, girl.  
 fils, *m.*, son, boy.  
 fin, *f.*, end ; à la —, at last.  
 fin, fine, refined, keen.  
 finement, finely, shrewdly.  
 finir, to finish.  
 fis, fit, *pret.* faire.  
 flatter, to flatter ; *reflex.*, to flatter one's self, deceive one's self.  
 flatteur, *f.* se, flattering, deceitful ; as noun, flatterer.  
 fleur, *f.*, flower.  
 florin, *m.*, florin (coin).  
 foie, *m.*, liver ; — gras (*pâté de*), goose-liver pie.  
 fois, time (in repetition) ; une, deux, trois —, once, twice, thrice, etc. ; combien de —, how often.  
 fol, folle, see fou.  
 fonder, to found.  
 font, 3d *pl. pres.* faire.  
 force, *f.*, force, strength.  
 forcer, to force, compel.  
 forêt, *f.*, forest.  
 former, to form.  
 fort, *m.*, fort, fortress.  
 fort, *adv.*, very, very much.  
 forteresse, *f.*, fortress.  
 fortitude, *f.*, fortitude.  
 fortune, *f.*, fortune, luck.  
 fou (fol), *f.*, folle ; *pl.*, fous, foolish, mad ; as noun, madman, fool.  
 foudre, *f.*, thunder-bolt.  
 frais, *f.* fraîche, fresh.  
 franc, *m.*, franc (coin).  
 franc, *f.* che, frank.  
 français, French ; as noun, Frenchman ; *f.*, Frenchwoman.  
 France, *f.*, France.  
 franchement, frankly.  
 frapper, to strike, knock,

frère, *m.*, brother ; beau —, brother-in-law ; *pl.* —x —s.  
 froid, cold, cool.  
 froid, *m.*, cold ; avoir —, to be cold (of persons) ; faire —, to be cold (of the weather).  
 fromage, *m.*, cheese.  
 fruit, *m.*, fruit.  
 fuir, *irr.*, to flee.  
 furieux, *f.* se, furious.

## G.

gage, *m.*, gage, pledge ; *pl.* —s, wages.  
 gagner, to gain, win.  
 gant, *m.*, glove.  
 garçon, *m.*, boy.  
 garde, *m.*, guard, watchman ; *f.*, guard, watch ; prendre —, to take care.  
 garder, to guard, keep.  
 gâteau, *m.*, cake.  
 geler, to freeze.  
 général, *m.*, *pl.* aux, general.  
 généreux, *f.* se, generous.  
 Genève, *f.*, Geneva.  
 gens, *pl.* *m.* or *f.*, people, persons.  
 gloire, *f.*, glory.  
 goutte, *f.*, drop.  
 grammaire, *f.*, grammar.  
 grand, great, large, tall.  
 grandeur, *f.*, greatness, grandeur.  
 grand'mère, *f.*, grandmother ; *pl.* —s.  
 grand-père, *m.*, grandfather ; *pl.* —s —s.  
 gras, *f.* sse, fat.  
 grec, *f.* cque, Grecian, Greek.  
 Grèce, *f.*, Greece.  
 grêler, to hail.  
 gronder, to grumble, scold.  
 gros, *f.* sse, big, large.  
 guère (ne —), not much, not very, hardly, little.  
 guerre, *f.*, war.  
 Guillaume, William.

## H.

H, *aspirate*, is indicated by *h*.  
 habiller, to dress ; also *reflex.*

habit, *m.*, coat.  
 habitude, *f.*, habit, custom.  
 'haïr, *irr. present*, to hate.  
 'harpe, *f.*, harp.  
 'hasard, *m.*, hazard, chance.  
 'hasarder, to hazard, risk.  
 'hâte, *f.*, haste.  
 'hâter, to hasten ; *reflex.*, to make haste.  
 'hausser, to raise, shrug.  
 'haut, high, tall, loud ; as *adv.*, highly, loud, aloud.  
 'hautement, highly, haughtily, boldly.  
 'hauteur, *f.*, height, haughtiness.  
 Hélène, Helen.  
 'Henri, Henry.  
 herbe, *f.*, herb, grass.  
 héroïque, heroic.  
 'héros, *m.*, hero.  
 hésiter, to hesitate.  
 heure, *f.*, hour, time (o'clock) ;  
     quelle —, what time, what  
     o'clock ; une —, deux —s,  
     etc., one, two, o'clock, etc. ; de  
     bonne —, early.  
 heureux, *f. se*, happy.  
 hier, yesterday.  
 hirondelle, *f.*, swallow.  
 histoire, *f.*, history, story.  
 hiver, *m.*, winter.  
 'Hollande, *f.*, Holland.  
 homme, *m.*, man.  
 honnête, honest, good ; polite.  
 honneur, *m.*, honor.  
 'honte, *f.*, shame ; avoir —, to be  
     ashamed.  
 'honteux, *f. se*, shameful.  
 hôpital, *m.*, hospital.  
 'hors, out, outside, beyond, except.  
 hôtel, *m.*, hotel ; — -Dieu, *m.*,  
     public hospital ; *pl.*, hôtels-  
     Dieu ; — de ville, city-hall.  
 'huit, eight ; — jours, a week.  
 'huitième, eighth.  
 humain, human, humane.

## I.

ici, here.  
 ignorer, not to know, be ignorant  
 (of).

il, ils, *pron.*, he, it (there) ; they.  
 illustre, illustrious.  
 imaginer, to imagine ; also *reflex.*  
 imaginaire, imaginary.  
 immortel, *f. lle*, immortal.  
 importer, to import ; *impers.* to  
     matter ; n'importe, no mat-  
     ter.  
 imprudent, imprudent.  
 imprudemment, imprudently.  
 impunément, with impunity.  
 Inde, *f.*, India ; les —s, the Indies.  
 indigène, indigenous, native.  
 indigne, unworthy.  
 infanterie, *f.*, infantry.  
 infidèle, unfaithful.  
 infini, infinite.  
 injuste, unjust.  
 innocent, innocent.  
 inspirer, to inspire (with).  
 instrument, *m.*, instrument.  
 instrumental, *pl. aux*, instrumen-  
     tal.  
 intérêt, *m.*, interest.  
 introduire, *irr.*, to introduce (con-  
     duire).  
 inventer, to invent.  
 inviter, to invite.  
 invitation, *f.*, invitation.  
 involuntaire, involuntary.  
 Italie, *f.*, Italy.  
 italien, *f. nne*, Italian ; also noun.

## J.

jadis, formerly, of old.  
 jamais, ever (*indef.*), never ; ne —,  
     never ; à —, forever.  
 jambe, *f.*, leg.  
 janvier, *m.*, January.  
 jardin, *m.*, garden.  
 jardinier, *m.*, gardener.  
 je (j'), *pron.*, I.  
 Jean, John.  
 jeter, to throw.  
 jeune, young.  
 jeunesse, *f.*, youth.  
 joindre, *irr.*, to join.  
 joli, pretty.  
 jouer, to play (de, on an instru-  
     ment).

jouer, to enjoy (de).  
 joujou, *m. pl. x*, toy, plaything.  
 jour, *m.*, day, light.  
 journée, *f.*, day.  
 juger, to judge.  
 juif, *f. ve*, Jewish; as noun, Jew, Jewess.  
 juillet, *m.*, July.  
 juin, *m.*, June.  
 Julie, Julia.  
 jusque, as far as, up to, until;  
   jusqu'à, *comp. prep.*, the same;  
   jusqu'à ce que, *comp. conj.*,  
   until (*subj.*).  
 juste, just, right; as *adv.*, just,  
   exactly.  
 justement, justly.

## L.

la (l'), *fem. art.*, the; also *pron.*  
   her, it, (see le).  
 là, there; also as *pron.*, de —,  
   thence, par —, thereby; as  
   demonstrative suffix (that,  
   those), there, etc.  
 lac, *m.*, lake.  
 lacédémonien, Lacedæmonian.  
 laisser, to let, allow, leave; before  
   *infin.*, to allow, or cause (to do,  
   or to be done).  
 lait, *m.*, milk.  
 langue, *f.*, tongue, language.  
 large, large, broad.  
 largeur, *f.*, breadth, width.  
 largesse, *f.*, largesse, gift.  
 larme, tear.  
 las, *f. sse*, tired, weary.  
 laver, to wash; also *reflex.*  
 le, la (l'), *les, def. art.*, the; also  
   *pron.*, him, her, it, them, so.  
 leçon, *f.*, lesson.  
 lendemain, *m.*, morrow, next  
   day.  
 lent, slow.  
 lentement, slowly.  
 les, see le.  
 lettre, *f.*, letter.  
 leur, *poss. adj.*, and *pron.*, their,  
   theirs; also *pl. pron.*, to them  
   (indirect object).

lever, to lift, raise; *reflex.*, to  
   rise, get up.  
 liard, *m.*, farthing.  
 lieu, place; au — de, instead of.  
 lieue, *f.*, league.  
 lièvre, *m.*, hare.  
 ligne, *f.*, line.  
 lire, *irr.*, to read.  
 livre, *m.*, book.  
 livre, *f.*, pound.  
 livrer, to deliver.  
 loi, *f.*, law.  
 loin, far, afar; de —, from afar; —  
   de (*infin.*), — que (*subj.*), far  
   from.  
 lointain, *m.*, distance.  
 Londres, London.  
 long, *f. gue*, long.  
 long, *m.*, length; de —, in length.  
 longtemps, long, a long time.  
 longueur, *f.*, length.  
 lorsque, when.  
 louange, *f.*, praise.  
 louer, to praise.  
 Louis, Lewis.  
 Louise, Louisa.  
 loup, *m.*, wolf.  
 lu, *p. part.* lire.  
 lui, *pron.*, *m.*, he, him, it; also  
   indirect object, *m. or f.*, to  
   him or her, etc., — même,  
   himself, itself.  
 lundi, *m.*, Monday.  
 lune, *f.*, moon.  
 lunette, *f.*, spyglass; *pl. —s*, spec-  
   tacles.  
 Lyon, Lyons.

## M.

ma, *f.*, see mon.  
 madame, *f.*, madam, Mrs.; *pl.*  
   mesdames.  
 mademoiselle, *f.*, Miss; *pl. mes-*  
   demoiselles.  
 magnifique, magnificent.  
 mai, *m.*, May.  
 main, *f.*, hand.  
 maint, many (a).  
 maintenant, now.  
 mais, but.



- maison, *f.*, house.  
 maître, *m.*, master, teacher.  
 mal, *m.*, *pl.* maux, evil, ill, pain.  
 mal, badly, ill.  
 malade, sick.  
 maladie, *f.*, malady, sickness.  
 malheur, *m.*, misfortune.  
 malheureux, *f. se*, unhappy.  
 maman, *f.*, mamma.  
 malin, *f. gne*, malign, malignant.  
 manger, to eat.  
 manquer, to fail, lack, want (de).  
 marchand, *m.*, merchant.  
 marcher, to march, walk.  
 mardi, *m.*, Tuesday.  
 Marie, Mary.  
 marié, *f. ée, part. adj.*, as noun, bridegroom, bride.  
 marier, to marry; *reflex.*, to be married.  
 mars, *m.*, March.  
 matin, *m.*, morning.  
 mauvais, bad.  
 méchant, bad, wicked.  
 médecin, *m.*, physician, doctor.  
 médecine, *f.*, medicine.  
 meilleur, *irr. comp.* (bon), better; le —, (the) best.  
 membre, *m.*, member, limb.  
 même, after pron. or noun, self; with art. before noun, same, very; as adv., even; de —, likewise.  
 mener, to lead, guide.  
 mensonge, *f.*, lie.  
 menteur, *m.*, liar.  
 mentir, *irr.*, to lie.  
 mère, *f.*, mother.  
 méridien, *m.*, meridian.  
 mériter, to merit, deserve.  
 merveille, *f.*, marvel, wonder.  
 merveilleux, *f. se*, wonderful.  
 mes, *pron. adj. pl.*, see mon.  
 messieurs, *pl.*, see monsieur.  
 mesure, *f.*, measure.  
 métal, *m.*, *pl. aux*, metal.  
 mètre, *m.*, meter.  
 mettre, *irr.*, to put, place, set; *reflex.*, to set one's self, begin (à, to).  
 meurtrier, *m.*, murderer.  
 mien, *f. nne, poss. pron.*, mine.  
 mieux, *irr. comp.* (bien), better; le —, (the) best.  
 mil, a thousand (in dates).  
 mille, a thousand.  
 mille, *m.*, mile.  
 mis, *p. part.* or *pret.*, mettre.  
 modeste, modest.  
 moi, *pron.*, I, me.  
 moindre, *irr. comp.* (petit), less; le —, (the) least.  
 moins, *irr. comp.* (peu), less; le —, (the) least; au, or du —, at least; à — que, unless (*subj.* with ne).  
 mois, *m.*, month.  
 moitié, *f.*, half.  
 mol, molle, see mou.  
 moment, *m.*, moment.  
 mon, *f. ma, pl. mes, poss. adj.*, my.  
 monde, *m.*, world; tout le —, everybody.  
 monsieur, *m.*, Mr., Sir, gentleman; *pl.* messieurs.  
 monter, to mount, ascend; — à cheval, to get on horseback.  
 montre, *f.*, watch.  
 montrer, to show.  
 monument, *m.*, monument.  
 moquer, to mock; *reflex.*, se — de, to ridicule, laugh at.  
 morceau, piece, bit.  
 mordre, to bite.  
 mort, *f.*, death.  
 mort, *p. part.*, mourir; as *adj.*, dead.  
 mortel, *f. lle*, mortal, deadly.  
 mortier, *m.*, mortar (gun).  
 mot, *m.*, word.  
 mou (mol), *f.*, molle, soft.  
 moulin, *m.*, mill; — à vent, wind-mill; — à vapeur, steam-mill.  
 mourir, *irr.*, to die, be dying.  
 mouton, *m.*, sheep, mutton.  
 muet, *f. tte*, mute, dumb.  
 mur, *m.*, wall.  
 mûr, ripe, mature.  
 mûrir, to ripen.



## N.

naître, *irr.*, to be born.  
 naquit, *pret.* naître.  
 nation, *f.*, nation.  
 national, *pl.* aux, national.  
 nature, *f.*, nature.  
 ne, negative before verb, not ; usually with completing words ; sometimes not translated.  
 né, *p. part.* naître, born.  
 nécessaire, necessary.  
 négliger, to neglect.  
 neige, *f.*, snow.  
 neiger, to snow.  
 Néron, Nero.  
 net, *f. tte.* neat, clean.  
 nettoyer, to clean.  
 neuf, *f. ve.* new.  
 neuf, nine.  
 neuvième, ninth.  
 neveu, nephew.  
 ni—ni, neither—nor.  
 nid, *m.*, nest.  
 nièce, *f.*, niece.  
 nier, to deny.  
 noble, noble.  
 noblesse, *f.*, nobleness, nobility.  
 Noël, *m.*, Christmas.  
 noir, black.  
 noix, *f.*, nut.  
 nom, *m.*, name, noun.  
 nombre, *m.*, number.  
 nombreux, *f. se.* numerous.  
 nommer, to name, call.  
 non, no, not ; — plus, neither.  
 nord, *m.*, north ; du —, northern, north (*adj.*).  
 normand, Norman ; also noun.  
 nos, *poss. adj. pl.*, our (see notre).  
 notre, *poss. adj.*, our.  
 nôtre, *poss. pron.*, ours.  
 nourrir, to nourish, feed.  
 nous, *pron. pl.*, we, us ; — -mêmes, ourselves.  
 nouveau (nouvel), *f. lle.* new.  
 nouvelle, *or pl.* —s, news.  
 novembre, *m.*, November.  
 noyer, to drown.  
 nuire, *irr.*, to hurt, injure (*à*).  
 nuit, *f.*, night.

nul, *f. lle.* no, not any ; as *pron.*, no one, none (with ne).  
 nullement, not at all, by no means.  
 nulle part, no where.

## O.

obéir, to obey (*à*).  
 obliger, to oblige.  
 observer, to observe.  
 occasion, *f.*, occasion, opportunity, cause.  
 occuper, to occupy.  
 œil, *m.*, *pl.* yeux, eye ; *pl.* œils, — de bœuf, bull's-eye, a small, round window.  
 œuf, *m.*, egg.  
 œuvre, *f.*, work.  
 offenser, to offend ; *reflex.*, to take offense.  
 offre, *m.*, offer.  
 offrir, *irr.*, to offer.  
 oiseau, bird.  
 oisif, *f. ve.* idle.  
 on, *indef. pron.*, one, they, we, people, etc.  
 oncle, *m.*, uncle.  
 onze, eleven.  
 onzième, eleventh.  
 or, *m.*, gold.  
 orage, *m.*, storm.  
 orange, *f.*, orange.  
 ordinaire, ordinary, common.  
 ordinairement, ordinarily, commonly.  
 ordonner, to order (*à*).  
 ordre, *m.*, order, command.  
 oreille, *f.*, ear.  
 oser, to dare.  
 ôtage, *m.*, hostage, pledge.  
 ôter, to take away, take off.  
 ou, or ; ou — ou, either — or.  
 où, where, when ; as *pron.*, d'où, whence, par où, whereby.  
 oublier, to forget.  
 oui, yes.  
 ouvert, *p. part.*, ouvrir ; as *adj.*, open.  
 ouvrage, *m.*, work.  
 ouvrir, *irr.*, to open.

## P.

page, *f.*, page (of a book).  
 pain, *m.*, bread.  
 paire, *f.*, pair.  
 paix, *f.*, peace.  
 palais, *m.*, palace.  
 panier, *m.*, basket.  
 pape, *m.*, pope.  
 papier, *m.*, paper.  
 par, by, through.  
 paraître, *irr.*, to appear (*con-*  
*naître*).  
 parce que, *comp. conj.*, because.  
 pardonner, to pardon (*à*).  
 paresseux, *f. se*, idle, lazy.  
 parler, to speak.  
 parmi, among.  
 part, *f.*, part; nulle —, no where.  
 partie, *f.*, part, party.  
 partir, *irr.*, to set out, start, depart.  
 partout, everywhere.  
 pas, *m.*, step, pace.  
 pas, *neg. adv.*, not (usually with  
*ne*); — de, not any, no; — du  
 tout, not at all; — un, *indef.*  
*pron.*, not one.  
 passant, *part. adj.*, passing; as  
 noun, passer.  
 passé, *part. adj.*, past; as noun,  
 (the) past.  
 passer, to pass, pass by; *reflex.*, to  
 pass, happen.  
 passion, *f.*, passion.  
 pâté, *m.*, pie.  
 patrie, country, native land.  
 pauvre, poor.  
 payer, to pay, pay for.  
 pays, *m.*, country.  
 Pays-Bas, *m. pl.*, Netherlands.  
 pêche, *f.*, peach.  
 péché, *m.*, sin.  
 peine, *f.*, pain, trouble, penalty;  
 à —, hardly.  
 pendant, during; — que, while.  
 pendre, to hang.  
 pensée, *f.*, thought.  
 penser, to think (*à, or de, of*).  
 penum, *m.*, task.  
 perdre, to lose, destroy, ruin.  
 père, *m.*, father.

périr, to perish.  
 permettre, *irr.*, to permit (*mettre*).  
 persécuter, to persecute.  
 personne, *f.*, person.  
 personne, *indef. pron. m.*, any-  
 body, nobody; (usually with  
*ne*), nobody.  
 persuader, to persuade.  
 perte, *f.*, loss.  
 petit, little, small; — maître, *m.*,  
 fop, *pl. —s —s*.  
 peu, little, few (*de*); un —, a little,  
 a few (*de*).  
 peuple, *m.*, people, nation.  
 peur, *f.*, fear; avoir —, to be afraid;  
 de — de, for fear of (*infin.*);  
 de — que, for fear that (*subj.*  
 with *ne*).  
 peut, *irr. prés.*, pouvoir.  
 peut-être, perhaps.  
 pièce, *f.*, piece.  
 pied, *m.*, foot.  
 Pierre, Peter.  
 pierre, *f.*, stone, rock.  
 piller, to plunder, rob.  
 pire, *irr. comp. (mauvais)*, worse;  
 le —, (the) worst.  
 pis, *irr. comp. (mal)*, worse (*adv.*);  
 le —, (the) worst.  
 pitié, *f.*, pity (*de, on*).  
 place, *f.*, place, position.  
 placer, to place, put.  
 plaindre, *irr.*, to pity; *reflex.*, to  
 complain.  
 plaire, *irr.*, to please (*à*); plaise,  
 plutôt (*subj.*), à Dieu, please  
 God; s'il vous plaît (*impers.*),  
 if you please.  
 plaisir, *m.*, pleasure.  
 plaît, *irr. prés.*, see plaire.  
 pleurer, to weep.  
 pleuvoir, *irr.*, to rain (*impers.*).  
 pluie, *f.*, rain.  
 plume, *f.*, pen, feather.  
 plus, *irr. comp. (beaucoup)*, more;  
 le —, (the) most; — de, more  
 (of); as negative, no more, no  
 longer (usually with *ne*); as  
 correlative, the more.  
 plusieurs, *indef. pl.*, several.  
 plutôt, *past subj.*, see plaire.

plutôt, rather.  
 point, *m.*, point.  
 point, *neg. adv.* (usually with *ne*),  
     not, not at all ; — *de*, not any,  
     no ; — *du tout*, not at all.  
 poire, *f.*, pear.  
 pôle, *m.*, pole.  
 poli, polite.  
 pomme, *f.*, apple.  
 Pompée, Pompey.  
 pondre, to lay (eggs).  
 pont, *m.*, bridge.  
 porte, *f.*, door.  
 porter, to carry, bear, wear ; *re-*  
     *flex.*, to do, be (in health).  
 poser, to put down, lay, place.  
 position, *f.*, position.  
 poste, *f.*, post, post-office.  
 postscriptum, *m.*, postscript ; *pl.*  
     —.  
 pour, for ; before *infin.*, in order  
     to ; — *que (subj.)*, in order  
     that.  
 pourquoi, why, for what.  
 pourvoir, *irr.*, to provide.  
 pourvu, *p. part.*, provided ; — *que*,  
     provided that.  
 pouvoir, *irr.*, to be able, can,  
     may.  
 pratiquer, to practice.  
 préférer, to prefer.  
 premier, *f. ère*, first.  
 premièrement, firstly, in the first  
     place.  
 prendre, *irr.*, to take, seize, catch ;  
     *reflex.*, *se — à*, to set about.  
 préparer, to prepare.  
 près, near, nearly, almost ; — *de*,  
     *comp. prep.*, near to, near.  
 présent, *m.*, present, gift.  
 présent, present ; as noun, le —,  
     (the) present ; *à —*, at present,  
     now.  
 présenter, to present.  
 président, *m.*, president.  
 presque, almost.  
 prêt, *f. ète*, ready (*à*, to or for).  
 prêter, to lend.  
 prêtre, *m.*, priest.  
 prier, to pray, beg.  
 prière, *f.*, prayer.

prince, *m.*, prince.  
 princesse, *f.*, princess.  
 printemps, *m.*, spring.  
 pris, *p. part.* prendre.  
 prisonnier, *m.*, prisoner.  
 prix, *m.*, price, prize.  
 professeur, *m.*, professor.  
 profond, profound, deep.  
 profondément, profoundly, deep-  
     ly.  
 progrès, *m.*, progress (often plu-  
     ral).  
 promenade, *f.*, promenade, walk.  
 promener, to lead, take to walk ;  
     *reflex.*, to take a walk, walk.  
 promesse, *f.*, promise.  
 promettre, *irr.*, to promise  
     (*mettre*).  
 propre, proper, neat ; own.  
 prospérité, *f.*, prosperity.  
 proverbe, *m.*, proverb.  
 prudemment, prudently.  
 prudent, prudent.  
 Prusse, *f.*, Prussia.  
 prussien, Prussian ; also noun.  
 public, *f. publique*, public.  
 puis, *irr. pres.*, pouvoir.  
 puis, then, afterwards.  
 puisque, since, as.  
 punir, to punish.  
 pyramide, *f.*, pyramid.

## Q.

quand, when ; although.  
 quart, *m.*, quarter, fourth ; —  
     *d'heure*, quarter of an hour.  
 quatre, four.  
 quatrième, fourth.  
 que, *pron. interr.*, what ; *rel. ob-*  
     *ject*, whom, which, that ; *ce*  
     —, what.  
 que, *adv.*, how, why ; — *de*, how  
     much, how many, what !  
     *ne — que*, only.  
 que, *conj.*, that, than, as ; and in  
     many idiomatic uses, with in-  
     dic. or subj. ; with *ne*, lest,  
     unless, etc. ; also replaces  
     other conjs., *si*, *quand*, etc. ;  
     and often not translated.

quel, *f. lle, interr. adj.*, which, what, what a ; — que, *indef. adj.*, whatever.

quelconque, *indecl. adj.*, whatever.

quelque, *indef. adj.*, some, any, a few ; — chose, *m.*, something, anything (*de*).

quelque (— que), *adv.*, however.

quelqu'un, *f.*, quelqu'une, *indef. pron.*, some one, any one.

quelques-uns, *f.*, quelques-unes, *indef. pl.*, some, any (ones), a few.

querelle, *f.*, quarrel.

quereller, to quarrel.

qui, *pron. interr.*, who, whom ; *rel.*, who, which, that ; whoever ; — que, whoever ; à —, whose.

quiconque, *indef. pron.*, whoever.

quint, fifth.

quinze, fifteen ; — jours, a fortnight.

quitter, to quit, leave.

quoi, *pron. interr.*, what ; *rel.*, what, which ; — que, whatever.

quoique, *conj.*, although.

## R.

rafraîchir, to refresh.

raison, *f.*, reason, right ; avoir —, to be right.

raisonner, to reason.

ramasser, to gather, pick up.

rang, *m.*, rank.

ranger, to range, arrange.

Raphael, Raphael (painter).

rare, rare, scarce.

ravage, *m.*, ravage, spoil.

rayon, *m.*, ray, beam.

recevoir, *irr.*, to receive.

récolter, to reap.

récompense, *f.*, recompense, reward.

récompenser, to reward.

reçu, *p. part.*, recevoir.

réflexion, *f.*, reflection.

refuser, to refuse.

regarder, to look at, regard.

règle, *f.*, rule.

régner, to reign.

regret, *m.*, regret.

regretter, to regret.

reine, *f.*, queen.

réjouir, to rejoice ; *reflex.*, to rejoice, enjoy (*de*).

réjouissance, *f.*, enjoyment, joy.

remarquable, remarkable.

remède, *m.*, remedy.

remercier, to thank.

remplir, to fill up, fulfil.

rencontrer, to meet, meet with.

rendre, to render, return, give back ; *reflex.*, to surrender.

répandre, to spread, to shed ; also *reflex.*

repentir, *irr. reflex.*, to repent.

répéter, to repeat.

répondre, to answer, respond (*à*).

reprandre, *irr.*, to take again, resume (*prendre*).

représenter, to represent.

reproche, *m.*, reproach.

reprocher, to reproach (*à*).

république, *f.*, republic.

résister, to resist (*à*).

respecter, to respect.

resssembler, to resemble (*à*).

ressentiment, *m.*, resentment.

reste, *m.*, rest, remainder.

rester, to remain, be left ; *impers.*, il —, there remains.

retour, *m.*, return.

retourner, to return, go back.

revenir, *irr.*, to come back, return (*venir*).

révolution, *f.*, revolution.

revue, *f.*, review.

Rhin, *m.*, Rhine.

Rhône, *m.*, Rhone.

richesse, *f.*, riches (often plural).

rien, *indef. pron. m.*, anything, nothing ; (usually with *ne*) nothing.

rime, *f.*, rhyme.

rire, *irr.*, to laugh ; — de, to laugh at.

risquer, to risk.

rive, *f.*, shore, bank.

rivière, *f.*, river.



roi, *m.*, king.  
 romain, Roman ; also as noun.  
 rompre, *irr.*, to break.  
 rond, round.  
 rose, *f.*, rose.  
 rouge, red.  
 rougir, to blush, turn red.  
 roux, *f. sse*, red.  
 royal, *pl. aux*, royal.  
 royaume, *m.*, kingdom.  
 ruban, *m.*, ribbon.  
 rue, *f.*, street.  
 ruiner, to ruin.  
 russe, Russian ; also as noun.  
 Russie, *f.*, Russia.

## S.

sa, *poss. adj. f.* son.  
 sacrifice, *m.*, sacrifice.  
 sacrifier, to sacrifice.  
 sage, wise, good.  
 sagement, wisely.  
 saint, holy, sacred ; as proper name, Saint.  
 sais, *irr. pres.* savoir ; je ne sais, I do not know.  
 saisir, to seize, catch.  
 salaire, *m.*, salary.  
 salir, to soil.  
 saluer, to salute.  
 sang, *m.*, blood.  
 sans, without ; — que, *comp. conj.* (with *subj.*), without, unless.  
 santé, *f.*, health.  
 sauvage, savage, wild.  
 savant, learned ; as noun, scholar.  
 savoir, *irr.*, to know, know how, be able (to).  
 scène, *f.*, scene.  
 se (*s'*), *reflex. pron.*, himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves—often not translated.  
 sec, *f. sèche*, dry.  
 second, second.  
 secret, *f.*, ète, secret.  
 secret, *m.*, secret.  
 selon, according to.  
 semaine, *f.*, week.  
 sembler, to seem.  
 semer, to sow.

sens, *m.*, sense.  
 sentir, *irr.*, to feel, to smell.  
 sept, seven.  
 septentrional, *pl. aux*, northern, north.  
 septième, seventh.  
 serein, serene, clear.  
 serpent, *m.*, serpent ; — à sonnettes, rattle-snake.  
 servante, *f.*, maid-servant.  
 service, *m.*, service.  
 servir, *irr.*, to serve ; *reflex.*, se — de, to use, make use of.  
 ses, *poss. adj. pl.* son.  
 seul, alone, only.  
 seulement, only ; non —, not only.  
 sévère, severe.  
 shelling, *m.*, shilling.  
 si (*s'*), *conj.*, if, whether.  
 si, *adv.*, so.  
 siècle, *m.*, age, century.  
 sien, *f. nne, poss. pron.*, his, hers, its, one's.  
 silence, *m.*, silence.  
 six, six.  
 sixième, sixth.  
 Sixte, Sixtus.  
 sobre, sober.  
 sobriété, *f.*, sobriety.  
 sœur, *f.*, sister.  
 soi, *reflex. pron.*, one's self, itself, himself, herself, themselves ; — même, mêmes, the same.  
 soie, *f.*, silk.  
 soierie, *f.*, silk goods, silks (collective).  
 soif, *f.*, thirst ; avoir —, to be thirsty.  
 soin, *m.*, care ; avoir —, to take care.  
 soir, *m.*, evening, night.  
 soit, be it, whether ; be it so, well ! — que, whether (with *subj.*) ; soit—soit, whether—or.  
 sol, *m.*, soil.  
 solaire, solar.  
 soldat, *m.*, soldier.  
 soleil, *m.*, sun.  
 sommeil, *m.*, sleep ; avoir —, to be sleepy.  
 son, sa, ses, *poss. adj.*, his, hers, its, one's.



songer, to dream, think (à, of).  
 sonner, to sound, ring.  
 sonnette, *f.*, bell, rattle.  
 sort, *m.*, fate, lot.  
 sorte, *f.*, sort, kind; de — que, so that.  
 sortir, *irr.*, to go out.  
 sot, *f.* tte, foolish, stupid; as noun, a fool.  
 sou, *pl.* s, a sou (a small coin).  
 souffler, to blow, whistle, whisper.  
 souffrance, *f.*, suffering.  
 souffrir, *irr.*, to suffer.  
 soulier, *m.*, shoe.  
 sourd, deaf, dull.  
 souris, *f.*, mouse.  
 sous, under, beneath.  
 souvenir, *m.*, remembrance, recollection.  
 souvent, often.  
 souverain, sovereign, supreme; also as noun.  
 splendeur, *f.*, splendor.  
 sterling, sterling.  
 sucre, *m.*, sugar.  
 sud, *m.*, south; du —, southern, south (*adj.*).  
 Suède, *f.*, Sweden.  
 suffire, *irr.*, to suffice.  
 suivre, *irr.*, to follow.  
 sujet, *f.* tte, subject, liable; as noun, (a) subject.  
 sujet, *m.*, subject; occasion, cause.  
 supérieur, *f.* re, superior.  
 superstitieux, *f.* se, superstitious.  
 supporter, to support.  
 sûr, sure, certain.  
 sur, on, upon, concerning; (of measure) by.  
 surnommer, to surname.  
 surprendre, *irr.*, to surprise (*prendre*).  
 surpris, *part. adj.*, surprised.  
 surtout, *adv.*, above all, especially.

## T.

ta, *poss. adj. f.* ton.  
 table, *f.*, table.  
 tailleur, *m.*, tailor.

taire, *irr.*, to keep silent; *reflex.*, to be silent, hush.  
 talent, *m.*, talent.  
 tant, so much, so; — de, so much, so many; — que, as far as, as long as, while.  
 tante, *f.*, aunt.  
 tard, *adv.*, late.  
 Te-Deum, *m.*, Te-Deum; *pl.* —.  
 tel, *f.* lle, *adj.*, such, like; un —, such a; as *pron.*, many a one, many; un —, such a one.  
 tellement, so, so much.  
 tempête, *f.*, tempest, storm.  
 temple, *m.*, temple.  
 temps, *m.*, time, weather; quel —, what kind of weather; beau, mauvais —, good, bad, weather.  
 tenir, *irr.*, to hold, keep; in many idioms; also *reflex.*  
 tentation, *f.*, temptation, trial.  
 terre, *f.*, earth, land.  
 terrible, terrible.  
 tes, *poss. adj. pl.* ton.  
 tête, *f.*, head.  
 thé, *m.*, tea.  
 théâtre, *m.*, theater.  
 thème, *m.*, theme, exercise.  
 Thermopyles, *pl. f.* Thermopylæ.  
 tien, *f.* nne, *poss. pron.*, thine, yours.  
 tiers, third; also as noun, *m.*, (a) third.  
 tirer, to draw; to aim, shoot.  
 Titien, Titian (Italian painter).  
 toi, *pron.*, thou, thee, you; — même, thyself, yourself.  
 toit, *m.*, roof.  
 tomber, to fall.  
 tombeau, *m.*, tomb.  
 tome, *m.*, volume.  
 ton, ta, tes, *poss. adj.*, thy, your.  
 tonner, to thunder.  
 tort, *m.*, wrong; avoir —, to be wrong.  
 tortue, *f.*, tortoise.  
 tôt, soon.  
 toujours, always.  
 tour, *f.*, tower.

tour, *m.*, turn, tour; tour à tour, or by turns.

tourner, to turn; also *reflex.*

tous, *pl. m. irr.*, tout.

tout, *pl. m.* tous, *indef. pron.* or *adj.* all; every; — with *art.*, all, the whole; — le monde, everybody; tous (les) deux, both; tous les jours, every day.

tout, *adv.*, wholly, entirely, very, however; — à fait, quite.

tout, *noun, m.*, all, everything, the whole; du — at all, not at all.

trace, *f.*, trace.

trahir, to betray.

tranquille, tranquil, quiet.

transgresser, to transgress.

travail, *m.*, *pl. aux.* work, labor.

travailler, to work.

trembler, to tremble.

très, very, most.

tribu, *f.*, tribe.

tribut, *m.*, tribute.

trionpher, to triumph (de, over).

triste, sad, sorrowful, poor.

tristesse, *f.*, sadness.

Troie, *f.*, Troy.

trois, three.

troisième, third.

troisièmement, thirdly.

tromper, to deceive; *reflex.*, to be mistaken.

trône, *m.*, throne.

trop, too, too much; — de, too much, too many.

troupeau, *m.*, flock.

trouver, to find; *reflex.*, to be found, be.

tuer, to kill.

turc, *f.* turque, Turkish; as noun, Turk.

Turquie, *f.*, Turkey.

## U.

un, numeral, one.

un, *indef. art.*, an, a.

un, *indef. pron.*, one; l'—, the one; les —s, some; l'— l'autre, each other, etc.

unième, first (in compounds).

unir, to unite.

usage, *m.*, usage, use.

utile, useful.

utilité, *f.*, utility.

## V.

va, *irr. pres. or imperat.*, aller.

vacance, *f.*, vacancy; *pl.*, vacation, holidays.

vain, vain; en —, in vain.

vaincre, *irr.*, to conquer.

valoir, *irr.*, to be worth, to be good (for); — mieux, to be better.

vapeur, *f.*, vapor, steam.

vaste, vast.

vaut, *irr. pres.* valoir.

vendre, to sell; *reflex.*, to be sold.

vendredi, *m.*, Friday.

venger, to revenge, avenge.

venir, *irr.*, to come; to happen; — de, to have just (*done any thing*); faire —, to send for.

Venise, *f.*, Venice.

vent, *m.*, wind.

ver, *m.*, worm; — à soie, *m.*, silk-worm.

vérité, *f.*, truth.

verre, *m.*, glass.

vers, towards.

vert, green.

vertu, *f.*, virtue.

vertueux, *f. se.* virtuous.

vêtir, *irr.* to clothe, dress.

vêtu, *p. part.* vêtir.

veut, *irr. pres.* vouloir.

veuve, *f.*, widow.

viande, *f.*, meat.

vice, *m.*, vice.

victoire, *f.*, victory.

victorieux, *f. se.* victorious.

vie, *f.*, life.

vieil, vieille, see vieux.

vieillard, *m.*, old man.

vieillesse, *f.*, old age.

Vienne, *f.*, Vienna.

vieux (vieil), *f. vieille*, old, aged; as noun, old man, old woman.

**vif**, *f.* ve, lively, vivid, sharp.  
**vilain**, ugly.  
**villa**, *f.*, villa, country house.  
**ville**, *f.*, city, town.  
**vin**, *m.*, wine.  
**vingt**, twenty.  
**vingtaine**, *f.*, score.  
**violent**, violent.  
**violemment**, violently.  
**violoniste**, *m.*, violinist.  
**Virgile**, *m.*, Virgil (Latin poet).  
**vite**, quick, swift; as *adv.*, quick,  
     quickly, fast.  
**vivre**, *irr.*, to live.  
**vœu**, *m.*, vow, wish, prayer.  
**voici**, see here, here is, *or* are; me  
     —, here I am, etc.  
**voilà**, see there, there is, *or* are;  
     le —, there he (it) is, etc.  
**voile**, *f.*, sail; à la —, under sail.  
**voile**, *m.*, veil.  
**voir**, *irr.*, to see; faire —, to  
     show.  
**vois**, *irr. pres.*, voir.  
**voisin**, *m.*, neighbor; *f.*, voisine,  
     female neighbor.  
**voix**, *f.*, voice.

**voyons**, voyez, *pres. pl.* voir.  
**voleur**, *m.*, robber, thief.  
**volontiers**, willingly.  
**volume**, *m.*, volume.  
**vos**, *poss. adj. pl.* votre.  
**votre**, *pl. vos, poss. adj.*, your.  
**vôtre**, *pl. vôtres, poss. pron.*, yours.  
**vouloir**, *irr.*, to wish, be willing,  
     will, want, mean; *imperat.*  
     *irr.* veuillez, please.  
**vous**, *pron.*, you; — même, your-  
     self; — mêmes, yourselves.  
**voyage**, *m.*, journey.  
**voyager**, to travel.  
**voyageur**, *m.*, traveller.  
**vrai**, true.  
**vraiment**, truly.  
**vu**, *p. part.*, voir; — que, inas-  
     much as.  
**vue**, *f.*, sight.

## Y.

**y**, *pron. and adv.*, at, to, in, into,  
     it *or* them; there, thither.  
**yeux**, *pl. œil, m.*, eyes; aux —,  
     before the eyes.

## II. ENGLISH-FRENCH.

The parts of speech are indicated only when necessary for distinction of words. Irregular inflections are indicated in the French-English Vocabulary. Abbreviations as heretofore.

## A

- a, an, un ; sometimes idiomatically by the def. art. *le*, etc. ; or by *par* ; or not expressed ; such —, un tel.
- abandon, abandonner.
- able, capable (de) ; to be — to, pouvoir, *irr.*
- about, environ, autour de ; sur (concerning).
- above, dessus (*adv.*) ; au dessus de (*prep.*) ; sur ; plus de (more than).
- abruptly, brusquement.
- absence, absence, *f.*
- absent, absent.
- absolve, absoudre, *irr.*
- academy, académie, *f.*
- accept, accepter.
- accident, accident, *m.*
- accompany, accompagner.
- according to, selon, après, d'après,
- accordingly, aussi, donc.
- accuse, accuser.
- acquire, acquérir, *irr.*
- acquit, absoudre, *irr.*, acquitter.
- act, acte, *m.*
- act (to), agir, faire, *irr.*
- action, action, *f.*
- active, actif.
- add, ajouter, joindre, *irr.*
- address, adresse, *f.*
- address (to), adresser.
- adjourn, surseoir, *irr.*
- admire, admirer.
- admit, admettre, *irr.* (mettre).
- advance, avancer, s'avancer.
- advice, conseil, *m.*
- advise, conseiller (de, *infin.*), (que, *subj.*).
- affair, affaire, *f.*
- afflict, affliger ; to be —ed, s'affliger.
- afraid (to be), avoir peur ; craindre, *irr.*
- Africa, Afrique, *f.*
- after, après ; après de (*infin.*) ; après que (*indic.* or *subj.*).
- afternoon, après-midi, *f.* ; *pl.* —.
- afterwards, après, ensuite.
- again, encore ; not —, ne — plus.
- against, contre.
- age, âge, *m.* ; siècle, *m.* (century).
- aged, âgé.
- ago, il y a, depuis.
- agree, convenir, *irr.* (de).
- agreeable, agréable.
- aid (to), aider.
- aid, aide, *f.* ; secours, *m.*
- aim, but, *m.*
- air, air, *m.*
- Alexander, Alexandre, *m.*
- all, tout, *pl.*, tous ; — that, tout ce, tous ceux, etc.
- all (*adv.*), tout ; at —, du tout.
- allow, permettre, *irr.* ; laisser.
- almost, presque.
- alone, seul.
- already, déjà.
- also, aussi.
- although, quoique, bien que (*subj.*).
- always, toujours.
- ambassador, ambassadeur, *m.*
- ambition, ambition, *f.*
- ambitious, ambitieux.
- America, Amérique, *f.*
- amiable, aimable.
- amiably, aimablement.
- among, parmi, entre, chez.
- amuse, amuser.
- amusing, amusant.
- ancestor, aïeul, *pl.*, aïeux, *m.*
- ancient, ancien ; as noun, the ancients, les —s,

and, et.  
 anger, colère, *f.*  
 angry, fâché.  
 animal, animal, *m.*  
 annoy, ennuyer.  
 anoint, oindre, *irr.*  
 another, un autre ; encore un (one more).  
 answer (to), répondre (à).  
 answer, réponse, *f.*  
 any, quelque ; with neg., aucun ;  
     partitive, de, du, etc. ; with  
     noun omitted, en.  
 anybody, } quelqu'un ; with neg.,  
 any one, } aucun, personne.  
 anything, quelque chose ; with  
     neg., rien.  
 appear, paraître, *irr.*  
 appease, apaiser.  
 apple, pomme, *f.*  
 approach (to), s'approcher (de).  
 approach, approche, *f.*  
 April, avril, *m.*  
 arise, naître, *irr.*  
 Aristotle, Aristote, *m.*  
 arm, bras (the limb), *m.* ; arme, *f.* ;  
     — s à feu, fire-arms.  
 army, armée, *f.*  
 around, autour, environ ; *prep.*,  
     autour de.  
 arrange, ranger.  
 arrive, arriver.  
 art, art, *m.*  
 artist, artiste, *m.*  
 as, comme (manner) ; aussi — que  
     (degree) ; que.  
 ashamed, honteux ; to be —, avoir  
     honte.  
 Asia, Asie, *f.*  
 ascend, monter.  
 ask, demander (à), prier ; — for,  
     demander.  
 asleep, endormi ; to be —, dormir,  
     *irr.* ; to go to —, s'endormir,  
     *irr.*  
 assail, assaillir, *irr.*  
 assist, assister.  
 assistance, assistance, *f.*, secours,  
     *m.*  
 assure, assurer.  
 assurance, assurance, *f.*

astonish, étonner.  
 astonishing, étonnant.  
 at, à ; dans, en ; — home, chez, etc. ;  
     and with various idiomatic  
     renderings.  
 Athens, Athènes, *f. pl.*  
 attack (to), attaquer.  
 attention, attention, *f.*  
 attentive, attentif.  
 audacity, audacité, *f.*  
 aunt, tante, *f.*  
 Austrian, autrichien ; also as noun.  
 author, auteur, *m.*  
 authority, autorité, *f.*  
 autumn, automne, *m.*  
 avarice, avarice, *m.*  
 avoid, éviter.  
 await, attendre.  
 awake, éveiller, s'éveiller.

## B

back (*adv.*), en arrière.  
 bad, mauvais.  
 badly, mal.  
 bake, cuire, *irr.*  
 ball, bal, *m.*, *pl.* bals.  
 bank, rive, *f.*, côte, *f.*  
 bare, nu ; — footed, nu-pieds ; —  
     headed, nu-tête.  
 bark (to), aboyer.  
 battle, bataille, *f.* ; — field, champ  
     de bataille.  
 be, être, *irr.* ; in many idioms, of  
     persons, avoir, *irr.* ; of the  
     weather, faire, *irr.* ; of the  
     health, se porter ; *impers.*,  
     there is, or are, etc., il y a, etc.  
 beak, bec, *m.*  
 beat, battre, *irr.*, frapper.  
 beautiful, beau (bel), *f.*, belle.  
 beauty, beauté, *f.*  
 because, parce que.  
 become, devenir, *irr.* ; — of, de-  
     venir.  
 bed, lit, *m.* ; to go to —, se coucher.  
 bee, abeille, *f.* ; — hive, ruche, *f.*  
 beef, bœuf, *m.*  
 beer, bière, *f.*  
 before (*prep.*), avant, avant de  
     (time) ; devant (place).



- before (*adv.*), auparavant (time);  
     devant, au devant de (place).  
 before (*conj.*), avant que.  
 beg, prier.  
 begin, commencer, se mettre (*irr.*)  
     à.  
 beginning, commencement, *m.*  
 behind, derrière.  
 believe, croire, *irr.*  
 bell, cloche, *f.*  
 belong, appartenir, *irr.*; être à.  
 beloved, aimé, chéri.  
 below, sous, au dessous de.  
 bench, banc, *m.*  
 benefit, bienfait, *m.*  
 Berlin, Berlin, *m.*  
 best (*adj.*), le meilleur.  
 best (*adv.*), le mieux.  
 betray, trahir.  
 better (*adj.*), meilleur.  
 better (*adv.*), mieux; to be —,  
     valoir (*irr.*), mieux.  
 between, entre.  
 big, gros, grand.  
 bind, lier, (of books) relier, (round)  
     ceindre, *irr.*  
 bird, oiseau, *m.*  
 bite (to), mordre.  
 bitter, amer.  
 bitterly, amèrement.  
 black, noir.  
 blame (to), blâmer (de, for).  
 bless, bénir.  
 blind, aveugle; — man, the same,  
     as noun.  
 blood, sang, *m.*  
 blow (to), souffler; (of flowers)  
     éclore.  
 blow, coup, *m.*  
 blue, bleu.  
 blush (to), rougir.  
 boast (to), se vanter; — of, de.  
 body, corps, *m.*  
 boil, bouillir; as transitive, faire  
     bouillir, *irr.*  
 book, livre, *m.*  
 boot, botte, *f.*  
 born, né; new —, nouveau-né.  
 born (to be), naître, *irr.* (aux. être).  
 both, l'un et l'autre; tous (les)  
     deux; — and, et — et.
- bottle, bouteille, *f.*  
 boy, garçon, *m.*  
 Brazil, Brésil, *m.*  
 brave, brave, courageux.  
 bravely, bravement, courageuse-  
     ment.  
 bread, pain, *m.*  
 breadth, largeur, *f.*  
 break, casser, rompre, *irr.*  
 bridge, pont, *m.*  
 bright, brillant, clair.  
 brilliant, brillant.  
 bring, porter, apporter.  
 broad, large.  
 brother, frère, *m.*; — in law, beau-  
     frère; *pl.* —x —s.  
 build, bâtir, construire, *irr.*  
 building, édifice, *m.*  
 burn, brûler.  
 but (*conj.*), mais.  
 but (*adv.*), seulement, ne — que.  
 butter, beurre, *m.*  
 buy, acheter.  
 by, par, de, à; with *pres. part.*,  
     en; of measure, sur; of excess,  
     de; and in various idiomatic  
     renderings.

## C

- cabbage, chou, *m.*  
 Cæsar, César, *m.*  
 cage, cage, *f.*  
 cake, gâteau, *m.*  
 call, appeler.  
 camel, chameau, *m.*  
 can (aux. verb), pouvoir, *irr.*;  
     savoir, *irr.* I cannot, je ne  
     puis, je ne saurais (without  
     pas).  
 cane, canne, *f.*  
 capital (city), capitale, *f.*  
 captive, captif, *m.*; captive, *f.*  
 card, carte, *f.*  
 care, soin, *m.*; to take —, avoir  
     soin, prendre garde.  
 careful, soigneux.  
 carefully, soigneusement.  
 careless, négligent, insoucieux.  
 carriage, voiture, *f.*

- carry, porter ; — off, emporter, emmener ; — on (war), faire (la guerre).  
 Carthage, Carthage, *f*.  
 Carthaginian, carthaginois, *m*.  
 cast, jeter.  
 cat, chat, *m*.  
 Catholic, catholique.  
 Cato, Caton, *m*.  
 cauliflower, chou-fleur, *m*. ; *pl.* — *x*, — *s*.  
 cause, raison, *f*. ; occasion, *f*.  
 cause (to), causer (before *infin.*), faire.  
 cavalry, cavallerie, *f*.  
 cease, cesser.  
 celebrate, célébrer.  
 celebrated, célèbre, célébré.  
 cell, cellule, *f*.  
 century, siècle, *m*.  
 certain, certain.  
 chain, chaîne, *f*. ; chains (irons), fers, *m. pl.*  
 chair, chaise, *f*.  
 change (to), changer.  
 change, changement, *m*.  
 chapter, chapitre, *m*.  
 charm (to), charmer.  
 charming, charmant.  
 Charles, Charles, *m*.  
 chat (to), causer.  
 cheerfully, joyeusement.  
 cheese, fromage, *m*.  
 cherry, cerise, *f*.  
 child, enfant, *m*. or *f*.  
 China, Chine, *f*.  
 choose, choisir.  
 Christ, Christ, *m*.  
 Christian, chrétien, *m*. ; *f*., nne.  
 church, église, *f*.  
 Cicero, Cicéron, *m*.  
 circumcise, circoncire, *irr*.  
 city, ville, *f*.  
 civilize, civiliser.  
 civilization, civilisation, *f*.  
 clad, vêtu (*p. part.*, vêtir, *irr.*).  
 class, classe, *f*.  
 clean (to), nettoyer.  
 clean, net, propre.  
 clear, clair.
- clearly, clair, clairement (plainly), nettement.  
 clock, horloge, *m*. ; o'clock, heure ; what — ? quelle heure ; one —, une heure ; two —, deux heures, etc.  
 close (to), fermer, clore, *irr*.  
 cloth, drap, *m*.  
 clothe, vêtir.  
 clothes, habits, *m. pl.*  
 cloud, nuage, *m*.  
 coat, habit, *m*.  
 coffee, café, *m*.  
 coin, pièce (de monnaie), *f*.  
 cold, froid, *m*. ; to be —, avoir froid (of persons) ; faire froid (of the weather) ; also adj. with être.  
 collar, collier, *m*.  
 color, couleur, *f*.  
 Columbus, Colomb, *m*.  
 combat (to), combattre, *irr*. (battre).  
 come, venir, *irr.*, — back, revenir ; — down, descendre ; — in, entrer.  
 commence, commencer.  
 commerce, commerce, *m*.  
 commit, commettre, *irr*.  
 common, commun, ordinaire.  
 companion, compagnon, *m*.  
 company, compagnie, *f*. , société, *f*.  
 complain, se plaindre, *irr*.  
 conceal, cacher, celer (à, from).  
 conceive, concevoir, *irr*.  
 conclude, conclure, *irr*.  
 concur, concourir, *irr*. (courir).  
 condition, condition, *f*. , on —, à condition (que *subj.*).  
 conduct (to), conduire, *irr*.  
 conduct, conduite, *f*.  
 confess, confesser.  
 confidence, confiance, *f*.  
 confusion, confusion, *f*.  
 conquer, vaincre, *irr.* ; conquérir, *irr*.  
 conqueror, vainqueur, *m*.  
 conscience, conscience, *f*.  
 consent (to), consentir, *irr*. (sentir).  
 consent, consentement, *m*.

consequence, conséquence, *f.*,  
 suite, *f.*  
 consider, considérer.  
 conspirator, conspirateur, *m.*  
 constrain, contraindre, *irr.*  
 construct, construire, *irr.*  
 consul, consul, *m.*  
 consult, consulter.  
 contain, contenir, *irr.*  
 content, }  
 contented, } content, (de, with).  
 continue, continuer.  
 contradict, contredire, *irr.*  
 contrary, contraire; on the —, au  
 contraire.  
 convince, convaincre, *irr.* (vain-  
 cre).  
 cook (to), cuire, *irr.*  
 cook, cuisinier, *m.*; cuisinière, *f.*  
 copy-book, cahier, *m.*  
 coquette, coquette, *f.*  
 correct (to), corriger.  
 correct, correct.  
 correctly, correctement.  
 corrupt (to), corrompre, *irr.*  
 (rompre).  
 cost (to), coûter.  
 council, }  
 counsel, } conseil, *m.*  
 count (to), compter.  
 count (title), comte, *m.*; —ess,  
 comtesse, *f.*  
 country, pays, *m.*; native —,  
 patrie, *f.*; as opposed to town,  
 campagne, *f.*; — house, mai-  
 son de campagne, *f.*  
 courage, courage, *m.*  
 course, cours, *m.*  
 cousin, cousin, *m.*; cousine, *f.*  
 cover (to), couvrir, *irr.*  
 create, créer.  
 crime, crime, *m.*  
 cruel, cruel.  
 cruelly, cruellement.  
 cruelty, cruauté.  
 cry (to), crier; — out, s'écrier.  
 cunning, fin, rusé.  
 cup, tasse, *f.*  
 curse (to), maudire, *irr.*  
 cut (to), couper; — off, cou-  
 per.

## D

dance (to), danser.  
 danger, danger, *m.*  
 dangerous, dangereux.  
 dangerously, dangereusement.  
 dare, oser (without pas).  
 daughter, fille, *f.*; — in law, belle-  
 fille, *f.*; *pl.*, —s —s.  
 day, jour, *m.*, journée, *f.*  
 dead, mort.  
 deaf, sourd.  
 dear, cher.  
 death, mort, *f.*  
 debt, dette, *f.*  
 decay (to), dechoir, *irr.*  
 deceive, décevoir, *irr.*, tromper.  
 December, décembre, *m.*  
 declare, déclarer.  
 decline, déchoir, *irr.*  
 decrease, décroître, *irr.*  
 deed, action, *f.*, fait, *m.*  
 deep, profond.  
 defect, défaut, *m.*  
 defend, défendre.  
 defense, défense, *f.*  
 delay (to), tarder.  
 delay, delai, *m.*  
 delight (to), enchanter; to — in,  
 se plaire (*irr.*) à.  
 delight, joie, *f.*; enjouement, *m.*  
 delightful, délicieux.  
 demand (to), demander (of, à).  
 demand, demande, *f.*  
 deny, nier.  
 depart, partir, *irr.*  
 departure, départ, *m.*  
 depend, dépendre (de); tenir (à),  
*irr.*  
 depict, dépeindre, *irr.* (peindre).  
 descend, descendre.  
 describe, décrire, *irr.* (écrire).  
 desert (*adj.*), désert; *noun*, désert,  
*m.*  
 deserve, mériter.  
 design, dessein, *m.*; (in drawing),  
 dessin, *m.*  
 desire (to), désirer, vouloir, *irr.*  
 desire, désir, *m.*  
 destiny, destin, *m.*, sort, *m.*  
 destroy, détruire, *irr.*, perdre.

destruction, destruction, *f.*  
 determine, résoudre, se résoudre, *irr.*  
 die, mourir, *irr.*  
 different, différent, divers.  
 difficult, difficile.  
 difficulty, difficulté, *f.*  
 dignity, dignité, *f.*  
 dike, digue, *f.*  
 diligent, diligent, appliqué.  
 dine, dîner; dining-room, salle à manger, *f.*  
 dinner, dîner, *m.*  
 direct, direct, droit.  
 directly, directement, (soon) tout de suite.  
 disappear, disparaître, *irr.* (paraître).  
 discover, découvrir, *irr.* (couvrir).  
 discovery, découverte, *f.*  
 disease, maladie, *f.*  
 dishonor, déshonorer.  
 dishonorable, déshonorable, hon- teux.  
 disobey, désobéir (à).  
 displease, déplaire (à), *irr.*  
 disposed, disposé (à).  
 dissolve, dissoudre, *irr.*  
 distinguish, distinguer.  
 distract, distraire, *irr.* (traire).  
 divide, diviser, partager.  
 do, faire, *irr.*; (of the health) se porter; aller, in various idi- oms; as auxiliary, not trans- lated.  
 doctor, médecin (physician); doc- teur.  
 dog, chien, *m.*  
 dollar, dollar, *m.*  
 door, porte, *f.*  
 doubt (to), douter.  
 doubt, doute, *f.*  
 down, en bas.  
 dozen, douzaine (de), *f.*  
 draw, tirer; (a picture) dessiner.  
 dreadful, terrible, affreux.  
 dream, songe, *m.*, rêve, *m.*; — land, pays des rêves, *m.*  
 dream (to), songer, rêver.  
 Dresden, Dresde, *f.*

dress (to), vêtir, habiller, s'habiller (one's self).  
 drink, boire, *irr.*  
 drive (away), chasser; in carriage, aller en voiture.  
 droll, drôle.  
 drop, goutte, *f.*  
 dry, sec, *f.*, sèche.  
 due, dû, *f.*, due (devoir).  
 duke, duc, *m.*  
 dumb, muet.  
 during, pendant.  
 dust, poussière, *f.*  
 duty, devoir, *m.*  
 dwell, demeurer.

## E

each, chaque; — one, chacun; — other, l'un l'autre.  
 early, de bonne heure; earlier, de meilleure heure.  
 earth, terre, *f.*  
 earthquake, tremblement de terre, *m.*  
 easily, facilement.  
 east, est, *m.*, orient, *m.*  
 easy, facile.  
 eat, manger.  
 educate, élever.  
 education, éducation, *f.*  
 egg, œuf, *m.*  
 Egypt, Égypte, *f.*  
 eight, huit.  
 eighth, huitième.  
 either (*pron.*), l'un ou l'autre.  
 either — or, ou — ou; with neg., ni — ni; non plus.  
 elect, élire, *irr.* (lire).  
 elegance, élégance, *f.*  
 elegant, élégant.  
 eleven, onze.  
 eleventh, onzième.  
 Eliza, Élise, *f.*  
 eloquence, éloquence, *f.*  
 eloquent, éloquent.  
 embrace (to), embrasser.  
 Emily, Émilie.  
 emperor, empereur, *m.*  
 empire, empire, *m.*  
 employ, employer, se servir de, *irr.*

enclose, inclure, *irr.* (conclure).  
 end, fin, *f.*; (object) but, *m.*  
 end (to), finir.  
 enemy, ennemi; collective, les ennemis.  
 England, Angleterre, *f.*  
 English, anglais; as noun, — man, or — woman.  
 enjoy (one's self), se réjouir.  
 ennoble, ennoblir.  
 enough, assez (de).  
 enter, entrer (dans).  
 entire, entier.  
 entirely, entièrement, tout.  
 enviable, enviable.  
 envious, envieux.  
 envy, envie, *f.*  
 escape (to), échapper (à); s'échapper, s'enfuir, *irr.*  
 esteem (to), estimer.  
 Europe, Europe, *f.*  
 even (*adv.*), même.  
 evening, soir, *m.*; good —, bon soir.  
 event, événement, *m.*  
 ever, jamais (always), toujours.  
 every, chaque, tout; — one, chacun; — day, tous les jours.  
 everybody, tout le monde.  
 everything, tout (as *noun*).  
 everywhere, partout.  
 evil, mal, *m.*  
 evil (*adj.*), mauvais.  
 exact, exact.  
 exactly, exactement.  
 examine, examiner.  
 example, exemple, *m.*  
 exception, exception, *f.*  
 excess, excès, *m.*  
 exclaim, s'écrier.  
 exclude, exclure, *irr.* (conclure).  
 excuse (to), excuser.  
 excuse, excuse, *f.*  
 exercise, exercice, *m.*; thème, *m.*  
 exist, exister.  
 existence, existence, *f.*  
 expect, attendre, s'attendre à.  
 experience, expérience, *f.*  
 express (to), exprimer.  
 express (*adj.*), exprès, *f.*, expresse.

extend, étendre, s'étendre.  
 extinguish, éteindre, *irr.* (peindre).  
 extract (to), extraire, *irr.* (traire).  
 eye, œil, *m.*; *pl.* yeux.

## F

face, face, *f.*; visage, *m.*  
 fact, fait, *m.*  
 faithful, fidèle.  
 faithfully, fidèlement.  
 fall (to), tomber, choir, *irr.*; — to — due, échoir, *irr.*  
 false, faux, *f.* fausse.  
 fame, renommée, *f.*  
 family, famille, *f.*  
 famous, fameux.  
 far, loin; — from, loin de (*infin.*), loin que (*subj.*); from —, de loin.  
 fashion, façon, *f.*, mode, *f.*  
 fast, vite.  
 fat, gras.  
 fatal, fatal, *pl.* fatals.  
 fate, sort, *m.*  
 father, père, *m.*; — in law, beau-père; *pl.* —x —s.  
 fault, faute, *f.*  
 favor, faveur, *f.*; grâce, *f.*  
 favorite, favori, *f.*, favorite.  
 fear (to), craindre, *irr.*, avoir peur.  
 fear, crainte, *f.*, peur, *f.*; for —, de crainte, de peur (de with *infin.*, que (ne) with *subj.*).  
 February, février.  
 feed, nourrir.  
 feel, sentir, *irr.*  
 feign, feindre, *irr.*  
 fertile, fertile.  
 few, peu (de); quelques, quelques uns.  
 field, champ, *m.*  
 fifth, cinquième.  
 fight (to), combattre, se battre, *irr.*  
 fight, combat, *m.*  
 fill, remplir.  
 find, trouver; be found, se trouver.  
 fine, beau.  
 finely, bellement.  
 finger, doigt, *m.*



finish, finir.  
 fire, feu, *m.*, incendie, *m.*; —arms, armes à feu.  
 firm, ferme, solide.  
 firmly, fermement, solidement.  
 first, premier; at —, d'abord.  
 firstly, premièrement.  
 fish (to), pêcher.  
 fish, poisson, *f.*  
 fit (to), seoir, *irr.*, convenir, *irr.*  
 fit, propre (à), bon (à).  
 five, cinq.  
 flatter, flatter.  
 flatterer, flatteur, *m.*  
 flattering, flatteur, *f. se.*  
 flee, fuir, s'enfuir (escape).  
 fleet, flotte, *f.*  
 flight, fuite, *f.*; put to —, mettre en fuite.  
 flock, troupeau, *m.*  
 florin, florin, *m.*  
 flour, farine, *f.*  
 flower, fleur, *f.*  
 fly (to), voler.  
 follow, suivre, *irr.*; (result) s'en-suivre.  
 fool, fou, *m.*, *pl.* fous.  
 foolish, fou, *f.* folle; sot, *f.* sotte.  
 foot, pied, *m.*; on —, à pied.  
 for (*prep.*), pour; (during) pendant; (since) depuis, il y a; (because of) par—in many idiomatic uses; often not translated.  
 for (*conj.*), car.  
 forbid, défendre.  
 force, force, *f.*  
 forerunner, avant-coureur, *m.*; *pl.* —s.  
 foresee, prévoir, *irr.*, (voir).  
 forest, forêt, *f.*  
 foretell, prédire, *irr.*, (dire).  
 forget, oublier.  
 forgive, pardonner (à).  
 former, premier; the —, celui-là.  
 formerly, autrefois, jadis.  
 fortnight, quinze jours.  
 fortunate, fortuné, heureux.  
 fortune, fortune, *f.*  
 forty, quarante.  
 found (to), fonder.

founder, fondateur, *m.*  
 four, quatre.  
 fourth, quatrième, quart.  
 fox, renard, *m.*  
 franc, franc, *m.*  
 France, France, *f.*  
 Francis, François.  
 frank, franc, *f.* franche.  
 frankly, franchement.  
 free, libre.  
 freely, librement.  
 freeze, geler.  
 French, français; as noun, — man, or woman.  
 fresh, frais, *f.* fraîche.  
 friend, ami, *m.*, amie, *f.*  
 friendship, amitié, *f.*  
 from, de (in most senses); depuis, dès (of time); par (cause)—in many idiomatic senses.  
 fruit, fruit, *m.*  
 full, plein.  
 furious, furieux.  
 future, futur.

## G

gain (to), gagner.  
 game, jeu, *m.*  
 garden, jardin, *m.*  
 gate, porte, *f.*  
 gather, cueillir, *irr.*  
 general, général, *m.*  
 generally, généralement.  
 generous, généreux.  
 generously, généreusement.  
 Geneva, Genève, *f.*  
 gentleman, monsieur, *m.*  
 German, allemand; also as noun.  
 Germany, Allemagne, *f.*  
 get, (obtain) obtenir, (become) devenir, *irr.*, se faire, *irr.*, — up, se lever—various idiomatic senses.  
 gift, don, *m.*  
 girl, fille, *f.*  
 give, donner, (cause) faire, *irr.*  
 glad, aise, content.  
 glass, verre, *m.*  
 glory, gloire, *f.*  
 glove, gant, *m.*

go, aller, *irr.*, — away, s'en aller, *irr.*, partir, *irr.*, — for, aller chercher; — in, entrer; — out, sortir, *irr.*, (fire) s'éteindre; — to bed, se coucher; — to sleep, s'endormir— various idiomatic senses.

God, Dieu; *a god*, dieu; *pl.* dieux.

good, *adj.*, bon.

good, *noun*, bien, *m.*; goods, les biens.

goodness, bonté, *f.*

graceful, gracieux.

grammar, grammaire, *f.*

grand, grand; — father, grand-père; — mother, grand'mère; — son, petit-fils.

grant, accorder; God —, Dieu veuille (que).

grape, raisin, *m.*

grass, herbe, *f.*

grateful, reconnaissant (for, de).

great, grand.

greatly, beaucoup, bien.

greatness, grandeur, *f.*

Greece, Grèce, *f.*

Greek, grec, *f.* grecque.

green, vert.

grey, gris.

grief, douleur, *f.*

grieve, affliger, s'affliger.

grind, moudre, *irr.*

grow, croître, *irr.*, (become) devenir, *irr.*

guilt, culpabilité, *f.*

guilty, coupable.

## H

habit, habitude, *f.*

hail (to), grêler.

hail, grêle, *f.*

hair, cheveux; collective, the hair, les cheveux.

half, demi; the —, moitié, *f.*

hand, main, *f.*

handkerchief, mouchoir, *m.*

handsome, beau.

hang, pendre, suspendre.

happen, arriver, se passer.

happiness, bonheur, *m.*

happy, heureux.

hard, dur, (difficult) difficile.

hardly, à peine.

hare, lièvre, *m.*

haste, 'hâte, *f.*; to make —, se 'hâter.

hasten, 'hâter, se 'hâter.

hat, chapeau, *m.*

hate, 'haïr; *irr.*

hatred, 'haine, *f.*

have, avoir, (cause) faire; — to (must), devoir, il faut; — just, venir de (*infin.*)—in various idiomatic senses—as *auxil.*, sometimes être.

head, tête, *f.*

health, santé, *f.*

hear, entendre, ouïr.

heart, cœur, *m.*

help (to), aider, secourir.

help, aide, *f.*, secours, *m.*

hence, d'ici.

henceforth, désormais.

Henry, 'Henri, *m.*

here, ici; — is, — are, voici.

heretofore, autrefois, jusqu'ici.

hero, 'héros, *m.*

heroic, héroïque.

heroically, héroïquement.

hide, cacher, céler.

high, 'haut.

hill, colline, *f.*

history, histoire, *f.*

hold, tenir, *irr.*, contenir, *irr.*

holiday, jour de fête, *m.*

home, maison, *f.*; at —, à la maison, chez —; to go —, aller chez—etc.

Homer, Homère, *m.*

honest, honnête.

honestly, honnêtement.

honor (to), honorer.

honor, honneur, *m.*

hope (to), espérer; — for, espérer.

hope, espoir, *m.*, espérance, *f.*

horizon, horizon, *m.*

horror, horreur, *f.*

horse, cheval; on —back, à cheval.

hot, chaud; to be —, avoir chaud (of persons), faire chaud (of the weather).

hour, heure, *f*.  
 house, maison, *f*. ; at one's —, chez —.  
 how, comment ; in exclamations, comme, que ; —much, —many, combien (de).  
 however (*conj.*), cependant, pourtant.  
 however (*adv.*), quelque — que, tout — que.  
 human, humain.  
 humming-bird, oiseau-mouche ; *pl.* —x, —s.  
 hundred (a), cent ; collective, centaine, *f*.  
 hunger, faim, *f*.  
 hungry (to be), avoir faim.  
 hunt (to), chasser.  
 hunter, chasseur, *m*.  
 hunting, chasse, *f*. ; to go —, aller à la chasse.  
 husband, mari, *m.*, époux, *m*.  
 hush, tais-toi, taisez-vous (se taire).

## I

I, je, moi.  
 idle, oisif.  
 idleness, oisiveté, *f*.  
 if, si.  
 ignorant, ignorant ; to be — of, ignorer.  
 ill, mal ; as noun, mal, *m.* ; *pl.*, maux.  
 ill-bred, impoli.  
 immediately, immédiatement, tout de suite.  
 immortal, immortel.  
 immortality, immortalité, *f*.  
 impatient, impatient.  
 impolite, impoli.  
 important, important ; to be —, importer.  
 impossible, impossible.  
 imprudence, imprudence, *f*.  
 in, dans, en, à, de (with various idiomatic uses) ; — it or them, y.  
 inasmuch as, vu que, puisque.  
 incessantly, sans cesse.  
 increase (to), croître, accroître, *irr.*  
 independence, indépendance.

indeed, vraiment.  
 Indian, indien, des Indes  
 industrious, diligent.  
 industry, diligence, *f*.  
 infringe, enfreindre, *irr.*, (peindre).  
 inhabitant, habitant, *m*.  
 injure, nuire (à), *irr.*  
 injury, injure, *m*.  
 ink, encre, *f*.  
 inkstand, encrier, *m*.  
 innocence, innocence, *f*.  
 innocent, innocent.  
 insolence, insolence, *f*.  
 insolent, insolent.  
 inspire, inspirer (à).  
 instruct, instruire, *irr.*, (conduire).  
 intend, avoir l'intention de, compiler, vouloir, *irr.*  
 intention, intention, *f*.  
 interest (to), intéresser.  
 interest, intérêt, *m*.  
 interesting, intéressant.  
 interrupt, interrompre, *irr.*, (rompre).  
 into, dans, en, à, entre (with various idiomatic uses) ; — it, or them, y.  
 introduce, introduire, *irr.*, (conduire).  
 invest (with), revêtir (de).  
 invite, inviter.  
 iron, fer, *m.* ; irons, les fers.  
 island, île, *f*.  
 it, il, elle ; le, la, lui ; ce (in various idioms) ; with prepositions, of, from, for, with, by, — en ; to, in, — y.  
 Italian, italien.  
 Italy, Italie, *f*.  
 its, (*adj.*) son ; (*pron.*), le sien ; en.  
 itself, lui-même, elle-même, soi-même, *reflex.*, se, soi.

## J

James, Jacques, *m*.  
 January, janvier, *m*.  
 Japan, Japon, *m*.  
 Jew, juif, *m.* ; —ess, juive, *f*.  
 jewel, bijou, *m*.  
 John, Jean, *m*.

join, joindre, *irr.*  
 journey, voyage, *m.*  
 joy, joie, *f.*  
 judge (to), juger.  
 judge, juge, *m.*  
 judgment, jugement, *m.*  
 Julia, Julie, *f.*  
 July, juillet, *m.*  
 June, juin, *m.*  
 just, juste.  
 just (*adv.*), juste, exactement ; to  
 have *just* (done anything),  
 venir de (*infin.*).  
 justice, justice, *f.*  
 justly, justement.

## K

keep, garder, tenir, se tenir, *irr.*  
 key, clef, *f.*  
 kill, tuer.  
 kind, sorte, *f.*  
 kind (*adj.*), bon.  
 kindness, bonté, *f.*  
 king, roi, *m.*  
 kingdom, royaume, *m.*  
 kiss, baiser.  
 knife, couteau, *m.* ; —grinder,  
 gagne-petit, *m.* ; *pl.* — —  
 know, connaître, *irr.* (by the sen-  
 ses) ; savoir, *irr.* (by the un-  
 derstanding) ; — how to, sa-  
 voir.  
 knowledge, connaissance, *f.* ; sa-  
 voir, *m.*

## L

labor, travail, *m.*  
 ladder, échelle, *f.*  
 lady, dame, *f.* ; young —, demoiselle, *f.*  
 land (to), descendre.  
 land, terre, *f.*  
 language, langage, *m.*  
 large, gros, grand.  
 last, dernier ; at —, enfin.  
 lastly, dernièrement.  
 late, tard.  
 latter (the), celui-ci, le dernier.  
 laugh (to), rire, *irr.* ; — at, rire de.  
 law, loi, *f.*

lawyer, avocat, *m.*  
 lay (to), mettre, *irr.* ; — down,  
 poser ; (eggs), pondre.  
 lazy, paresseux.  
 lead (to), conduire, *irr.*, mener ; —  
 away, emmener.  
 leaf, feuille, *f.*  
 leap (to), sauter.  
 leap-year, année bissextile.  
 learn, apprendre, *irr.* (prendre).  
 least, *adj.*, le moindre.  
 least, *adv.*, le moins ; at —, du  
 moins.  
 leave (to), laisser, quitter ; (depart)  
 partir ; to be left, rester.  
 left, gauche.  
 leg, jambe, *f.*  
 lend, prêter.  
 length, longueur, *f.*  
 less, *adj.*, moindre.  
 less, *adv.*, moins.  
 lest, de peur de (*infin.*), de peur  
 que (*subj.*).  
 let, laisser, permettre, *irr.* (met-  
 tre) ; often, idiomatically, by  
 the subjunctive only.  
 letter, lettre, *f.*  
 Lewis, Louis, *m.*  
 liar, menteur, *m.*  
 liberty, liberté, *f.*  
 library, bibliothèque.  
 lie (position), gésir, *irr.* ; — down,  
 se coucher.  
 lie (to tell a falsehood), mentir, *irr.*  
 lie, mensonge, *m.*  
 life, vie, *f.*  
 lift, lever.  
 light, lumière, *f.*  
 light, *adj.*, léger.  
 lightly, légèrement.  
 like (to), aimer, vouloir, *irr.* ; I  
 should —, je voudrais.  
 like, *adj.*, semblable à ; to be —,  
 ressembler à.  
 listen, écouter ; — to, écouter.  
 little, *adj.*, petit.  
 little (*adv.*), peu (de) ; a —, un peu  
 (de).  
 live, vivre, *irr.* ; (dwell) demeurer ;  
 live on, vivre de.  
 lively, vif.

loan (to), see lend.  
 London, Londres, *m.*  
 long, long.  
 long, *adv.*, — (time), longtemps ;  
 how — ? combien de temps ;  
 as — as, tant que.  
 look (at), regarder ; — (for), cher-  
 cher.  
 lord, seigneur, *m.* ; as title, lord.  
 lose, perdre.  
 loss, perte, *f.*  
 loud, haut.  
 Louisa, Louise.  
 love (to), aimer.  
 love, amour, *m.*  
 low, bas.  
 lying (down), couché.

## M

machine, machine, *f.* ; sewing —,  
 machine à coudre.  
 madam, madame, *f.*  
 Madrid, Madrid, *m.*  
 magnificent, magnifique.  
 Mahommedan, Mahométan.  
 maid-servant, servante, *f.*  
 mail, poste, *f.*  
 maintain, maintenir, *irr.*  
 make, faire, *irr.*  
 malady, maladie, *f.*  
 male, mâle ; as noun, *m.*  
 man, homme, *m.* ; collective, les  
 hommes.  
 manner, manière, *f.*  
 many, beaucoup (de), bien (des) ;  
 — a, maint ; how —, combien  
 (de) ; as —, autant (de) ; so —,  
 tant (de) ; too —, trop (de).  
 map, carte, *f.*  
 March, mars, *m.*  
 march (to), marcher, (transitive)  
 faire marcher.  
 marry, marier, se marier.  
 marvellous, merveilleux.  
 Mary, Marie, *f.*  
 master, maître, *m.* ; —piece, chef-  
 d'œuvre, *m.*  
 may (*aux. verb.*), pouvoir ; in idi-  
 oms, by subjunctive only, etc.  
 May, mai, *m.*

mean (to), vouloir, vouloir dire, *irr.*  
 means, moyen, *m.*  
 meat, viande, *f.*  
 meddle (with), se mêler de.  
 medicine, médecine, *f.*  
 meet, rencontrer.  
 meeting, rencontre, *f.* ; assem-  
 blée, *f.*  
 member, membre, *m.*  
 memory, mémoire, *f.*  
 merchant, négociant, *m.*, mar-  
 chand, *m.*  
 merit (to), mériter.  
 merit, mérite, *m.*  
 message, message, *m.*  
 metal, métal, *m.*  
 methodically, méthodiquement.  
 midday, midi, *m.*  
 mile, mille, *m.*  
 milk, lait, *m.*  
 mill, moulin, *m.* ; wind —, moulin  
 à vent.  
 miller, meunier, *m.*  
 million, million (de), *m.*  
 mind, esprit, *m.*, (soul) âme, *f.*  
 mine, le mien ; (after être), à moi.  
 mingle, mêler, se mêler.  
 minister, ministre, *m.*  
 minute, minute, *f.*  
 miser, avare, *m.*  
 miserable, misérable.  
 misfortune, malheur, *m.*  
 Miss, mademoiselle, *f.*  
 miss (to), manquer, faillir (de), *irr.*  
 mistake (be mistaken), se tromper,  
 se méprendre, *irr.* (prendre.)  
 mistake, faute, *f.*, erreur, *f.*  
 model, modèle, *m.*  
 modern, moderne.  
 modest, modeste.  
 moment, moment, *m.*  
 Monday, lundi, *m.*  
 money, argent, *m.*, monnaie, *f.*  
 month, mois, *m.*  
 monument, monument, *m.*  
 moon, lune, *f.*  
 more, plus (de), davantage ; no —,  
 ne-plus ; once —, encore une  
 fois ; the —, plus.  
 morning, matin, *m.* ; good —, bon-  
 jour.



mortal, mortel.  
 most, *adj.*, la plupart (des).  
 most, *adv.*, le plus ; (absolute) très, fort, bien.  
 mostly, pour la plupart, principalement.  
 mother, mère, *f.*, — in law, belle mère.  
 motive, motif, *m.*  
 mountain, montagne, *f.*  
 mouse, souris, *f.*  
 mouth, bouche, *f.*; (of a river), embouchure, *f.*  
 move (to), mouvoir, se mouvoir, *irr.*, (moral) émouvoir, *irr.*  
 Mr., monsieur, *m.*  
 Mrs., madame, *f.*  
 much, beaucoup (de), bien (de with art.) ; how —, combien ; as —, autant ; so —, tant ; too —, trop.  
 murder, meurtre, *m.*  
 murderer, meurtrier, *m.*  
 must, devoir, *irr.* ; falloir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 mute, muet.  
 my, mon, ma, mes.  
 myself, moi-même, moi ; *reflex.*, me.

## N

name, nom, *m.*  
 named (to be), s'appeler.  
 Napoleon, Napoléon.  
 nation, nation, *f.*  
 national, national.  
 nature, nature, *f.*  
 near, près de, auprès de ; to come near (being), faillir (de).  
 nearly, presque.  
 neat, net, propre.  
 necessary, nécessaire ; to be —, falloir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 necessity, nécessité, *f.*  
 need (to), avoir besoin (de) ; falloir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 need, besoin, *m.*  
 neglect (to), négliger.  
 negligence, négligence, *f.*  
 neighbor, voisin, *m.*, voisine, *f.*

neither, *pron.*, ni l'un ni l'autre (with ne).  
 neither, *conj.*, ni, non plus ; — nor, ni — ni (with ne).  
 nephew, neveu, *m.*  
 Nero, Néron, *m.*  
 nest, nid, *m.*  
 Netherlands, Pays-Bas, *m.*, *pl.*  
 never, jamais (with ne before verb).  
 nevertheless, néanmoins, cependant.  
 new, nouveau, neuf ; — born, nouveau-né.  
 news, nouvelle, *f.*, nouvelles, *f.*, *pl.*  
 next, prochain, (following) suivant.  
 niece, nièce, *f.*  
 night, nuit, *f.*  
 nine, neuf.  
 ninth, neuvième.  
 no, *adv.*, non, pas, point.  
 no, *adj.*, aucun, nul, pas un ; (partitive) pas de, point de ; — more, ne — plus ; — one, aucun, personne (always ne before verb).  
 noble, noble ; also as *noun*.  
 nobody, personne, aucun (ne before verb).  
 noise, bruit, *m.*  
 none, see no ; partitive, noun omitted, en.  
 nor, see neither.  
 Norman, normand, *m.*  
 Normandy, Normandie, *f.*  
 north, nord, *m.* ; *adj.*, du nord.  
 not, (conjunctive) ne ; disjunctive, non, pas, point ; usually ne — pas, ne — point.  
 nothing, rien (with ne before verb).  
 nourish, nourrir.  
 November, novembre, *m.*  
 now, maintenant, à présent.  
 nowhere, nulle part (with ne before verb).  
 number, nombre, *m.*, numéro, *m.*  
 numerous, nombreux.  
 nut, noix, *f.*

## O

obedient, obéissant.  
 obey, obéir (à).  
 object, objet, *m.*  
 oblige, obliger; to be obliged, falloir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 observe, observer.  
 obtain, obtenir, *irr.* (tenir).  
 occasion, occasion, *f.*  
 occupation, occupation, *f.*  
 o'clock, heure; what —, quelle heure, etc.  
 of, de, (in some idioms à).  
 offence, offense, *f.*; to take —, s'offenser.  
 offend, offenser.  
 offer (to), offrir, *irr.*  
 offer, offre, *m.*  
 officer, officier, *m.*  
 often, souvent.  
 oil, huile, *f.*  
 old, vieux, (before vowel) vieil, *f.* vieille, âgé; (idiom) how old, quel âge; to be — years old, avoir — ans; oldest, eldest (of family), aîné.  
 old age, vieillesse, *f.*  
 omit, omettre, *irr.* (mettre).  
 on, (place) sur, (time) à, (direction) de—in various idiomatic senses.  
 once, une fois; — more, encore une fois; at —, tout de suite, sur le champ.  
 one, *adj.*, un.  
 one, *pron.* (indef.) on; (def.) celui, etc.; often not translated, or by en; as, a good one, etc.; some —, quelqu'un; any —, quelqu'un, personne; no —, aucun, personne; the —, l'un (l'autre), celui, etc.  
 one's, poss. pron., son.  
 one's-self, soi-même, soi; *reflex.*, se.  
 only, *adj.*, seul.  
 only, *adv.*, seulement, ne — que; not —, non seulement.  
 open (to), ouvrir, *irr.*  
 open, ouvert.

opera, opéra, *m.*  
 opportunity, occasion, *f.*  
 or, ou; either —, ou — ou (with neg. *ni*).  
 oracle, oracle, *m.*  
 oration, oration, *f.*  
 orator, orateur, *m.*  
 order, ordre *m.*; in — to, pour, afin de (infin.); in — that, pour que, afin que (subj.).  
 order (to), ordonner (à).  
 ordinarily, ordinairement.  
 origin, origine, *f.*  
 original, original.  
 originally, originalement.  
 other, autre.  
 others, les autres, autrui.  
 otherwise, autrement.  
 ought, devoir, *irr.*, falloir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 our, notre.  
 ours, le nôtre, (after être) à nous.  
 ourselves, nous-mêmes; reflex., nous.  
 out, hors, au dehors de.  
 outrage (to), outrager.  
 outrage, outrage, *m.*  
 outrageous, outrageux.  
 over, sur, au dessus de.  
 overtake, atteindre, *irr.*  
 owe, devoir, *irr.*  
 own, propre (*adj.*); as *pron.* omitted.

## P

page, page, *f.*  
 pain, douleur, *f.*, peine, *f.*  
 paint (to), peindre, *irr.*  
 painter, peintre, *m.*  
 pair, paire, *f.*  
 palace, palais, *m.*  
 paper, papier, *m.*  
 pardon (to), pardonner (à).  
 pardon, pardon, *m.*  
 parliament, parlement, *m.*  
 part, partie, *f.*, part, *f.*  
 pass (to), passer, se passer.  
 passage, passage, *m.*  
 past, passé, the —, le passé.  
 patience, patience, *f.*  
 patriarch, patriarche, *m.*

- pay, payer ; — for, payer (à before persons).  
 peace, paix, *f.*  
 peach, pêche, *f.*  
 peak, pic, *m.*  
 pen, plume, *f.* ; — knife, canif, *m.*  
 pencil, crayon, *m.*  
 people (nation), peuple, *m.* ; (persons), gens, *pl.*, *m.* or *f.* ; indef., on.  
 perceive, apercevoir, s'apercevoir (de), *irr.* (recevoir).  
 perfume, parfum, *m.*  
 perhaps, peut-être.  
 perish, périr.  
 permission, permission, *f.*  
 permit, permettre, *irr.* (mettre.)  
 Persian, persan, de Perse.  
 person, personne, *f.*  
 persuade, persuader.  
 Peter, Pierre, *m.*  
 physician, médecin, *m.*  
 pick (up), ramasser.  
 picture, tableau, *m.*  
 pipe, pipe, *f.*  
 pity, pitié, *f.* ; 'tis a —, c'est dommage.  
 pity (to), plaindre, *irr.* ; avoir pitié (de, on).  
 place, place, *f.*, lieu, *m.*  
 place (to), placer.  
 plant, plante, *f.*  
 play (to), jouer ; — on (an instrument), jouer de.  
 play, jeu, *m.* (game) ; spectacle, *m.* (drama).  
 pleasant, agréable.  
 please, plaire (à), *irr.* ; if you —, s'il vous plaît ; (before infin.), veuillez (vouloir).  
 pleased, content (de, with).  
 pleasure, plaisir, *m.*  
 pledge, gage, *m.*  
 plot, complot, *m.*  
 poem, poème, *m.*  
 poet, poète, *m.*  
 point, point, *m.*, (end), pointe, *f.*  
 pointed, pointu.  
 poison, poison, *m.*  
 polite, poli.  
 politely, poliment.
- poor, pauvre.  
 pope, pape, *m.*  
 possible, possible.  
 post, poste, *f.* ; — office, poste, *f.*  
 postscript, postscriptum, *m.* ; *pl.* —  
 potato, pomme de terre, *f.*  
 pound, livre, *f.*  
 power, pouvoir, *m.* ; puissance, *f.*  
 praise (to), louer.  
 praise, louange, *f.*  
 pray, prier.  
 precious, précieux.  
 predict, prédire, *irr.* (dire).  
 prefer, préférer, aimer mieux.  
 prejudice, prévention, *f.*  
 prepare, préparer.  
 prescribe, prescrire, *irr.* (écrire.)  
 present, présent, *m.* ; at —, à présent.  
 present, *adj.*, présent.  
 present (to), présenter.  
 preserve, préserver, (fruits) conserve, *irr.*  
 president, président, *m.*  
 pretend, feindre, *irr.*  
 pretty, joli.  
 prevail, prévaloir, *irr.* (valoir).  
 prevent, prévenir, *irr.*, (venir), empêcher.  
 price, prix, *m.*  
 priest, prêtre, *m.*  
 prince, prince, *m.*  
 princess, princesse, *f.*  
 principal, principal.  
 principally, principalement.  
 prison, prison, *f.*  
 prisoner, prisonnier, *m.*  
 prize, prix, *m.*  
 probable, probable.  
 probably, probablement.  
 problem, problème, *m.*  
 produce, produire, *irr.*, (conduire).  
 profess, professer, avouer.  
 professor, professeur, *m.*  
 profound, profond.  
 profoundly, profondément.  
 progress, progrès, *m.*, (often plural).  
 promise (to), promettre, *irr.*, (mettre.)

promise, promesse, *f.*  
 promote, promouvoir, *irr.* (mouvoir).  
 prompt, prompt.  
 promptly, promptement.  
 pronounce, prononcer.  
 proper, propre.  
 property, propriété, *f.*; bien, *m.*  
 prophet, prophète, *m.*  
 propose, proposer.  
 prosperity, prospérité, *f.*  
 protect, protéger.  
 proud, orgueilleux.  
 proudly, orgueilleusement, avec orgueil.  
 prove, prouver.  
 provide, pourvoir, *irr.*  
 provided (that), pourvu (que, *subj.*).  
 providence, providence, *f.*  
 provident, prévoyant.  
 prudence, prudence, *f.*  
 prudent, prudent.  
 prudently, prudemment.  
 Prussia, Prusse, *f.*  
 Prussia, prussien.  
 public, public, *f.*, publique.  
 pump (to), pomper.  
 pump, pompe, *f.*  
 punish, punir.  
 punishment, punition, *f.*  
 pupil (scholar), élève, *m.*, or *f.*  
 purse, bourse, *f.*  
 pursue, poursuivre, *irr.* (suivre).  
 put, mettre; — on, (clothes) mettre; — out (fire, etc.) éteindre, *irr.* (peindre).

## Q

quarter, quart, *m.*  
 queen, reine, *f.*  
 question, question, *f.*  
 quick, *adv.*, vite.  
 quiet, tranquille.  
 quiet, *n.*, tranquillité, *f.*  
 quite, tout, tout à fait.

## R

race, race, *f.*; (running) course, *f.*  
 railroad, chemin de fer, *m.*

rain (to), pleuvoir, *irr.*, *impers.*  
 rain, pluie, *f.*  
 rainbow, arc-en-ciel, *m.*, *pl.*, arcs — —.  
 raise, lever, (rear) élever.  
 rapidly, rapidement.  
 rare, rare.  
 rather, plutôt.  
 rattlesnake, serpent-à-sonnettes, *m.*  
 reach, atteindre, *irr.*, arriver à.  
 read, lire, *irr.*; — again, relire, *irr.* (lire).  
 ready, prêt (à).  
 reappear, reparaitre, *irr.* (connaître).  
 reap, récolter.  
 rear, élever.  
 reason, raison, *f.*  
 receive, recevoir, *irr.*  
 recollect, se souvenir (de), *irr.* (venir).  
 recompense, récompense, *f.*  
 reconstruct, reconstruire, *irr.* (conduire).  
 red, rouge.  
 reflect, réfléchir.  
 refuse, refuser.  
 regard (to), regarder.  
 regard, égard, *m.*; with — to, à l'égard de.  
 regret (to), regretter.  
 regret, regret, *m.*  
 reign (to), régner.  
 reign, règne, *m.*  
 reject, rejeter.  
 rejoice, se réjouir (de, in).  
 rejoin, rejoindre, *irr.* (joindre).  
 relate, conter, raconter.  
 religion, religion, *f.*  
 rely, compter (sur), se fier (à).  
 remain, rester.  
 remarkable, remarquable.  
 remember, se souvenir (de).  
 render, rendre, faire, *irr.*  
 repair, réparer.  
 repeat, répéter.  
 repent, se repentir (de, of).  
 reply (to), répondre (à).  
 reply, réponse, *f.*  
 report, bruit, *m.*

**reproach** (to), reprocher.  
**reproach**, reproche, *m.*  
**republic**, république, *f.*  
**reputation**, réputation, *f.*  
**request** (to), demander.  
**request**, demande, *f.*  
**require** (need), avoir besoin (de).  
**re-read**, relire, *irr.* (lire).  
**re-say**, redire, *irr.* (dire).  
**resemble**, ressembler (à).  
**resolve**, se résoudre (à), *irr.*  
**respectful**, respectueux.  
**rest** (to), se reposer.  
**rest**, repos (*m.*), (remainder) reste, *m.*  
**restrain**, restreindre, *irr.* (peindre), retenir, *irr.* (tenir).  
**retain**, retenir, *irr.* (tenir).  
**retake**, reprendre, *irr.* (prendre).  
**retreat**, retraite, *f.*  
**return** (to), revenir, *irr.* (venir); (transitive) rendre.  
**return**, retour, *m.*  
**revive**, revivre, *irr.* (vivre).  
**reward** (to), récompenser.  
**reward**, récompense, *f.*  
**Rhine**, Rhin, *m.*  
**ribbon**, ruban, *m.*  
**rich**, riche.  
**riches**, richesse, *f.* (often plural).  
**ride** (on horseback), aller à cheval.  
**ridicule** (to), se moquer (de).  
**ridicule**, ridicule, *m.*  
**ridiculous**, ridicule.  
**right**, *n.*, droit, *m.*, raison, *f.*  
**right** (*adj.*), droit, juste; — hand, la droite; to the —, à droite; to be —, avoir raison.  
**ring** (to), sonner.  
**ring**, bague, *f.*  
**ripe**, mûr.  
**rise** (get up), se lever.  
**risk** (to), hasarder.  
**risk**, hasard, *m.*  
**river**, rivière, *f.*  
**road**, chemin, *m.*, rail—, chemin de fer.  
**robe**, robe, *f.*  
**Roman**, romain.  
**Rome**, Rome, *f.*  
**roof**, toit, *m.*

**room**, chambre, *f.*  
**rose**, rose, *f.*  
**round**, rond.  
**royal**, royal.  
**ruin** (to), ruiner, perdre.  
**ruin**, ruine, *f.*  
**rule**, règle, *f.*  
**run**, courir, *irr.*; — up, accourir, *irr.* (courir).  
**Russia**, Russie, *f.*  
**Russian**, russe.

## S

**sack** (to pillage), saccager.  
**sack** (bag), sac, *m.*  
**sacred**, saint.  
**sacrifice** (to), sacrifier.  
**sacrifice**, sacrifice, *m.*  
**sad**, triste.  
**sadness**, tristesse, *f.*  
**salary**, salaire, *m.*  
**salt**, sel, *m.*  
**salute** (to), saluer.  
**same**, même; the —, le même.  
**sand**, sable, *m.*  
**satisfied**, satisfait, content (de, with).  
**satisfy**, satisfaire.  
**savage**, sauvage, *m.*  
**save** (to), sauver.  
**save** (except), sauf, excepté.  
**say**, dire, *irr.*; — again, redire, *irr.* (dire).  
**scene**, scène, *f.*  
**scholar**, écolier, *m.*, écolière, *f.*  
**school**, école, *f.*; at, or to —, à l'école.  
**science**, science, *f.*  
**scissors**, ciseaux, *m.*, *pl.*  
**score**, vingtaine, *f.*  
**Scotch**, écossais.  
**sea**, mer, *f.*  
**seamstress**, couturière, *f.*  
**seat**, siège, *m.*; to take a —, s'asseoir, *irr.*  
**seated**, assis (asseoir, *irr.*).  
**second**, second, deuxième; in idioms, deux.  
**secret**, secret, *m.*  
**secret** (*adj.*), secret, *f.*, secrète.



- seduce, séduire, *irr.* (conduire).  
 see, voir, *irr.*; — again, revoir, *irr.* (voir).  
 seeing that, vu que (voir).  
 seem, sembler, paraître, *irr.* (connaître).  
 seen, vu (voir).  
 self (with pronouns), même.  
 sell, vendre; (intrans.) se vendre; for sale, à vendre.  
 send, envoyer, *irr.*; — away, or back, renvoyer; — for, envoyer chercher; — word, envoyer dire.  
 sense, sens, *m.*  
 sentence, sentence, *f.*  
 September, septembre, *m.*  
 servant, domestique, *m.*, servante, *f.*  
 serve, servir, *irr.*  
 service, service, *m.*  
 set (put), mettre, *irr.*; — down, poser; — off (out), partir; of the sun, etc., se coucher.  
 seven, sept.  
 seventh, septième.  
 seventy, soixante-dix.  
 several, plusieurs.  
 severe, sévère.  
 severely, sévèrement.  
 sew, coudre, *irr.*  
 shall, devoir, *irr.* (in various idioms, as auxiliary).  
 Shakspeare, Shakspeare.  
 shame, honte, *f.*  
 shameful, honteux.  
 shed (to), verser, répandre.  
 sheep, mouton, *m.*  
 sheet (of paper), feuille, *f.*  
 shine, luire, *irr.*  
 ship, vaisseau, *m.*  
 shirt, chemise, *f.*  
 shock, choc, *m.*  
 shoe, soulier, *m.*  
 shop, magasin, *m.*  
 short, court.  
 shortly (soon), bientôt.  
 show (to), montrer, faire voir, *irr.*  
 show, spectacle, *m.*  
 shun, éviter, fuir, *irr.*  
 shut (to), fermer.  
 sick, malade.  
 silence, silence, *m.*; to keep —, se taire, *irr.*  
 silent, silencieux; to be —, se taire, *irr.*  
 silk, soie, *f.*; as *adj.*, — de soie.  
 silver, argent, *m.*; as *adj.*, — d'argent.  
 sin, péché, *m.*  
 since, depuis que (time); puisque (cause); as *prep.*, depuis, il y a.  
 sincere, sincère.  
 sing, chanter.  
 singer, chanteux, *m.*; cantatrice, *f.*  
 single, seul.  
 sir, monsieur.  
 sister, sœur, *f.*; — in law, belle-sœur.  
 sit, s'asseoir, *irr.*; — down, s'asseoir.  
 six, six.  
 sixth, sixième.  
 sixty, soixante.  
 skin, peau, *f.*  
 sky, ciel, *m.*  
 slate, ardoise, *f.*  
 slay, tuer.  
 sleep (to), dormir, *irr.*; to go to —, s'endormir, *irr.*  
 sleep, sommeil, *m.*  
 sleepy (to be), avoir sommeil.  
 slow, lent.  
 slowly, lentement.  
 small, petit.  
 smell, sentir, *irr.*; — sweet, sentir bon; — bad, sentir mauvais.  
 smile (to), sourire, *irr.* (rire).  
 smoke (to), fumer.  
 snow (to), neiger.  
 snow, neige, *f.*  
 so, (thus) ainsi; (degree) si, tellement, tant; (accordingly) ainsi, donc; in many idioms, by the pron., le; — much, or many, tant, autant (de); — that, de sorte que.  
 so and so (as noun), un tel.  
 sob, sanglot, *m.*  
 society, société, *f.*

- Socrates, Socrate, *m.*  
 soft, mou (mol), *f.* molle; doux, *f.* douce.  
 softly, doucement.  
 soil (to), salir.  
 soil, sol, *m.*  
 solder, soldat, *m.*  
 solo, solo, *m.*  
 solve, résoudre, *irr.*  
 some, quelque; often partitive, de, with or without article; with noun omitted, en; — one, quelqu'un; *pl.* (some), quelques-uns.  
 somebody, quelqu'un, *on.*  
 something, quelque chose, *m.*  
 sometimes, quelquefois.  
 somewhere, quelque part.  
 son, fils, *m.*; — in-law, beau-fils, *m.*  
 song, chant, *m.*, chanson, *f.*  
 soon, bientôt; as — as, aussitôt que.  
 sorrow, chagrin, *m.*, douleur, *f.*  
 sorry, fâché, affligé.  
 sort, sorte, *f.*  
 soul, âme, *f.*  
 south, sud, *m.*, midi, *m.*  
 sovereign, souverain, *m.* (noun or *adj.*).  
 sow (to), semer.  
 Spain, Espagne, *f.*  
 Spanish, espagnol.  
 speak, parler.  
 spectacles, lunettes, *f.*, *pl.*  
 speech, parole, *f.*, discours, *m.*  
 spend, (money) dépenser, (time) passer.  
 spirit, esprit, *m.*  
 spite, dépit, *m.*; in — of, malgré.  
 spoon, cuiller, *f.*  
 spread (to), répandre, se répandre.  
 spring (to), sauter, (up) naître, *irr.*  
 spring, (season) printemps, *m.*, (elastic) ressort, *m.*  
 spy, espion, *m.*  
 squander, prodiguer.  
 square, carré, *m.* (noun or *adj.*).  
 stand (to), être debout.  
 standing, debout.  
 star, étoile, *f.*  
 start, partir, *irr.*  
 state, état, *m.*, —s general, États-généraux.  
 statesman, homme d'état.  
 stay, rester, demeurer.  
 steal, voler.  
 steam, vapeur, *f.*; — engine, machine à vapeur, *f.*  
 step, pas, *m.*  
 still, *adv.*, encore; *conj.* cependant, donc.  
 stocking, bas, *m.*  
 stone, pierre, *f.*  
 stoop, s'abaisser.  
 stop, arrêter, s'arrêter.  
 storm, orage, *m.*, tempête, *f.*  
 stormy, orageux.  
 story, histoire, *f.*  
 strange, étrange.  
 stranger, étranger, *m.*; étrangère, *f.*  
 street, rue, *f.*  
 strength, force, *f.*  
 stretch (out), étendre, s'étendre.  
 strike, frapper; (clock) sonner.  
 strong, fort.  
 struggle, se débattre.  
 study (to), étudier.  
 study, étude, *f.*  
 stupid, sot, *f.*, sotte.  
 subject (to), soumettre, *irr.* (mettre).  
 subject, sujet; as *adj.*, *f.* sujette.  
 submit, se soumettre, *irr.* (mettre).  
 succeed, réussir, (follow) succéder à.  
 success, succès, *m.*  
 succor (to), secourir (à); *irr.* (courir).  
 succor, secours, *m.*  
 such, tel; — a, un tel.  
 sudden, subite.  
 suddenly, subitement, tout à coup.  
 suffer, souffrir, *irr.*  
 suffice, suffire, *irr.*  
 sufficient, assez; to be —, suffire, *irr.*  
 sugar, sucre, *m.*  
 suit (to), convenir (à), *irr.* (venir),  
 summer, été, *m.*  
 sun, soleil, *m.*

Sunday, dimanche, *m.*  
 superior, supérieur.  
 support (to), supporter, soutenir,  
*irr.* (tenir).  
 support, soutien, *m.*, appui, *m.*  
 sure, sûr.  
 surprise (to), surprendre, *irr.*  
 (prendre).  
 surprise, surprise, *f.*  
 surrender (to), se rendre.  
 surround, entourer.  
 survive, survivre (*à*), *irr.* (vivre).  
 suspect, soupçonner.  
 suspicion, soupçon, *m.*  
 sustain, soutenir, *irr.* (tenir).  
 Sweden, Suède, *f.*  
 sweet, doux, *f.*, douce.  
 Switzerland, Suisse, *f.*  
 sword, épée, *f.*  
 sympathy, sympathie, *f.*

## T

table, table, *f.*  
 tailor, tailleur, *m.*  
 take, prendre, *irr.*; — away,  
 emmener; — off, ôter; — a  
 seat, s'asseoir, *irr.*; — a walk,  
 se promener.  
 talent, talent, *m.*  
 talk (to), parler.  
 talk, conversation, *f.*  
 task, tâche, *f.*  
 tea, thé, *m.*  
 teach, enseigner, apprendre, *irr.*  
 (prendre).  
 teacher, maître, *m.*  
 tear, larme, *f.*  
 Te-Deum, Te-Deum, *pl.*, — —.  
 tedious, ennuyeux.  
 tell, dire, *irr.*, apprendre, *irr.*  
 (prendre); — a lie, mentir,  
*irr.*  
 temptation, tentation, *f.*  
 ten, dix.  
 tender, tendre, doux.  
 tenderly, tendrement, doucement.  
 tenth, dixième.  
 tester, ceil-de-lit; *pl.* ciels — —.  
 than, que; in idioms, que — ne.  
 thank (to), remercier.

that, *dem. adj.*, ce, ce — là; *dem.*  
*pron.*, ce; celui, celui-là;  
 cela, là; — which, ce qui, ce  
 que.  
 that, *rel. pron.*, qui, que; lequel.  
 that, *conj.*, que (in many idioms);  
 in order —, pour, (*infin.*),  
 pour que (*subj.*), etc.  
 the, *def. art.*, le; in many idioms  
 not translated.  
 theatre, théâtre, *m.*  
 thee, toi, te.  
 their, *poss. adj.*, leur, *pl.* leurs.  
 theirs, *poss. pron.*, le leur, etc.  
 them, eux, elles; les; *ind. obj.*,  
 leur; with prep. often en, or y,  
 according to the relation.  
 theme, thème, *m.*  
 themselves, eux - mêmes, elles-  
 mêmes; reflex, se.  
 then, (time) alors; (sequence) en-  
 suite; (consequence), puis,  
 donc.  
 there, là, (*conjunctive*) y; — is,  
 or are, (*definite*) voilà, (*in-*  
*definite*) il y a.  
 these, see this.  
 they, eux, ils, elles; ceux; (*in-*  
*def.*) on.  
 thick, épais.  
 thief, voleur, *m.*  
 thine, *poss. pron.*, le tien; after  
 être, à toi.  
 thing, chose, *f.*; any, or some —,  
 quelque chose, *m.*  
 think, penser, croire, *irr.*  
 third, troisième.  
 thirst, soif, *f.*  
 thirsty (to be), avoir soif.  
 this, *dem. adj.*, ce, ce — ci; *dem.*  
*pron.*, ce, ceci, celui-ci.  
 thorn, épine, *f.*  
 those, see that.  
 thou, tu, toi.  
 though, quoique, bien que (*subj.*);  
 quand (*conditional*).  
 thought, pensée, *f.*  
 thousand (a), mille; of dates, mil.  
 three, trois.  
 through, (across) à travers, par;  
 (by means of) par.

throw, jeter.  
thunder (to), tonner, *impers.*  
thunder, tonnerre, *m.*  
thus, ainsi.  
thy, ton.  
thyself, toi-même, toi ; reflex., te.  
till, see until.  
time (duration), temps, *m.* ; (repetition) fois, *f.* ; (of the clock) heure, *f.*  
tired, las, fatigué.  
to, à, en, envers, vers, jusqu'à ; prep., in various idiomatic senses ; before infin., de, à ; (purpose) pour ; and often not translated.  
to-day, aujourd'hui.  
to-night, cette nuit, *f.*  
together, ensemble.  
tomahawk, casse-tête, *m.*, *pl.*  
— — —  
to-morrow, demain.  
tone, ton, *m.*  
too, (excess) trop, (also) aussi.  
tortoise, tortue, *f.*  
towards, vers, (persons) envers.  
town, ville, *f.*  
tragedy, tragédie, *f.*  
transgress, transgresser, enfreindre, *irr.*  
translate, traduire, *irr.* (conduire).  
translation, traduction, *f.*  
travel (to), voyager.  
traveler, voyageur, *m.*  
traverse, parcourir, *irr.* (courir).  
treasure, trésor, *m.*  
treaty, traité, *m.*  
tree, arbre, *m.*  
tremble, trembler, tressaillir, *irr.*  
tribunal, tribunal, *m.*  
triumph (to), triumph (over, de).  
trouble, peine, *f.*  
troublesome, ennuyeux.  
Troy, Troie, *f.*  
true, vrai.  
truly, vraiment.  
trust (to), confier à, se fier à.  
trust, confiance, *f.*  
truth, vérité, *f.*  
try, essayer, tâcher (de).  
Tuesday, mardi, *m.*

twelfth, douzième.  
twelve, douze ; — o'clock, midi, *m.*  
twenty, vingt.  
twice, deux fois.  
two, deux.

## U

ugly, vilain.  
umbrella, parapluie, *m.*  
uncle, oncle, *m.*  
under, sous, dessous.  
understand, comprendre, *irr.* (prendre).  
undertake, entreprendre, *irr.* (prendre).  
undertaking, entreprise, *f.*  
unfaithful, infidèle.  
unfortunate, malheureux.  
unfortunately, malheureusement.  
unhappy, malheureux.  
unite, unir, se réunir.  
United States, États-Unis, *m.*, *pl.*  
unjust, injuste.  
unless, à moins que — ne (subj.).  
unstitch, découdre, *irr.* (coudre).  
until, *prep.*, jusque, jusqu'à.  
until, *conj.*, jusqu'à ce que (subj.).  
unworthy, indigne.  
upon, sur, see on.  
us, nous.  
use (to), employer, se servir de, *irr.*  
use, usage ; to be of —, servir à ; to make — of, se servir de, *irr.*  
useful, utile.  
utter (to), prononcer, pousser.  
utter, *adj.*, extrême.

## V

vain, vain ; to do (anything) in vain, avoir beau (infin.).  
vanquish, vaincre, *irr.*  
vapor, vapeur, *f.*  
vegetable, légume, *m.*  
verb, verbe, *m.*  
verdure, verdure, *f.*  
very, *adj.*, même.  
very, *adv.*, très, fort, bien.  
vice, vice, *m.*



victim, victime, *f.*  
 victor, vainqueur, *m.*  
 victory, victoire, *f.*  
 violent, violent.  
 violently, violemment.  
 virtue, vertu, *f.*  
 virtuous, vertueux.  
 vivid, vif.  
 vividly, vivement.  
 voice, voix, *f.*  
 volume, volume, *m.*, tome, *m.*  
 vow, vœu, *m.*  
 voyage, voyage, *m.*

## W

wait, attendre ; — for, attendre.  
 wake, éveiller, s'éveiller.  
 walk (to), marcher, se promener.  
 walk, marche, *f.*, promenade, *f.* ;  
     to take a —, se promener.  
 want (to), (need), avoir besoin de,  
      falloir, *irr. impers.* ; (lack)  
     manquer (de) ; (wish) désirer,  
     vouloir, *irr.*  
 want (need), besoin, *m.*  
 war, guerre, *f.*  
 warm, chaud ; to be —, avoir  
     chaud.  
 warrior, guerrier, *m.*  
 wash, laver, se laver.  
 watch (to), veiller.  
 watch, (time) montre ; (guard)  
     garde, *f.*  
 water, eau.  
 we, nous ; (*indef.*), on.  
 weak, faible.  
 wear (to), porter.  
 weather, temps, *m.* ; what kind  
     of —, quel temps, (*in idioms*,  
     faire).  
 week, semaine, *f.*, huit jours,  
     *m., pl.*  
 weep, pleurer.  
 welcome (to), accueillir, *irr.*  
     (cueillir).  
 well, bien ; to be —, se porter bien.  
 West, ouest, *m.*  
 west, *adj.*, de l'ouest, occidental.  
 what, *inter. adj.*, quel ; *inter.*  
     *pron.*, quoi, que.

what, *rel. pron.*, quoi, que ; ce  
     qui, ce que, etc.  
 whatever, *indef. pron.*, quoi que,  
     tout ce (qui or que), etc. ;  
     *indef. adj.*, quel que, quel-  
     conque.  
 wheat, blé, *m.*  
 when, *inter.*, quand ; *relat.*,  
     quand, lorsque, que.  
 whence, d'où.  
 where, où ; any (every) —, partout ;  
     no —, nulle part ; — to, où ;  
     — from, d'où.  
 whether, soit, soit que (*subj.*) ;  
     (*if*), si.  
 which, *inter. adj.*, quel ; *inter.*  
     *pron.*, lequel.  
 which, *rel. pron.*, qui, que, le-  
     quel ; of —, dont, etc.  
 while, pendant que, (*though*)  
     tandis que.  
 white, blanc, *f.* blanche.  
 whither, où.  
 who, *inter. qui* ; *rel. qui*, lequel.  
 whoever, quiconque, qui que,  
     qui.  
 whole, entier, tout (le) ; the —  
     (*noun*), le tout.  
 whom, *inter. pron.*, qui ; of — ? de  
     qui ?  
 whom, *rel. pron.*, que, lequel ; of  
     —, dont.  
 whose, *inter. pron.*, de qui, à qui.  
 whose, *rel. pron.*, dont, duquel,  
     etc.  
 why, pourquoi.  
 wicked, méchant.  
 wide, large.  
 widow, veuve, *f.*  
 wife, femme, *f.*, épouse, *f.*  
 will (to), vouloir, *irr.* (*as auxil.*,  
     often simple future).  
 will, volonté, (*last*), testament, *m.*  
 William, Guillaume, *m.*  
 willingly, volontiers.  
 win, gagner.  
 wind, vent, *m.* ; — mill, moulin à  
     vent, *m.*  
 window, fenêtre, *f.*  
 wine, vin, *m.*  
 winter, hiver, *m.*



wipe, essuyer.  
 wisdom, sagesse, *f.*  
 wise, sage.  
 wisely, sagement.  
 wish (to), désirer, vouloir, *irr.*  
 wish, désir, *m.*  
 with, (company) avec, (means) de,  
     par, (mark) à, (among) chez ;  
     — with various idiomatic  
     senses.  
 within, dans, en.  
 without, sans ; before subj., sans  
     que.  
 wolf, loup, *m.*  
 woman, femme, *f.*  
 wonder, merveille, *f.*  
 wonderful, merveilleux.  
 wood, bois, *m.*  
 wooden, de bois.  
 word, mot, *m.*, (spoken or pledged)  
     parole, *f.* ; to send —, envoyer  
     dire.  
 work (to), travailler.  
 work (labor), travail, *m.* ; (pro-  
     duction), ouvrage, *m.* ; (liter-  
     ary) œuvre, *f.*  
 world, monde, *m.*  
 worse, pire ; adverb, pis.  
 worst, le pire ; adverb, le pis.  
 worth (to be), valoir, *irr.*  
 worthy, digne.

wound (to), blesser.  
 wound, blessure, *f.*  
 write, écrire, *irr.*  
 writer, écrivain, *m.*  
 writing (hand-), écriture, *f.* ; (thing  
     written), écrit, *m.*  
 wrong, tort, *m.* ; to be —, avoir  
     tort.

## Y

yard (court), cour, *f.* ; (length)  
     mètre, *m.*  
 year, an, *m.*, année, *f.*  
 yes, oui.  
 yesterday, hier ; day before — ,  
     avant hier.  
 yet, (again) encore ; (nevertheless)  
     cependant.  
 you, vous ; tu, toi.  
 young, jeune ; — lady, demois-  
     selle, *f.*  
 your, *poss. adj.*, votre, ton.  
 yours, *poss. pron.*, le vôtre, le tien ;  
     after être, à vous, à toi.  
 yourself, vous-même, toi-même ;  
     reflex., vous, te.  
 yourselves, vous-mêmes ; reflex.,  
     vous.  
 youth, jeunesse, *f.* ; (person) jeune  
     homme.

# ANALYTICAL INDEX.

The reference is to *pages*. Where the subject is continuous, the first page only is generally given.

## A

A (indir. obj.) 15, 144, (repetition of) 22, (with pron.) 144, (with infin.) 149, (in compounds) 173.  
 Accents, 1, (e, é, è,) 5, 81.  
 Adjectives, (proper) 21, (possess.) 45, (demonst.) 46, (interr.) 48, (indef.) 48, (numeral) 49, 164, (compound) 174.  
 Adjectives, (fem.) 51, (plur.) 53, (position) 54, (compared) 58, (agreement) 37, 59, (as noun) 59, (with en) 89.  
 Adverbs, 136, (compared) 137, (position) 137, (negative) 139.  
 Age, (idioms) 169.  
 All, *all of*, *all that*, 49, 113.  
 Apostrophe, 2, 12.  
 Articles, 14, 15, 16.  
 Autre, l'autre, etc., 112.  
 Autrui, 112.  
 Aucun, 49, 113.  
 Auxiliary Verbs, 31, 116, 119, 126, 131, (summary, with past part.) 134.  
 Avoir, (verb) 28, auxil., 31 (see Auxiliary Verbs); (idioms) 42, 170.

## B

Bien, 25, 58, 137.

## C

C, 2, 81.  
 Ça, 99.  
 Ce, (adj.) 46, (pron.) 99, (idioms) 101, 180.  
 Ceci, cela, 99.  
 Celui, celui-ci, celui-là, 99.  
 C'est, (emphatic) 180.  
 Chacun, 111; chaque, 48.  
 -ci, 46, 100.  
 Collective numerals, 165.  
 Comparison, (adjs.) 58; (adverbs) 136.  
 Compound, (tenses) 31, (nouns) 172, (adjs.) 174.  
 Conjugation, (regular verbs) I. 61; II. 66; III. 70; (recapitulated) 73; (interr. and neg.) 76; (irregular) 183.  
 Conjunctive, (pronouns) 87, 103; (negative) 139.  
 Conjunctions, 152, (comp.) 154; (with subj.) 157.  
 Connection (*liaison*), 11.

12\*

## D

Dates, 168.  
 Davantage, 137.  
 Day, (of week) 168; (hour of) 169.  
 De, (possess.) 15, (partitive) 24, (material) 25, 174, (repeated) 25, (with passive) 118, (with infin.) 149, (in measures) 170, (in comp.) 173.  
 Demonstrative, (adj.) 46, (pronouns) 99.  
 Dimension, (idioms) 170.  
 Donner, (Conj. I.) 61, 73.  
 Dont, 107.

## E

E, (silent) 3, (accent e, é, è,) 5, 81; (inverted) 8, 81.  
 Elision, 2, 12.  
 Emphasis, 179.  
 En (pron. adv.) 89, (possess.) 97, (position) 93, (with numeral) 170.  
 En, (prep.) 22, (with pres. part.) 144.  
 Encore, (with numeral) 112, 137.  
 Est à, (predicate) 43, 97.  
 Est-ce que, (interrog.) 43, 77, 180.  
 Être, (verb) 34, (idioms) 43, (auxil.) 116, 119, 126, (with past part.; summary) 134.

## F

Faire, (impers.) 132, (with infin.) 148, (idioms) 198.  
 Faut (il), impers. 133, 153.  
 Finir, (Conj. II.) 66, 73.  
 Formation of tenses, (regular) 75, (irreg.) 183.  
 Future, (use of) 61.

## G

Gender of Nouns, 17, 175.  
 Gerund, 144.  
 Guère, (ne) 140.

## H

H, (aspirate or mute) 8.  
 Hour, (of day) 169.

## I

Idiom, 178, (idioms) *passim*.  
 Il, (impers.) 101, 130.  
 Il fait, (impers.) 132.  
 Il faut, (impers.) see *Faut*.  
 Il y a, (impers.) 131, (idioms) 132, 141.  
 Imperfect, (use of) 61.  
 Indefinite, (adjs.) 48, (pron.) 110.  
 Infinitive, 147, (with prep.) 149.  
 Intensive, (self) 85.  
 Interrogative, (subject) 27, (verb) 28, 40, 77, (adj.) 48, (pron.) 103, (idioms) 43, 180.  
 Interr-negative Verb, 40, 78.  
 Intransitive Verb, 119.  
 Irregular Verbs, 182 (see Index, 226).

## J

Jamais, 140.

## L

Là, 46, 90, (dem. pron.) 100.  
 Le, etc., (expletive) 95.  
 Lequel, (inter.) 103, (relat.) 106.  
 Liaison, 11.  
 L'un (l'autre), etc., 112.

## M

Même, 85, 113.  
 Mon, etc., (fem.) 45.  
 Monsieur, etc., (titles) 20, 46.  
 More, (plns) 53, 136, (davantage) 137, (en-core) 137, (the —) 137, (— than) 58, (no —) 140.  
 Months, (idioms) 168.  
 Must, (idioms) 133, 216, 219.

## N

Ne, 139, (alone) 141, 160, (not translated) 141, 159.  
 Negative, (verb) 38, 78, (interrog.) 40, 78, (adverb) 139.  
 Neuter, (verb) 119.  
 Ni—ni, 140.  
 Ni l'un ni l'autre, 112.  
 Nouns, (plur.) 18, 173, (gender) 17, 175, (comp.) 173.  
 Nul, 49, 113.  
 Numerals, 49, 164, 228, (idioms) 167.

## O

Object, (possess.) 15, (indirect) 15, 144, (pron.) 85, 87, 91, (inf.) 147, 149.  
 o'clock, (idioms) 169.  
 On, l'on, 110, (for passive) 118.  
 Order of words, 178.  
 Ordinals, 165, 229.  
 Orthography, 2, (in Conj. I.) 81.  
 Other, (idioms), 112.  
 Ou—ou, 152.  
 Où, (inter.) 104, (relat.) 108.  
 Own, 96.

## P

Par, (with pass.) 118, (with inf.) 149.  
 Participle Present, 144, (as adj.) 145.

Participle, Past, 93, 108, 116, 119, (summary) 134.  
 Partitive, 24, (noun omitted) 89, 170.  
 Pas, 140, (omitted) 141, (— un) 113, (— plus) 140.  
 Passive, 116, (idiom) 110, 123, (prep.) 118.  
 Past (participle), see *Participle*; (tenses) 61.  
 Personne, 111.  
 Plural, (nouns) 18, (adjs.) 53, (compounds) 173.  
 Plus, (compar.) 58, 136, (ne —) 140, (pas —) 140.  
 Point, 140.  
 Possessive, (adjs.) 45, (pron.) 96, (idioms) 15, 96.  
 Pouir (with inf.) 149, (— que, subj.) 154.  
 Prepositions, 22, 143, (with inf.) 149, (position) 104.  
 Preterit, (use of) 61.  
 Pronouns, (personal) 81, (disjunct.) 85, (conjunct.) 87, (possess.) 96, (demonst.) 99, (inter.) 103, (relat.) 106, (indef.) 110.  
 Pronoun, (subject.) 27, (object.) 85, 87, 91, (repeated) 93.  
 Pronunciation, 4—11.  
 Proper, (nouns) 20, 173, (adjs.) 21, 174.

## Q

Quand, (conditional) 153.  
 Quantity, (of vowels) 2, (expressions of) 24.  
 Que, (interrog. pron.) 103, (relat.) 106, (adverb) 58, 137, (conjunct.) 153, (ne —) 140.  
 Quelconque, 112.  
 Quelque, 49, (— chose) 111, (— que) 158.  
 Quelqu'un, 111.  
 Qui, (inter.) 103, (relat.) 106, (indef.) 108.  
 Quiconque, 112.  
 Quoi, (inter.) 103, (relat.) 107.

## R

Reflexive, (pron.) 84, (verb) 121, (idioms) 123, (auxil.) 126, (direct and indirect) 126, 128.  
 Regular Verb, 61—83 (see *Verb*).  
 Repetition, (of prep.) 22, (of pron.) 93.  
 Rien, 111.

## S

Sans, (inf.) 149, (— que) 154, 157.  
 Self (reflex.) 84, 121, (intensive) 85, 123.  
 Shall, should, 61, 216.  
 Si, (*if*) 153, (*so*) 58, 137.  
 Silent letters, 3, (inserted) 8, 81.  
 Subject, (of verb) 27, (emphatic) 180.  
 Subjunctive Mood, 29, 156.  
 Syllables, 2.  
 Synopsis of Verb, (regular) 76, (irreg.) 184.  
 Syntax, 177.

## T

*Tu.*, (*de*) 25, (= *so*) 137.

*Tel*, 113.

Tenses, (*use*) 61, (*formation*) 75, 183, (*sequence*) 157.

*Than*, 58, 170.

*That*, (*adj.*) 46, (*dem. pron.*) 47, (*relat.*) 106, (*conj.*) 153.

*There is*, or *are*, (*definite*) 88, (*inter.*) 131.

Titles, 21, 168.

Tout, 49, 113, (*adverb*) 136.

## U

Un, (*art.*) 14, (*pron.*) 112.

## V

Vendre, (*Conj. III.*) 70, 173.

Verb, (*subject.*) 27, (*regular*, 61, (*auxil.*) 31, 116, 118, 134; (*passive*) 116, (*neuter*) 119, (*reflex.*) 121, 126; (*impers.*) 130, (*irreg.*) 183 (see *Index*, 226).

Verb Conjugation, 27, 61, (*affirm.*) 28, 63, etc., (*interr.*) 28, 76, (*negat.*) 39, 76, (*interr.-neg.*) 40, 78.

Voici, voilà, 88, 132.

## W

*Will*, *would*, 61, 220.





# TEXT-BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF FRENCH.

PUBLISHED BY

HENRY HOLT & CO., NEW YORK.

*These books are bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.*

---

## GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOKS.

- Borel's Grammaire Française.** A l'usage des Anglais. Par EUGENE BOREL. Revised by E. B. COE, sometime Professor of Modern Languages in Yale University. 12mo, 450 pp. Half roan.
- Bulwer's Lady of Lyons.** La Grammaire en Action. With an Idiomatic and Grammatical Vocabulary. Preceded by a Synopsis of the most useful rules of French Grammar. By B. MAURICE, A.M. 12mo. 156 pp.
- Delille's Condensed French Instruction.** Consisting of Grammar and Exercises with cross-references. B. C. J. DELILLE. 18mo. 143 pp.
- Eugène's Student's Comparative French Grammar.** To which are added French-English Exercises, Grammatical and Idiomatic. Revised by L. H. BUCKINGHAM, Ph.D. 12mo. 284 pp.
- Eugène's Elementary French Lessons.** Revised and edited by L. H. BUCKINGHAM, Ph.D. 12mo. 126 pp.
- Gibert's French Manual.** A French Pronouncing Grammar for Young Students. With a vocabulary of the names of familiar objects and conversational phrases. By M. GIBERT. 12mo. 112 pp.
- Gasc's The Translator.**—English into French. By Professors Gasc, Le Brun, and others. 12mo. 220 pp.
- Julien's Petites Leçons de Conversation et de Grammaire.** By F. JULIEN. Square 12mo. 222 pp.
- Lacombe's The Growth of a People.** For Retranslation into French. A Translation by LEWIS A. STIMSON. 16mo. 221 pp.
- Otto's French Conversation Grammar.** Revised by FERDINAND BÔCHER, Professor of Modern Languages in Harvard University. 12mo. 489 pp. Half roan.
- Pylodet's Beginning French.** Exercises in Pronouncing, Spelling and Translating. By L. PYLODET. 16mo. 180 pp. Boards.
- Sadler's Translating English into French.** By P. SADLER. Revised and annotated, by Prof. C. F. GILLETTE. 12mo. 285 pp.
- The Joynes-Otto Introductory French Lessons.** By EDWARD S. JOYNES, Professor in South Carolina College. 12mo. 275 pp.
- The Joynes-Otto First Book in French.** By EDWARD S. JOYNES, M.A., Professor in South Carolina College. 12mo. 116 pp. Boards.
- Whitney's French Grammar.** By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor in Yale University. 12mo. 442 pp. Half roan.
- Whitney's Practical French.** Taken from the author's larger Grammar and supplemented by conversations and idiomatic phrases. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY.
- Zender's Abécédaire.** Abécédaire français-anglais, illustre. Par le Rev. J. D. L. ZENDER. 12mo, 60 pp. Boards.

## NATURAL METHOD AND CONVERSATION BOOKS.

- Alliot's Contes et Nouvelles.** Suivis de Conversations, d'Exercices de Grammaire. Par MADAME L. ALLIOT. 12mo.
- Aubert's Colloquial French Drill.** By E. AUBERT, Professor in the Normal College, New York City. 16mo. 66 pp.
- Game for French Conversation.** Cards, in a box.
- Le Jeu des Auteurs.** 96 Cards in a box.
- Moutonnier's Les Premiers Pas dans L'Etude du Français** par la méthode naturelle. Par C. MOUTONNIER. 12mo. 197 pp. Illustrated.
- Parlez-vous Français?** A pocket manual of French and English Conversation with hints for pronunciation and a list of the irregular verbs. 18mo. 111 pp. Boards.
- Stern & Méras's Etude Progressive de la Langue Française.** By SIGMON M. STERN, author of *Studien und Plaudereien*, and Baptiste Méras. 12mo. 288 pp.
- Witcomb & Bellenger's French Conversation.** Dialogues on Familiar Subjects, to which is annexed the Summary of French Grammar, by DELILLE. 18mo. 259 pp.

## READING BOOKS AND HISTORIES.

- Alliot's Les Auteurs Contemporains.** Extraits choisis d'œuvres diverses, avec Notices Biographiques et Notes. By MME. L. ALLIOT. 12mo. 371 pp.
- Aubert's Littérature Française.** Première Année. By E. AUBERT. 16mo. 338 pp.
- Fisher's Easy French Reading.** Historical tales and anecdotes, arranged with copious foot-notes, containing translations of the principal words. 16mo. 253 pp.
- Fleury's L'Histoire de France.** Racontée à la Jeunesse. Par M. LAMÉ FLEURY. 16mo. 372 pp.
- DeJanon's Recueil de Poésies.** A l'usage de la Jeunesse Américaine. Par Mlle. CAMILLE DE JANON. 16mo. 186 pp.
- Julien's Practical and Conversational Reader in French and English.** Followed by an outline of French Accidence, in questions and answers. By F. JULIEN. Square 12mo. 182 pp.
- Lacombe's Petite Histoire du Peuple Français.** By PAUL LACOMBE. With Grammatical and Explanatory Notes by JULES BUÉ. 12mo. 212 pp.
- Pyloadet's Beginner's French Reader.** Short and easy pieces in Prose and Verse, with a complete Vocabulary. Arranged by L. PYLODET. 16mo. 235 pp. Boards.
- Pyloadet's Second French Reader.** Lessons in Prose and Verse, progressively arranged. With a complete French-English Vocabulary. Compiled by L. PYLODET. Illustrated. 12mo. 277 pp.
- Pyloadet's La Littérature Française Classique.** Tirées des Matinées Littéraires d'ÉDOUARD MENNECHET. 12mo. 393 pp.
- Pyloadet's La Littérature Française Contemporaine.** Recueil en prose et en vers. 12mo. 310 pp.
- Pyloadet's Gouttes de Rosée.** Petit Trésor poétique des Jeunes Personnes. 18mo. 188 pp.
- Pyloadet's La Mère L'Oie.** Poésies, énigmes, chansons et rondes enfantines. Illustré. 8vo. 80 pp.
- The Joynes-Otto Introductory French Reader.** Edited with Notes and Vocabulary, by EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 163 pp.

## DICTIONARIES.

- Bellow's French and English Dictionary for the Pocket.** 32mo. 600 pp.
- Gasc's New Dictionary of the French and English Languages.** By FERDINAND E. A. GASC. 8vo. French-English part, 600 pp. English-French part, 586 pp. One volume.
- Gasc's Improved Modern Pocket Dictionary.** By F. A. E. GASC. 18mo. French-English part, 261 pp. English-French part, 387 pp. One volume. The same, Tourist's edition, 2 vols. in a neat case. 18mo.

*A complete catalogue and price-list of Henry Holt & Co.'s educational publications will be sent on application.*

## FRENCH TEXTS.

PUBLISHED BY

HENRY HOLT & CO., NEW YORK.

### STUDENTS' COLLECTION OF CLASSIC FRENCH PLAYS.

The first six with full notes, by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. The last three with Notes by LEON DELBOIS, M.A. 12mo. Paper.

Le Cid. Par CORNEILLE. 110 pp.

Athalie. Par RACINE. 117 pp.

Le Misanthrope. Par MOLIÈRE. 130 pp.

L'Avare. Par MOLIÈRE. 132 pp.

Esther. Par RACINE. 66 pp.

Cinna. Par CORNEILLE. 87 pp.

Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme. Par MOLIÈRE. 140 pp.

Horace. Par CORNEILLE. 78 pp.

Les Plaideurs. Par RACINE. 80 pp.

The foregoing in 3 vols., three plays in each, in the above order. 12mo. Cloth.

### COLLEGE SERIES OF MODERN FRENCH PLAYS.

With English Notes. By Prof. FERDINAND BÔCHER. 12mo. Paper.

La Joie Fait Peur. Par Mme. DE GIRARDIN. 46 pp.

La Bataille de Dames. Par SCRIBE et LEGOUVÉ. 81 pp.

La Maison de Penarvan. Par JULES SANDEAU. 72 pp.

La Poudre aux Yeux. Par LABICHE et MARTIN. 59 pp.

Jean Baudry. Par AUGUSTE VACQUERIE. 72 pp.

Les Petits Oiseaux. Par LABICHE et DELACOUR. 70 pp.

Mademoiselle de la Seiglière. Par J. SANDEAU. 99 pp.

Le Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre. Par O. FEUILLET. 100 pp.

Les Doigts de Fée. Par E. SCRIBE. 111 pp.

The foregoing in 2 vols. Vol. I., containing the first five—Vol. II., the last four. Cloth.

### MODERN FRENCH COMEDIES.

12mo. Paper.

Le Village. Par O. FEUILLET. 34 pp.

La Cagnotte. Par MM. EUGÈNE LABICHE et A. DELACOUR. 83 pp.

Les Femmes qui Pleurent. Par MM. SIRAUDIN et LAMBERT THIBOUST. 28 pp.

Les Petites Misères de la vie Humaine. Par M. CLAIRVILLE. 35 pp.

La Niaise de Saint Flour. Par BAYARD et LEMOINE. 38 pp.

With Vocabulary.

Trois Proverbes. Par TH. LECLERQ. 68 pp.

Valerie. Par SCRIBE. 39 pp.

Le Collier de Perles. Par MAZÈRES. 56 pp.

### FRENCH PLAYS FOR CHILDREN.

12mo. Paper.

La Petite Maman; par Mme. DE M. Le Bracelet; par Mme. DE GAULLE. 38 pp.

La Vieille Cousine; par E. SOUVESTRE. Les Ricochets. 52 pp.

Le Testament de Madame Patural; par E. SOUVESTRE. La Demoiselle de St. Cyr; par DROHOVOWSKA. 54 pp.

La Loterie de Francfort; par E. SOUVESTRE. La Jeune Savante; par Mme. CURO. 47 pp.

# BIBLIOTHÈQUE D'INSTRUCTION ET DE RÉCRÉATION.

12mo volumes. Paper or cloth.

Achard's Clos-Pommier, et les Prisonniers du Caucase, par Xavier de Maistre. Cloth. 144 pp.

Achard's Clos-Pommier. Paper. 106 pp.

Bédolliere's Mère Michel. *With Vocabulary.* Cloth. 138 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Biographies des Musiciens Célèbres. Cloth. 271 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Carraud et Segur's Contes (Les Petites Filles Modèles, par Mme. de Segur, et Les Goûters de la Grand 'Mère, par Mme. Z. Carraud). *With a list of difficult phrases.* Cloth. 193 pp.

Carraud's Les Goûters de la Grand 'Mère. *With a list of difficult phrases.* Paper. 95 pp.

Choix de Contes Contemporains. *With notes.* By B. F. O'Conner, Cloth. 300 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Erckmann-Chatrian's Conscrit de 1813. *With Notes.* By Prof. F. Böcher. Cloth. 236 pp.

—The same. Paper.

—Le Blocus. *With Notes.* By Prof. F. Böcher. Cloth. 258 pp.

—The same. Paper.

—Madame Thérèse. *With Notes.* By Prof. Böcher. Cloth. 216 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Fallet's Princes de l'Art. Cloth. 334 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Feuillet's Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre. Cloth. 204 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Féval's 'Chouans et Bleus.' *With Notes.* Cloth. 188 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Foa's Contes Biographiques. *With Vocabulary.* Cloth. 189 pp.

—The same. Paper.

—Petit Robinson de Paris. *With Vocabulary.* Cloth. 166 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Macé's Bouchée de Pain. (L'Homme.) *With Vocab.* Clo. 260 pp.

—The same. Paper.

De Maistre's Voyage Autour de ma Chambre. Paper. 117 pp.

—Les Prisonniers du Caucase. Paper. 38 pp.

Porchat's Trois Mois sous la Neige. Cloth. 166 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Pressensé's Rosa. *With Vocab.* By L. Pylodet. Cloth. 285 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Saint-Germain's Pour une Épingle. *With Vocab.* Cloth. 174 pp.

—The same. Paper.

Sand's Petite Fadette. Cloth. 205 pp.

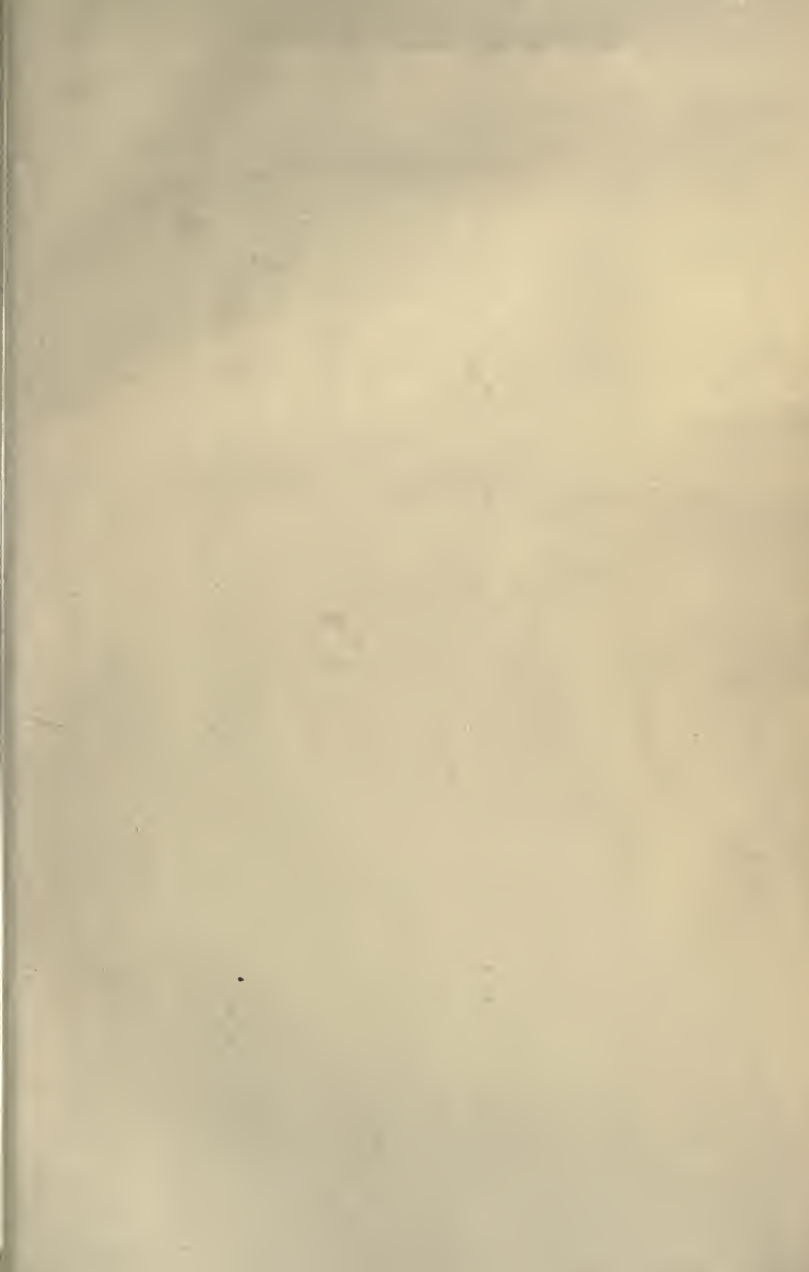
—The same. Paper.

Séguir et Carraud's Contes. (Petites Filles Modèles: Les Goûters de la Grand 'Mère). Cloth. 193 pp.

Séguir's Les Petites Filles Modèles. Paper. 98 pp.

Souvestre's Philosophe sous les Toits. Cloth. 137 pp.

—The same. Paper.











**University of Toronto  
Library**

---

**DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET**

---

**Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**

